



19

od

Belton House.



104



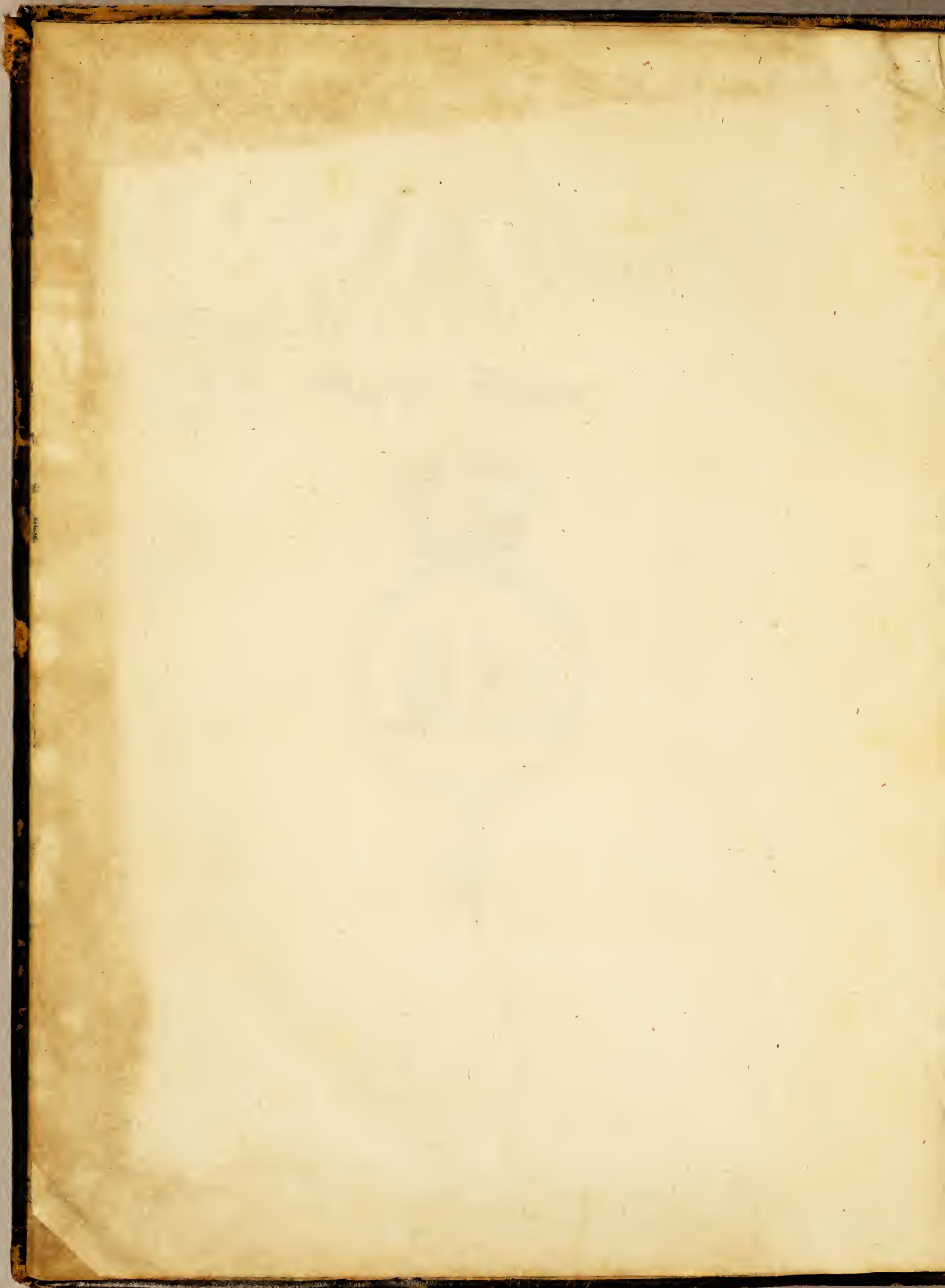
collected 1861  
1864

561

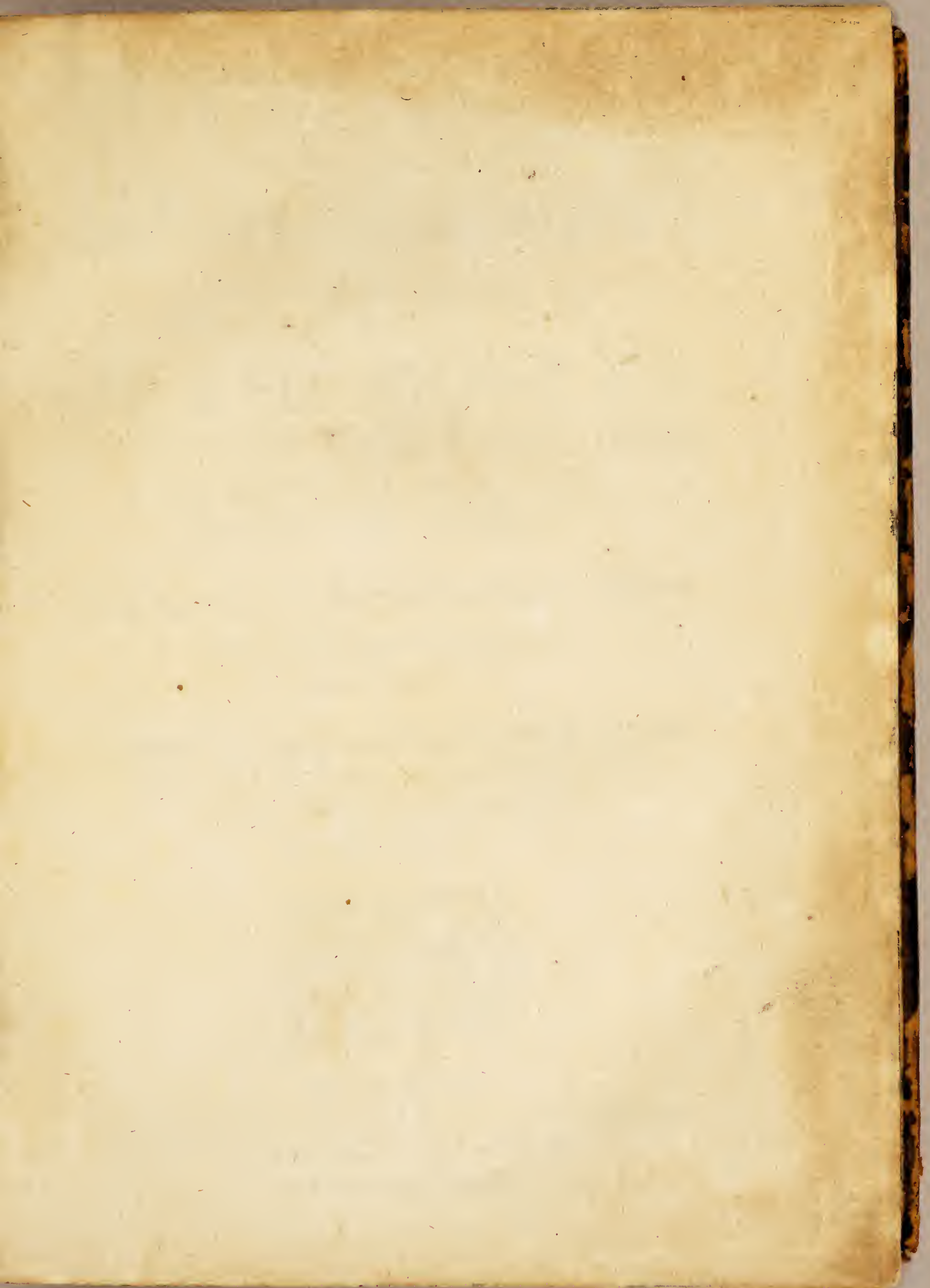
\$1000-

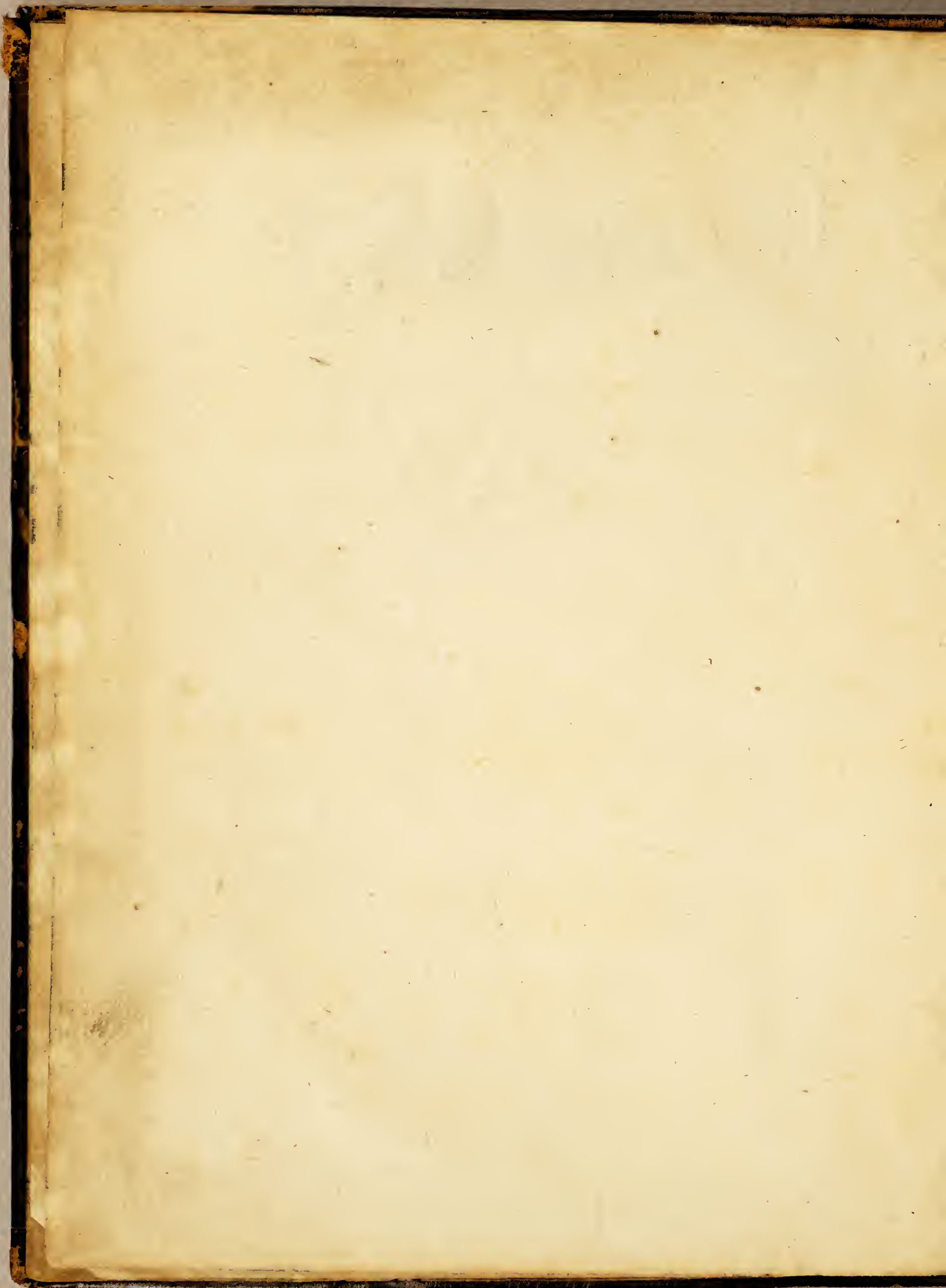
[Ginnani Estero]

[new addition to  
Mexico]













RELATIONS,  
OF THE MOST FA-  
MOVS KINGDOMS AND  
COMMON-WEALES THO-  
ROUGH THE WORLD.

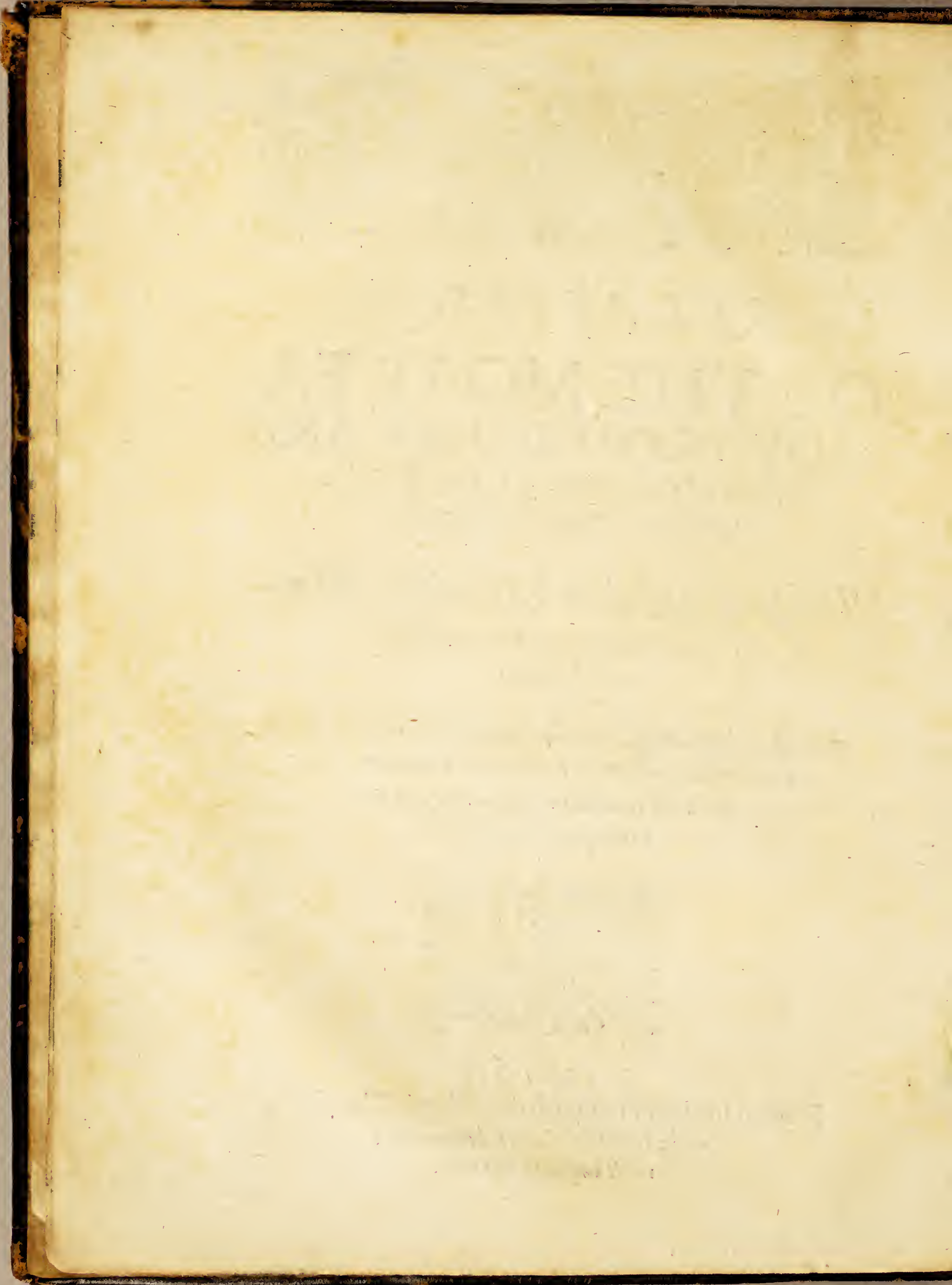
*Discoursing of their Scituations, Man-  
ners, Customes, Strengthes  
and Pollicies.*

*Translated into English and enlarged, with an Addition  
of the estates of Saxony, Geneua, Hungary, and  
the East Indies, in any Language ne-  
uer before imprinted.*



LONDON,  
Printed for Iohn Iaggard, dwelling in Fleetstreet,  
at the Hand and Starre, betweene the  
two Temple gates, 1608.









To the Right Honorable Edward Earl  
of Worcester, Lord of Chepstoll, Ragland,  
and Gower, Knight of the most Noble order of the  
Garter, Maister of the Horse, and one of the Kinges  
most honorable priuy Councell.

RIGHT HONORABLE,

**H**aving with an unskilfull hand, taught  
this Booke to speake English, I thought  
that I should be like an euill Plaier mar-  
ring the last Act of the Tragedy; or a  
carelesse Pilot, drowning the ship in the  
Hauen, if I ventred it to the diuers cen-  
sures of men, before it were entrusted  
to patronage of some such Authority, as might restraine and  
binde the ouerflowings of other mens more hard opinion. For  
although the worthinesse of the subiect might worke in me an  
ouerweening hope of his kind entertainment, yet I cannot sa-  
tisfie my selfe, vnlesse it passe vnder the tutele and protection  
of some one, whose fauour may (like the verticall Sun) abate  
all shadowes, eyther of Enuy or disgrace, which are in this still  
worse and worse age of the world, ready to discountenance the  
fruits of any mans labor. Wherfore, considering with my selfe,  
where to bestow it, I was emboldned by the inducement of di-  
uers reasons, to presume on your Lordship, ascertaining my  
selfe, that the Honorable vertues which haue wound you into  
the liking of all men, haue setled so good an impressiō, as is  
force-



forceable enough to make 'th it seeme commendable which is  
graced by your Honors name only. And for this respect among  
infinite others here for speciall reasons silenced, in hope of fauo-  
rable acceptance, I most humbly present it to your Honor chal-  
lenging to my selfe nothing but the imperfections in the harsh  
composure & conueyance of the stile, retaining yet (as I trust)  
the former strength and substance. If your L. vouchsafe to re-  
ceiue it, it may be that (although in the perusal it cannot in-  
forme your honor any thing, which you were ignorant of) yet  
it may confirme that, which otherwise your Honor doubted, or  
make it clearer by deliuering the circumstances in more parti-  
cular termes. Only thus much (vnder leaue of a better iudge-  
ment) I dare say, that there is no Booke extant touching the  
same argument, which can equalize it, either for soundnesse  
in iudicially censuring, Truth, in sincerely translating, or com-  
pendiousnesse, in bringing such variety of matter to so small  
a volume. And here although I could according to the vsuall  
forme of Epistles, iudeuor a draught of your most Honourable  
praises, yet knowing that it is but tediousnesse where vertue  
is loued for the only inward contentment, I put a Period vnto  
these lines, and most humbly crauing pardon, take leaue.

Your Honors deuoted

in all humble seruiceableness,

R. I.





## Of the World, and the greatest *Princes therein.*

**H**aving heretofore vndertaken to relate of the greatest Princes and Potentates which at this day sway the worlde: and therein omitted for breuities sake, the Geographical scituation of many Provinces: which could not be but very prejudiciall to the satisfaction of a iudicious Reader, cōsidering these flourishing times of language and Learning, wherein many good workes are divulged as in any other Nation; I haue now resolued, not only to offer a discourse concerning the causes of this their greatnesse and enlargement, but also in exact manner, according to the Maps and Cardes of our best Cosmographers, to lay down euery Continent and Island, as they are placed in their seuerall Dimensions. For to giue report of those Occurrences which daily passe in the World, is a thing easie to him that entertayneth any Intelligence, and will bestow labour thereabout: but to discern the true reasons, whereby one kingdome becōmeth greater then another, how it lyeth, how it is bounded, and vpon what part it bordereth, deserueth the commendation of wit and Iudgement.

First therefore, we will endeuour to proue, that one Prince obtaineth rule and dominion ouer another, eyther by largnesse of Territory and casuall aduantage, or from multitudes of Mē, or from their valour (and that consistig in the quality of their weapons, and theyr vse) Or from Riches; the opportunity of Scituation; or from Occasions.

The enlarging of Dominion, is the vniting and establishing of diuers Territories vnder one souerainty and gouernement,



## *A description of the world,*

wherevnto is necessarily required such numbers of men, as may exceed the fatall daungers & doubtfull chances incident to all warlike enterprises. For small numbers are soone consumed by Plague, or oppressed by a more mighty enemy, ouerthrowne in one battel, or consumed by a long war: to which inconueniences great numbers and populous Nations are not so much subiect. By the aduantage hereof the *Barbarians*, the *Egyptians*, the *Assyrians* and the *Persians* haue for the most part brought their attempts to happy ends. The *Romans* (if in respect of their Honor) they did not ordinarily vse huge armies, yet they alwaies preuailed, by reason of their populous territories, or their indefatigable continuance, being thereby able the second and third time to reinforce their legions, and finally with fresh supplies to overcome their enemies, being weakned with ouercomming. Now to multiply and maintaine these numbers, they haue sometimes receiued into their territories their very enemies, and at other times haue sent forth Colonies of their owne people, as it were braunches of *Rome*, and nurseries of the *Romaine* people. By meanes whereof, and other policies, they grew to such multitudes, that in the eight year of the raign of the Emperor *Claudius*, the people were numbred to be sixe millions, being so many, as at this present are not to be found at one time within the boundes of all *Italy*: whereby they became conquerours of the parts of the world then discovered, a conquest (say I) vndertaken by them, as much in regard of *their numbers* as of *their valor*.

Valour.

True valour consisteth partly in iudicious apprehension (whereby both conuenient opportunities are discerned and intertainned; and all difficulties discovered and preuented :) and partly in the forward resolution of the minde: by coniunction of which two vertues, great enterprises are vndertaken with good successe; daungers almost ineuitable made light, and waighty attempts brought to happy conclusions. Of these two I do not know which to prefer as most necessary and of greatest importance, but most certaine it is, that the one without the other, little auaieth to the atchieuing of any matter worthy reputation. For wisdom without courage, may rather be termed subtilty, then iudicious carriage: and courage without discretion, is rather furious rashnes, then true valour; neither let any man  
sup-



## and the greatest Princes therein.

suppose that from wilinesse without force, nor force without iudgement, can proceed any proiect of worthy consideration. For al desieigns which haue in them greatnes, haue also in them difficulty and hardnes, & to maister vneasie actions, it is necessary both to vse iudgment to foresee dangers (for foresight maketh them lesse) and courage to ouer come them, once vndertaken. These two ioyned in one man, or one nation, are apt meãs to raise their fortunes aboue their neighbors. As we see amongst birds, the eagle; among beasts, the lion; among fishes, the dolphin; (in whom do appeer some shadows of wit and corage) are esteemed as it were, princes aboue their fellow-creatures.

But if any man affirme, that true Iudgement cannot be seuered from true valour, yet ordinarily the one doth appeere more discernable from the other in diuers subiects. For we may note in *Philip* king of the *Macedons*, and in *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian*, great foresight and wisdom, and in *Alexander* and *Hambal* (their sonnes) more courage and valour: In *Fabritius*, iudicious warines, in *Marcellus* couragious forwardnesse: both which were alike fearefull and disastrous to the valiant *Haniball*.

Yet I say not, but some actions are better delt in with the one then with the other. For generally, to conquer and win, courage is more auailable then wit; but to establish and keep that which is gotten, discretion is more to be desired, then it; as may well be discerned in the *Spaniards*, who haue surer settled themselves in that which they haue gained by their warinesse and iudgement, then did the *French* by their fury and hazard.

But if any man should vrge me to speak my opinion whether courage or wisdom be more necessarily to be required: I wold giue my consent with courage. My reason is, that wisdom is giuen but to few, and that must be gotten with trauel, by long time and study; whereas corage naturally is by diuers meanes, & vpon sodain casualities imparted and dispersed in the mindes of many: which many hauing to deale with few, will casually find oportunity to vanquish and ouercome them. As we read of the *Gothes*, the *Vandals*, the *Tartarians*, and the *Turks*, who with courage only haue atchieued great conquests, and haue brought to passe such enterprises, as a man would haue thought vnpossible: The reason whereof is, that their sodain and speedy moouings



## *A description of the world,*

and their vnexpected boldnesse, hath confounded the counsels, and amazed the iudgments of the wisest commanders. Besides, in sudden hurly-burlies of warre it is commonly seen, that courage openeth more gaps and affordeth more reliefe than pollicy; for that in such cases reason is gealious, suspicious & fearefull, and men stand as it were amazed at the greatnesse of the present danger: whereas courage doth oftentimes gather strenght in extreame dispaire. *Una salus victis nullam sperare salutem.*

Yea, it is commonly seen, that those people which are more commended for their wit and pollicy, then for theyr courage and valour, haue giuen place to those which are more esteemd for theyr resolution, then for their skilfulnesse; as the *Greekes* and the *Macedons* doe at this day to the *Turkes*; the *Gauls* of old to the *French*; the *Egyptians* to the *Persians*; the *Sarazens* the *Chaldeans* and other *Nations* to the *Persyans*, and *Parthians*. Yea it is the receiued opinion, that the *French* did raunge *Italy* at their pleasure vnder *Charles* the eight, and gaue them the Law, because in those times the *Italian* Princes did wholly giue themselves to the study of good letters. Hereupon I dare boldly affirme, that those states which do consist of a people, whereof one part is inclined to wit and pollicy, & another part to fiercenesse, do for the most part liue in little quiet: of which quality are those Countries, whereof one part is plaine and fruitfull, and the other mountainous and barren: because the Inhabitants of the plaine countrey by reason of the commodities thereof, and the easinesse of Commerce and Traffique, and by th' experience thereof ensuing, are vsually circumspect & witty, whereas on the contrary, the Inhabitants of Mountaines, by reason of the sharpnesse of the place which doth harden them, and by the bluntnesse of theyr manners, which doth accompany them, they become of great courage and stubborne resolutions. Such is *Spaine*, where the *Biskaines*, the *Aragons* and other people inhabiting the Mountaine and remote places of the kingdome are of such condition, that by reason of theyr many Priuileges, they liue vnder a King, but as if they were at libertye and in a free state: Whereas the *Castilians* and *Andoluzians*, whose Country is more plaine and fruitfull, apply themselves willingly to the pleasure and command of theyr Kings and Soueraigne. Neither

can



*and the greatest Princes therein.*

can there be alledged a truer reason of the troubles of the kingdom of *Naples* then the different qualities of the Country; as some Mountaine, some plaine, some fruitfull, some rockie: of which it doth altogether consist, and whereupon doth proceed the difference of minds & manners in the Inhabitants: as some rude, some sauadge, some curteous and ciuill; whereby they continually disagreeing amongst themselves, haue oftentimes falne together by the cares, one betaking himselfe to the protection of one Prince, and the other to the tuition of another. By contrary reason, *Lumbardy*, because it doth consist of pleasant champion, is more quyet and at peace, then *Thuscan*, which is deuided into mountaynes and vallyes. Also in a Citty where the Cittizens are of equall courage and wit, peace and quiet is hardly maintained: which doth appeare by *Fiorence* and *Genua*, Citiés replenished with men, excellent for their pollicy and greatnesse of mind, and therefore little concord to be founde amongst them. On the contrary, the Contries which are plain and of an vniforme scite, are, by reason of the conformity of their manners, easily reduced and kept vnder one gouernement without any difficulty: as *Polonia*, *Lituanio*, *Hungary*, *Egypt*, *Fraunce* and *Bohemia*.

Moreouer, there is a certaine fiercenes, or rather fury, which commeth neere to valour: for that excesse of boldnesse (wherewith the *Gautes*, and afterwatd the *Frenchmen*) haue atchieued notable exployts is in some sort commendable. But for that violence is not of continuance, they haue had better successe in acquisition and conquest, then in maintaining & keeping their conquered purchase. For in an assault, rashnesse is much auailable, but in preseruing & defending, it hurteth more than profiteth. Whereupon it was well said, Moderation to be the mother of continuance to states and Kingdomes. The *Swissers* shewed themselves notable herein, especially in the wars of *Navar*, insomuch as *Iames Triuulzie* reporteth, that their battell seemed rather to consist rather of Gyants than ordinary soldiors. Neither hath any Nation euer dealt more at aduenture, or hath vsed more boldnesse and blind fury, then the *Portugals*, whose Voyages beyond the cape of *Good-Hope*, and the Straights of *Sinca pura* their conquests of *Ormuz*, of *Gea*, of *Malacca*, and the



## A description of the world

*Moluccos*, the defence of *Cochin*, of *Diu*, of *Chaul*, and of *Goa*, are more true then in reason likely.

The qualities of weapons, and the order of discipline, are important instruments of this valour. The *Macedons* atchieued great conquestes by reason of their pikes, and by martialing their squadrons. The *Romans*, by the means of their darts. The *Parthians* with their steele-bowes, the *English* with their long-bowes, and the *Spaniards*, in the newe worlde, with horse and harcubuze.

Money is an aduantage of great importāce, forasmuch as ther is nothing more necessary in warres, or of more vse in peace. By means herof the *Florentines* became lords of a great part of *Thes- can*: They bought many cities. They freed themselues from the incursions of diuers enimies: they maintained the warres many yeares against the *Fisans*, and against the prowesse of those peo- ples, and the power of those princes which did aid them, and at the last brought that warre to good end. By meanes hereof, the *Venetians* made themselues lords of *Lumbardy*, and haue endured the force of the king of *Hungarie*, the *Archduke* of *Austria* and of diuers other princes. Whereby it doth appeare that mony wor- keth these two notable effects to the augmentation and conti- nuance of the greatnes of kingdomes and estates. The one is, to prouide and gather force, and those being gotten, to vphoulde and maintaine, with supplies of soldiers, victuals, munition and armes. The other is, that it doth offer vs opportunity, if not to weaken and vanquish the enemy, hauing gotten the aduantage; yet at least, it doth enable vs to endure and withstand him, that by drawing out the war in length, we make him weary of con- tinuance, and giues vs the benefit of time. By this temporizing, the *Venetians* being ouerthrowne in all places by the league of *Cambrey*, in the end became conquerors. So that, euen as to him that hath a populous army, and findes himselfe mighty and stronge, it is most conuenient to hasten the encounter and to fighte without deferring or prolonging of time; for delay (the ouerthrowe of many actions) can affoorde him no other, but losse, sicknesse, infection, scarfitie, famine, mutinies, and dis- solution of forces: So for him, that is bettet furnished with mo- ney then with men, it is most aduantageous, to prolong the war,  
and



## and the greatest Princes therein.

and to stand vpon the defensue; for in the end his money may giue him victorie.

The aduantage of scite is of much importance, for the defending or enlarging of dominion, and doth chiefly consist in this: Scituation. that it be conuenient for the making of an assault, & vneasie to be again assaulted. For a country being as it were naturally fortified, hath easie meanes to make conquestes and get victory, to the enlargement of their own dominions and to the ouerthrow of anothers. Of this quality are the scituations of *Spain & Araby*, for both these are as it were *peny Insulae*, hauing their greatest parts compassed with the sea, wherby they may assail the countries neer adioyning, & cannot without great difficulty be assailed again. The one hath dangerous shores without harbors, and is inuironed with mountaines (hauing few and secret passages,) the other is inclosed with sands and deserts: of the same quality is *Italy*: And amongst the Ilands is *England*. But this aduantage of scituatiō is not sufficient of it selfe to effect any notable exploit: for besides that, ther is required plenty of victuals, store of munition, armes, horses & diuers other necessaries, without which, ther is no hope to accomplish any famous expedition. And more ouer such a disposition and quality of the country is necessarily required, that the asorfaid habilliments may easily be broght together, and remoued to such places whether occasion shal command. And although those which possesse the mountaines and higher places, may with aduantage come down vpon the plain and low countries, and by reason of the craggednes and harde passages of their countrey, can hardly be assaulted, yet haue they not done any thing which may worthily commend them.

For the mountaines be ordinarily long and narrow, or at the least, much broken & deuided amongst themselues, which must needs hinder the speedy drawing together and vniting of their forces and necessaries, so again are they vnprouided of victuals, and of all other things requisite for the wars, and therefore are altogether vnable to continue long in any action. And therefore their warres are rather after the manner of robbers and theecus, then of true souldiers. It may also be added, that the mountainen men cannot liue any long time without entercourse & trafficke with the men of the plain country. And therefore if vpon any attempt they doe not preuaile at the first brunt; their best course



## A description of the world

will be to capitulate with their enemies, and to returne home againe although with losse: as did the *Heluetij* at the ouerthro of *Mount S. Claud.*

So we may see, that the *Englishmen* which inhabit a plaine & plentifull foyle, haue alwaies preuailed against the *Scots* and *Welshmen*, who presuming vpon the strength of their own contrey, haue diuers times molested them. For the plaine contrey by reason of the fruitfulnessse, doth minister all things requisite for warre, and to defray charges, conueniency to ioyne forces, and being gotten together, able long time to maintaine them: whereas on the contrary, the Mountaines by reason of their barrennessse, affoord no prouision for a long iourney, nor are any way able to beare the charge of any notable enterprife.

Whereupon it doth proceed, that small Islandes hauing the foresaid qualities of scituation, haue neuer attained any great Soueraignty; because the aduantages of the land are far greater than those of the Sea. Moreouer their command cannot be great, vnlesse it be enlarged by meanes of the firme Land; for Islands hold the same proportion with the continent, that the part doth with the whole. Besides, they bee for the most part long and narrow, as *Candia*, *Cyprus*, *Spagniola*, *Cuba*, *S. Laurence*, and *Sumatra*, and therefore cannot readily bring their forces together. Neither will I sticke to say, that Islandes although they may with aduantage come forth and assaile others, are not withstanding as it were Citties without wals, laid open to the spoyle of all inuadors. As it happened to *Cicile* being assailed by the *Athenians* and the *Lacedemonians*, & afterwards by the *Carthaginians* and the *Romans*. But the Prouinces of the firme land, being for the most part of a proportion more round or square, haue their forces continually neere togither, and to be speedily vnited, and therefore more readie and apt for opposition.

Yet to small purpose are all these aforesaide aduantages, if opportunity giue not ayde thereunto. This opportunitie is a meeting and concurring of diuers cadences, which at one instant doe make a matter verie easie, which at another time, being ouerslipped, it will be impossible, or at least very harde to bring to like facilitie. Wherefore amongst many and diuers I will here note the most principall. The first groweth by the  
base-



## and the greatest Princes therein.

basenes and negligence of the neighbour Princes, arising either by reason of a natural defect and dulnes, or of too long a peace. So *Cesar* posselt himselfe of *Italy* and of the common wealth, being ready and in armes, the state being disarmed and not looking for any such matter. So the *Barbarians* subdued the empire of *Rome*: The *Arabians* the Empire of the east, of *Egypt* and of *Spaine*. *Charles* the eight King of *France*, *Italy*: The *Portugales*, *India*. The *Castilians*, the new worlde; and *Soliman*, the kingdome of *Hungary*.

The diuision of the neighbouring states, either into common wealthes or into pretty Seignories and those of small power, gaue courage to the *Romaines* to make themselves lords of *Italy*, And made an easie passage for the *Venetians* into *Lumbardy*: This also made the attempt of *Thascan* light vnto the *Florentines*, and no lesse that of *Barbarie* to the *Castilians*; and to the *Portugales*, that of *Morocco*: which they woulde haue found very hard, if either the one, or the other, had expected them with armed forces.

The variance and iarring of the adioyning princes did open the way to the *Turkes* to enter so far into *Christendome*, and with litle trouble to inuest himselfe of many kingdomes therein. For *Amorath* the third, presuming vpon the ciuill discordes of the Princes of the bloud royall of *Persia*, made that attempt with great aduantage, and to proceed as he hath done there. Neither doeth the whole mischiefe arise out of these iarres betweene themselves onely, but in all factions one part will be sure to intreat the aid of some forieyne Prince against the other: then which no man can haue a better occasion, because then he cometh armed into the owners house at his owne request. So the *Romaines* set foote in *Cicill*, being called in by the *Mamertines*: In *Greece*, by the *Athenians*; In *Numidia*, by the sonnes of *Micipsa*: In *Prouince*, by the *Marsilians*: In *France*, by the *Hedui*, and so from time, by diuers others. So *Amorath* the firste King of *Turkes* got hold in *Europe*, being requested in aide by the Emperour of the East, being then in war with the princes of *Greece*: So *Soliman*, in *Hungarie*, being intreated by the Queene *Isabell*, and afterwards by King *Iohn*. So the *Aragons*, in the kingdome of *Naples*, being drawne thither by Queene *Ione*, the second:



## Europe.

and so *Henry* the 2. king of *Fraunce* made himselfe Lord of three great citties of the Empire.

Now as touching the discription, diuision and inhabitation of this great Globe, (for parts and parcels whereof so great and vniuersal quarrels haue from the beginning beene entertained amongst Princes, peoples, and nations) you shal vnderstand that our moderne Cosmographers haue diuided it into seauen parts: the first three wherof, *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Asia*, were wel known to the ancients. The fourth is *America Septentrionalis*, and containeth the prouinces of *Estotilant Terra fabratoris*, *Terra de Baccaleos*, *Noua Francia* *Norimbega*, *Florida*, *Noua Hispania*, and others. The fifth is, *America meridinalis*, which is a peny-Insula, and disioyed from the former by a small *Isthmus* of land, containing the regions of *Brasill*, *Tisnada*, *Caribana*, *Paguana*, and *Peruvia*. The sixt is termed *Terra Australis*, wherein lyeth *Psitacorum regio*, *Terra del feugo*, *Beach*, *Lucach*, and *Maletur*, scituate betweene *Iana maior & minor*. The last being vnder the Northern pole, is the least of the residue, all almost vnknowne, and deuided into foure Ilands, lying in a manner vnder the very pole. For writers affirme that in the very same place standeth a Roch black and of huge height, about 33. miles in compasse, neere whereunto are these Ilands placed, and betweene which the Ocean violently disemboquing, maketh foure whirlpooles, into which the waters being violently ingorged towards the north, are there swallowed into the bowels of the earth.

## Europe. CHAP. 2.



IF all these seauen parts because *Europ* is far lesse then any of rest, and yet exceedeth them all in noblenes, magnificence, multitude of people, in might, puissance and renowne, we will first begin with the description thereof. It is bounded on the North with the north Ocean sea, on the South, with the Mediterranean, on the East with the floode *Tanais*, and on the West with the west Ocean. It containeth more then 24. Christian kingdomes at this day, as farre excelling the residue of the  
pro-



## Ireland

Prouinces in Religion, Artes, Valour, and ciuility, as in elder age it did surpasse them in power and reputation. The principall prouinces, are *Spaine, Fraunce, Belgia, Germany, Italy, Slaui-  
ria, Greece, Hungary, Poland, Lituania, Moscouia*, and that to-  
ward the North, called *Scandia*, wherein are *Denmarke, Norway,  
Swetland, Iutland*. The Islands are *Britaine*, containing the king-  
doines of *England* and *Scotland, Ireland, Island, Holland, & Engroue-  
land*, in the North Ocean. In the Mediterranean, are *Sicil, Can-  
dy, Corsica, Sardinia, Maiorica, Minorica, Nicropent, Malta,  
Corfu, Stalamine, Mitilin, Sciro*, and many other in the *Archipe-  
lago*. The ayre is passing good, wholsome, temperate, and the  
soyle exceeding fertile. Therein are many goodly Citties, fa-  
mous Mart-Townes, and learned Vniuersities. The people  
thereof haue in all ages excelled all other Nations in courage,  
Artes, sharpnesse of wit, and all other guiftes of nature. In  
times past, it commanded Asia and Affricke by the names of the  
Greekes and Romanes, at this day it is of great force by the  
power of the Turkes and Muscouites, and of no lesse reputati-  
on by the Nauigations of the Spaniards and Portugals: so as it  
seemeth that Nature hath created this people first to rule and  
gouerne others, as men farre surpassing all other nations in wis-  
dome, courage and industry.

### *Ireland.* C H A P. 3.



His Prouince, by the *English, Spanish, and French*,  
is termed *Irland*, or *Ireland*: by the Brittithe,  
*Yuerdhan*, by the Inhabitants *Eryn*. According  
to the caelestiall Globe, it is scituated betweene  
the Articke Circle, and the Tropique of *Cancer*,  
but neerer the Artick circle: contayning in Latitude foure de-  
grees and an halfe, and scituated according to the computati-  
on of our late Writers, betweene the twenty and the 25. Para-  
lels. In the south parts their longest day is of xvi. houres, with  
three fourths: in the Northern of almost xviii. According to  
the Terrestrial, it stands between the greater *Britanny & Spaine*:  
on the East disioynd from Eng. with a tempestuous Sea, tear-  
med *Hibernicum*, not aboue one daies sayling: vppon the West



## Europe.

beateth the vast ocean: vpon the North where the *Deucalidon* ocean disgorgeth, it hath Island disioyned no further then a ship in one day may saile ouer. Vpon the South it beholdeth *Spaine*, distant three dayes sayling, and the *Vergiuian* sea: From South to North it representeth an Oual form, and by halfe is lesse then *Britanny*. Amongst many writers, *Camden*, whome a man may best relye vppon, reporteth that it containeth 400. miles in length, and in bredth 200.

The Aire hereof is most wholesome, the scituation milde, the weather temperate, but not altogether good to ripen fruite. For neither in sommer season the heate is so parching, that it driueth the inhabitant to seeke the shade, neither the cold in winter so rigorous, but that he may well liue from the fire side: By the influence of the aire all partes of the yeare are tollerably warme. It bringeth forth no venomous creature, neither nourisheth any brought from other places. The quality of the soile and constellation of the heauens is moyst with the moist; wherupon it commeth to passe that both inhabitants and straungers are troubled with the flixie and rheumes, and holpen or preuented with drinking Aquauite. The land is of diuers Natures, in some place rough, and mountanous, in others, boggy and waterish; shadowed with huge woods, and exposed to the winds, with intermixture of many great lakes. Yea in the ridge of their highest hils (mountaines indeed I cannot terme them) you shal finde pooles and marishes. It hath goodly hauens, and delectable plaines, but neither comparable to the woods for largenes nor greenesse. It is generally fertil, except *Vlster*, which in some parts is fertil, in othersome barren, and *Connaught*, which is lesse manured then any other county, is fuller of of hilles and bogs, and for the greatest portion, woody. The hilles swarme with cattell and sheepe, from whence they reape plenty of butter, cheese, and milke. The wheate thereof is small and short, and those vines which they cherish, serue rather for shade then profit. For in those countries, the Sun entring into *Virgo*, causeth cold gales to blow, and in Autumne the afternoones heat is so fainte and short, that it cannot ripen the clusters of the vine. It bringeth foorth a race of excellent horse, fit for iourneies, for their ambling paces. It breederh the injurious Woolfe and the  
Foxe,



## Ireland.

Foxe, all other creatures tame and gentle, but of lesser growth, except the Greyhound. Almost all the woods are replenished with Deere, and those so fat, that they can scant run for faintnes: with Bores and Hares in great abundance, but it wanteth Goates, Fallow Deere and Hedge-hogs. Moales are seldome scene, but mice infinite. It aboundeth also with Falcons, Merlins, Eagles, Cranes, and in the northerly parts with Swannes. Storks are very rarely hearde of through the whole Iland, but such as are there found are blacke. Partriches, Fesants, Pyes, and Nightingales are altogether wanting. By reason of the sea, their famous riuers and spacious lakes, it is serued with most excelent fish, and that peculiar to this Iland onely. For to let passe many other, in *Ulster* the *Ban*, being a most faire and cleare water, and arising out of the lake of *Eaugh*, is the most plentifullest riuer for Salmon that is to be found throughout all Europe. For plenty and variety the like is to be reported of *Sineus*, and *Erno*, a lake by *Camdens* report, 30. miles long, and 15. broad: Report saith, that this was once a delicate plot of ground, and well inhabited, but for their bestiall abuse of the people, it was suddainely swallowed in the waters. And to prooue this true, men say that in faire seasons the turrets and tops of houses are in the bottom to be discerned.

In auncient times the inhabitants were barbarous, without learning, vnsociable, wicked, committing incest with their mothers, their sisters, and one anothers wiues, and according to saint Ierome, Cannibals and eaters of humaine flesh: but at this day they are warrelike, witty, of an excellent constitution, soft skind, and by reason of their leane and cleane muscles, of incredible swiftnes and agility: but that they are of a more hot and moyster complexion then other people, may wel be gathered by their extraordinary softnes of their flesh.

The people are of two sorts, the wilde Irish, and the English Irish: the English Irish are subiect and gouerned by lawes, and are curteous and ciuill; and vnto these the English, as the more tractable and richer people, do resorte, partly for lucre of merchandise, and partly to repair their decayed estates in their own country, by whose conuerse the Irish do learne their customes and language. But the wilde Irish who for the greatest parte



## Europe.

inhabite *Conaught*, are cruell and vnciuill, and those who haue least bringing vp, are most inhumaine, louing sloth, & giuen to idlennesse: Yea, so addicted thereunto, that they account theyr greatest riches to be, to want imployment, to goe a roging, and in troopes to beg their liuing. They are very superstitious, and among thē you shall find many Witches, who haue a charm for euery Malady. They delight in Musicke, and especially in the Harp, whose brazen stringes stricken with theyr long Nailes, they cause to yeeld harmonious Cadencies.

Their military discipline consisteth of Horse-men, and Footmen: some vsing most sharp Glaues, others of a more light arming, Darts and Skenes. In stead of Trumpets, they follow the Bagpipe.

The Iland became subiect to the Crowne of *England*, about the yeere of our Lord 1175. *Henry* the second then raigning. At what time *Roderic*, King of *Conaught*, intituling himselfe king of *Ireland*, inforced the residue of that petty Roytelets, to craue assistance of the King of *England*, vnder whose protection they voluntarily yeelded theyr obeyfance. Frō which time the kings of *England* vntill the dayes of *Henry* the eyght, were intituled Lords of *Ireland*, and sithence Kings.

It hath fifty Bishoprickes, whereof *Armach* is a primacie, & *Metropolitan* of the whole Iland. *Cassils* is another Archbishoprick, authorized by Pope *Engenius*, and hath vnder it nine suffragan Bishops.

The whole Iland is deuided into foure prouinces, (viz:) *Leynster*, which East-ward respecteth *England*. *Mounster* which lyeth towards *France* South-ward. *Conaught*, exposed to the west: And *Ulster* scituated in the Northerly part of the Iland. Some adde a fifth, placed in the middest, and terme it *Meath*.

## Brittaine. CHAP. 4.



Mongst all the Ilands of *Europe*, *Brittaine* without all controuersie for circuit, riches & power, hath euer challenged chiefest prerogatiue. It contayneth in circuit 1800. miles, and of ancient times was deuided into two kingdomes, now reynited *England* and *Scotland*.

Eng-



## Brittane.

England is diuided into three great prouinces: *England*, *Cornwall*, and *Wales*. *England* stretcheth to the *Germane* Sea: *Cornwall* is right against *France*: *Wales* against *Ireland*. This flourishing kingdome containeth two Arch-bishopricks, *Canterbury*, and *Yorke*, 26. Bishopricks, 25. citties, 641. Market-townes, & 186. castles. In the raigne of K. *Henry*, and his son *Edward*, there were reckoned forty thousand parishes, but now there remain 9725.

*Cornwall* and *Wales* in comparison thereof are barren, and in the vp-land places the people liue vpon white-meates & Oatenbread, especially in *Wales*: where notwithstanding Nature hath placed an Iland (commonly called *Anglesey*) so neere vnto it, abounding with Corne and Cattle, that it may worthily be called the mother thereof. *Cornwall* is exceeding rich in mines of Tinne and Lead. *England* farre surpasseth both these prouinces in largenesse, riches, and fertility: and though it stand somewhat more Northerly, notwithstanding by the benifit of the sea or some vnknowne influence of the starres, the Ayre there is so gentle and temperate, rather thicke and moyst, then sharp and cold, that in token thereof, the Bay-tree and Rose-Mary is alwaies greene. And it is most certaine, that *Flanders* & *Brabant* are more vexed with cold and Ice then *England*: wherein for the most part the land is plain, yet now and then so garnished with fruitefull and delightfull hills, and those rising so pleasantly by little and little, that they which see them a farre off, can hardly descerne them from the plaine.

The chiefest prouision of the Kingdome is Corne, Cattle, & Fish, so stored therewith for plenty, goodnesse, and sweetnes, that it needeth neither the help of *France*, no nor of any neighbour-bordering-Countrey. Among other things, the flesh especially of their Swine, Oxen and veales, haue the best relish of any part of *Christendome*, and of fish their Pike and Oysters. It bringeth not forth Mules nor Asses, but of horse infinite proportions.

The wealth thereof consisteth in the neuer decaying mynes of Tynne and Lead: there are also found veines of Copper and Iron, & in *Cornwall* is digged Tin of such excellent finenesse, that it seemeth little inferiour to Siluer in allay. Heere the Wools are most fine and soft, by reason of the downes, whereof the

Prouision

Merchandise.  
Minerals

king-



## Europe.

Wooll.

Cloth.

Saffron

Beere

Pelts

Seacoles

kingdome is full. On these downes groweth a small and tender kinde of grasse, neither dinged, nor watred with spring or riuer, but in winter nourished with the moysture of the ayre, and in sommer with the dewe of heauen, which is so gratefull and pleasing to the Sheepe, that it causeth them to beare fleeces of singular goodnes and exceeding finenesse. The Iland breedeth no Woolues nor any other rauening beaste, and therefore their flockes wander night and day, by hils, dales, and fields, as well inclosed as common, without feare or daunger. Most delicate clothes are wouen of this wooll, which from thence are transported in greate aboundance into *Germany, Poland, Denmarke, Sweueland*, and other prouinces where they are in high request. There groweth all sorts of pulse, great store of Saffron, and infinite quantity of Beere transported from thence into *Belgia*; as also pelts and sea-coale. The Iland is so commodiously seated for the sea, that it is neuer without resorte of *Port gall, Spanish, French, Flemmish*, and Easterling merchants. The traffique betweene the *English* and the *Flemish*, ariseth to an inestimable value: for *Guicciardin* writeth, that before the tumults of the Low countries, they bartered for twelue millions of crownes yearly.

There are other Ilands subiect to the Crowne of England, as *Ireland, Wight, Man, and Anglesey*, the ancient dwelling of the *Druides, Syllie, Gernsey, Iersey, and Alderney*.

The pricipall Riuers in this kingdome are Thames and Seuerne. The riuer of Thames is deepe, safe, and capable for receite for the greatest vessels in Christendome. By the tide of the sea, it floweth more then 60. Italian miles into the maine land, therein far surpassing any other riuer through the whole world. Seuerne ariseth out of the mountaines of *Wales*, and turning it selfe into many windings, seemeth to return againe towards his head: but yet gently running forward, watereth the Counties of, Shropshire, Worcestershire, and Gloucestershire; and so at length falleth into the sea of Seauerne.

Humber is a noble riuer, flowing and ebbing, whereinto almost all the waters which runne through the whole territory of *Yorkeshire* do disgorge themselues.

The nation (saith *Polidor*) are of tall and comely constitution of body, faire of face, and for the greatest part grey eyed: and

as



## England

as in pronounciation they resemble the *Italians*, so are they wholly like them in decencie of body and fashionable carriage: but in apparrell they follow the *French*. The woemen are most faire and amiable, and for their comely attire, most commendable. Their food for the most part consisteth vpon flesh. Their Beere (a beuerage confected of water and barley, and most in vse) is both pleasing and phisicall; for the good and wholesome taste whercof, it is greatly desired and transported into the lower *Germany* in great aboundance. In their dyet they conuerse with mirth, neatnes, and store of viands. In warre they are resolute, excellent archers, and impatient of delay: and therefore they are no looner in armes, but they cry to the field, knowing that all good fortune attendeth resolution. No nation desireth battaile more then this, (saith *Comines*). They build no places of force (neasts for tyrants,) but rather pull downe such as antiquity hath erected, suffering such as are ruinous vtterly to perish. In comparison of othet nations, they may be saide to liue long, as attaining to the yeares of one hundred and vpward.

In strength of scituation no kingdome excelleth this: for it hath the twoe properties, which *Aristotle* wisheth to be regarded in the building of a cittie: the one is, that it be difficult to besiege: the other, that it be easie for conueying in & transporting out of all thinges necessary. These two commodities hath England by the sea, which to the inhabitants is a deepe trench against hostile inuasions, and an easie passage to take in, and to send out all commodities whatsoeuer; beeing scituated in the bosome of the maine Ocean, which euen by naturall causes fortifieth the Iland, more then any sea doeth any other kingdome. For on the West lyeth the Irish Ocean, a sea so turbulent and so full of rocks and flates, that it is very dangerous for great ships; and on the Easte, South, and North, the flowing and ebbing of the brittish Ocean is so accidentall, the remouing of the sandes and shelues so vncertain, and the rising and falling of the water betweene twelue and fiteene fathom (a thing wonderfull to be spoken off) so ordinary euery twelue houres, that without an English Pilot, no stranger shall be able to bring in a vessell in safety, and hee likewise must bring his tyde iustly with him, or otherwise it is impossible to lande without perill. The sea



## Europe.

coaste on euery side is cliffe and inaccessible, excepte in some certaine places which are strongly fortified; as Barwicke, Douer, Dartmouth, Plimouth, Farnmouth, Bristow, Milford, &c. so that the whole Iland may be taken for one impregnable castle.

By-Sea

To this strength of scituation may be ioyned their sea and land forces. As touching their sea forces (besides the Nauy Royall) the kingdome hath so many faire hauens, and those so frequented with merchants, that two thousand ships are reported to trafique there. Be this as it may, it is vndoubtedly true, that vppon necessitie, they are able to put to sea aboue foure hundred shippes. *Edward* the third at the siege of Cales, and *Henry* the eight, at the siege of Bullen, wafted ouer with a thousand saile of all sorts.

Nauigatio

And euen in our dayes, in the yere 1588: all Christendom beheld the nauy of *Queen Elizabeth*, amased of her own ships and her owne subiects, not onely to affront the great king of *Europe* in his owne dominions, but also to infest his whole nauigation throughout the Indian & Atlantique Oceans, yea and when he threatned the Iland with his vtmost forces, patching and peccing his nauy with all the credit he had, amongst his frends; the *Italians* and *Easterlings*, yet was he beaten and ronted by the *English*, without the aid & assistance (by the fauor of the almighty,) of any one ship borrowed, hired, or imbargued from any other Christian potentate. And therefore to inuade that Iland, whose hauens are hard to aproach, and worse to enter, by reason of the fortifications, and hauing so many ships at cōmand, I account it a most difficult and dangerous enterprife. And to this dāgerous difficulty may be added another; which is, that the *English* people are maruelous expert in maritime actions, then whom at sea there is not a valianter and bolder nation vnder heauen. For in most swift ships, excelent wel furnished with ordinance (wherewith the kingdome aboundeth) they go to sea with as good courage in winter as in summer, al is one with them. They trade into *Muscouie*, *Cathay*, *Alexandria* of *Egypt*, *Constantinople*, *Venice*, *Florence*, *Liuania*, *Barbary* and *Guinea*. Anno 1585. with a fleet of 25. ships, wherein were 2500. souldiers, they sayled into the West Indies, and tooke *S. Iago S. Domingo* in *Hi paniola* and *Cartagena* on the continent, *Saint Augustines* a city built of timber, and by them.



## England

them destroyed with fire. Besides diuers other iorneies of like nature performed vpon like considerations during the wars between *Queen Elizabeth* and *Phillip* the second.

In the time of warre they continually vexe the *Terceraz* and the coast of *Brasil*, the *Canaries*, *Capo*, *Verd*, and all the coastes of their enemies. Two of their Captaines sayled rounde about the world, with no lesse courage then glory and good fortune.

Their force at land is nothing inferior to that at sea; for the kingdome is diuided into two & fifty shires, in one only whereof (commonly called *Yorkshire*) it is thought 70000. footemen may be leuied. Euery shire hath a Liuetenant, who seeth to the election and training of soldiers, when necessity requireth. In choosing of souldiers, they take the names of all inhabitants of the countrey from aboue sixteen yeares of age to sixty, and out of these they choose the likliest and ablest for seruice. The taller and stronger are chosen for footemen, and these diuided into foure kinds. The first are archers, by whose dexterity they conquered the greatest part of *France*, tooke king *John* captiue, and held *Paris* sixteen yeares in subiection.

Archers.

The arrows of the *Parthians* were neuer more dreadfull to the *Romains*, then the bowes of the English to Frenchmen. The second sort vsed light slaues, well headed with iron, with which they would strike a man from his horse. The other two, vse and experience of latter times hath taught them: the one is the harquebuse, the other the pike, a fit weapon for their constitution, by reason of their tall, strong and manlike stature. For their seruice on horse-backe, they hoose men of small stature, but well set, actiue & nimble. These horsinen are of two sorts; some heuy armed, and those for the most part are gentlemen; other lighter armed; some riding after the maner of the *Albanneses*; some after the fashion of *Italy*, vsing a scul, a iack, a sword & long light speares. And although they are able to bring to the field 2000. men at armes, and infinite troupes of light horsemen; yet their horsemen neuer carried like reputation to their footemen: for *Edward* the third (which made so many iorneies into *France*) and obtained so many famous victories, to shew what confidence he reposed in his infanterie, euer left his horse and put himself into the battell of his footmē: whereas the French kings not daring to

Light horse men

Harquebusers  
Pikemen



## Europe.

invre their commons to warfare (least leauing their manuell occupations and trades, they should grow insolent in the warres, to which humour they are greatly addicted) alwaies put themselves and their hopes vpon the fortune of their caualrie, being all almost gentlemen. But for asmuch, as the French maintaine no good races of horse, and to purchase them from other places is a matter of great charge, and good cannot alwaies be gotten for mony; for these reasons, and for that horsemen are nothing so seruiceable in the field as footemen, I think the French haue so often been defeated by the English.

To shew what force the Kings of England are able to bring into the fielde, let this one example stand for many. *Henry* the eight passed to Bullen with an army diuided into three Battalions: in the vantgard passed twelue thousand footmen, and five hundered light horsemen, clothed in blewe iackets with redde gardes. The middle ward (wherin the King was, and passed last ouer) consisted of twenty thousand footmen, and two thousand horse, clothed with red iackets and yellow gardes. In the rereward was the Duke of Norfolke, and with him an army like in number and apparrell to the first, sauing that therein serued one thousand Irishmen, all naked saue their mantels and their thicke gathered shirts: Their armes were three darts, a sworde and a skeane.

They drewe after them one hundered great pieces, besides small: an army by the censure of *Gnacciardin*, not more notable by the multitudes of souldiers and consideration of their valor, then most glorious by the presence and maiesty of their King, in whose person appeared at that instant, being in an age disposed and actiue, all those tokens of honour and magnanimity, which rising after to their full ripenesse and perfection by degrees of time, study and experience, made him the most renowned and mighty prince that liued in his age, in al this parte or cyrcuit of the earth which we call Christendome. Their carriages were so many, that therewith they intrenched their campe, like a wall. And for the carriage of their ordinance and their baggage, and for drawing of their prouision, they transported into the continent aboue five and twenty horse: and beside all other kinde of prouision, they broughte cattell. The quantities of ladders, bridges



## Scotland.

bridges, shot, powder, and other furnitures following so royall an army, what pen can number?

To conclude, in England the nobility possesse few castels or strong places inuironed with walles and ditches, neither haue they iurisdiction ouer the people. The dignities of Dukedomes, Marquesses, and Earldomes, are no more but bare tithes, which the king bestoweth on whome hee pleaseth, and peradventure they possesse neuer a peny of reuenue in the place from whence they take their tith: wher on the contrary the nobility in France possesse some absolute, some mixt gouernment, with the hereditarie titles of Lords, Barrons, Earles, Marquesses, Dukes, and Princes. They are Lords not of townes onely, but of great and goodly cities; receiuing homage and fealtie of their tenants: onely acknowledging the soueraignty of the King and the parliaments.

## Scotland. C H A P. 5.



He prouince that more Northerly bordereth vpon England, is Scotland, and vpon the East is diuided by the riuer Tweede, vpon the West.

Vppon the other partes it is incircled with the Ocean German sea. The fourme thereof is verie mieren, strecthing into infinite promontaries, and producing many peni-insulaes, wherein *Ptholomy* by describing it to trend streight forth into the North, was much deceiued. And yet the length thereof beginning at the riuer Tweede, to the vtmost North, where it endeth in the fashon of a wedge, contayneth by estimation 480. miles.

The region is rough, mountainous, not so fruitfull as England, yet better stored with fish. It hath many goodly harbors from the sea, amongst which, Lethe commonly called the Frith, carrieth chiefe credit for large receite and commodious scituation. Yea the sea doeth so commodiously intercut euery parcell of the kingdome, that almost no house is distant aboue twentie leagues from salt water; abounding with oysters, herring, and diuers sorts of shell-fish.



## Europe.

By nature the countrey is verie strong, as safe guarded by the roughnesse of the mountaines, and frequency of the woods, whereunto the inhabitants in extremitie of daunger retire, and there illude the pursuite of their enemies, neuer wanting the reliefe of fish and wilde beastes. The commodities from hence transported, are lowe prised Carries, Frises, Sea-coales, Barley, and Malt.

The Sothern part is more fertill then the Northerne, and the inhabitants thereof more ciuill, better qualified and more tractable then the other, as being conuersant and acquainted with English men and the English language.

But those that inhabite the North, for the most parte are vnciuill, vnsociable, and therefore tearmed *Agrestes*; as participating in nature of the rough influence of that climate, and inured to cruelty and fiercenesse by the aboundance of bloode. These are quallified like the Irish, (from whome they are descended,) they speake their language, and retaine the fourme of their auncient Armes, and attire. Generally they are verie wittie and industrious, fierce, and prone to reuenge. In warre they are valiant, and indurable of trauaile, of hunger and watching.

## CHAP. 6.

*Ilands belonging to the Crowne of  
great Brittain.*



The first are the *Sorlings*, and lye against the cape of *Cornwall*. They are now termed *Silly*, and are few lesse then 145. couered with grasse, and inclosed with huge and massie rockes. They are fruitfull inough for corne, but are vsed altogether to the feeding of Conies, Cranes, Swannes, and sea Fowle. Some of them yeeld Tin, and the fairest thereof is called *S. Maries*, being fortified with a castle & garrison. The residue of lesse fame for breuity we wil willingly omit.

**I**N the Seuerne sea lye *Caldey* and *Londay*: *Londay* is two miles long, and as many broade; full of good pasture and abounding



## Brittaine.

ding with Conies, and Doves, and those Fowles which *Alexander Necham* termeth *Ganimed* his birds. And though it be wholly incircled with the sea, yet it yeeldeth fresh water from the mountaines, and openeth but one onely passage, wherethrough twoe men can hardly passe a front, the residue is inclosed with high and horrible ouershuits of rocks.

**M***Cna* is a famous Iland seperated from Wales by a smal fret, the auncient dwelling place of the *Druides*. It is two and twenty miles long, and threescore broade. Although that in auncient times, this Iland seemed barren and vnpleasant, yet in these dayes, it hath been so well husbanded, and become so fertill, that it is stiled the *Mother of Wales*. It is sufficiently stored with Cattell, it yeeldeth the grinde-stone, and the minerall earth, whereof Allom and Vitriall are confected. It once contayned 363. Villages, and is at this day reasonable populous: the Ilanders are wealthy and valiant, and altogether speake the welsh tong.

*Camden &  
Gyraldus.*

**M***An* lyeth iust betwecne the Northerne partes of Ireland and Brittaine. In length it contayneth little lesse then thirty Italian miles, in breadth where it is broadest not aboue fifteene, and in some places hardly eight. In *Bedeas* time (sayth *Camden*) it contayned 300. families, but now it can shew not aboue seauenteene parish Churches. It yeeldeth plentiful store of flaxe and hempe, tillage and pasture, wheat and barley, but especially of oates, whereof for the most parte the inhabitants feede. There is also droues of rother beastes to be seene, and flocks of sheepe without number, but generally all sortes of cattel are lesse of growth then in England. In steed of wood, they vse a bituminous coale, in digging whereof, sometimes they light vppon trees buried in the earth. The inhabitantes aboue all thinges hate thefte and begging, being but weake by nature. Those which inhabite the Sotherne partes, speake the Irish tounge, those which dwell towards the North speake the Scottish.

**T**He *Hebrides* are 44. in number, and lie vppon the South of Scotland; the *Orchades* are 30. and extende towards the North. The inhabitants of the former speak Irish: the people of the latter, Gottich.

*Wight*



## Europe.

**W**ight is seated in the Brittain Ocean: the inhabitants (sayth *Camden*) are warlike, the soile gratefull to the ploughman, and well replenished with pastures. It hath in it sixe and thirtie villages, hamlettes and Castles; In *Bedaes* time 1200. families.

**J**arsey, lyeth ouer against *Constans* an auncient citty of *Nor-mandy*, containeth about thirity miles in circuit, and is inuironed with rocks and dangerous shallowes. It is very fruitfull in fruite and cattell, in plenty of fish, and by reason of their many orchards, abounding with that kinde of wine which the English call Sider. Instead of wood, which the Iland wanteth, they make their fuell of sea-weede dried in the sun, and growing so thicke vpon the rocks, that a far off a sea man would indge them to be whole acres of copize. With the ashes herof they manure their grounds: It containeth 12. parishes.

**G**arnsey is twenty miles distant from *Jarsey*, somewhat lesse, and nothing so fruitefull. It nourisheth no venemous creature, as doth the former; It is better fortified by nature, and fro the tops of the broken rocks wherewith it is incircled, doe the Lapidaries and Glasiers fetch that most hard stone, wherewith they cut their iewels and glasse. The hauen likewise is more secure and safe for shipping and marchants, especially at the harbour of saint Peter, where by auncient priuiledges of the kings of England (saith *Camden*) is continuall truce, be the war neuer so open and furious betweene the French and the English. For in these times may the marchants of either nation resorte without wrong or daunger. They want woode likewise, and therefore either vse the foresaid weed for fuel, or sea-coales brought out of England.

## Denmarke. CHAP. 7.

**A**lthough it may seeme needlesse to make any mention of *Scandia*, which is that whol *peninsula* of huge circuit, which is almost incompassed with the waues of the sea, and abutteth northward and eastwarde vpon the *German* and *Sar-*



## Scandia.

*Sarmatian* coastes, because it is as it weere scituated in another worlde; and with whome there is no great entercourse of trading, yet for the spacious largenesse thereof contayning twoe kingdomes, *Norway* and *Sweueland*, with parte of *Denmarke*, it may well deserue a place amongst other kingdomes spoken of in these relations. It is scituate in that parte of Europe which some terme *Scandia*, others *Seandania*, or *Balthia*; from whence issued the *Gothes* and *Vandales*, the very rooters vp of the Roman Empire. It is subiect both to the *Danish* and *Sweuian* crowne.

The King of *Denmark* besides the *Cimbrian Chersonsse* (where *Helsatia Theuomarfia*, the Dukedome of *Slesia*, *Flensburge*, *Friesland*, and *Iutland*, regions fruitfull, replenished with store of cattle, and wilde beasts, do lie) retaineth other spacious Ilands, the best whereof stand in the entrance of the Baltike sea, being 15. in number, all comprehended vnder the name *Denmark*. The chiefest of them is *Selandunia*, contayning threescore miles in length, and little lesse in bredth. It excelleth the rest, both for the number of villages, the mildenes of the ayre, and because it hath beene and is the seate of their Kings, He hath also *Gothland* vnder his iurisdiction, which is placed right ouer against *Gothia*. One of his kinsmen hath the gouernment of *Ostlia*, a prety Iland in the greater gulfe of *Liunia*; and ruleth those fat and plentifulous countries which lie on the continent of *Liunia*. *Scania* likewise acknowledgeth his soueragnty; and he holdeth the kingdome of *Norway*, which from the confines of *Scania* extendeth and stretcheth Northward 1300. miles to the castle of *Wardhouse*, vppon which border the *Lappians*. The Iles adioyning thereto, *Sania*, *Setland*, and *Faria*, (lying in the maine sea) are in his tenure. In times past the people of *Norway* haue bin of great puissance: they afflicted *England*, scourged *Fraunce*, and therein obtained a prouince called to this day *Normandy*. In *Italy* they conquered the kingdome of *Sicill* and *Apulia*. And in holy war *Boemond* leader of the *Normans*, woon the principallitie of *Antioch*. In the North Ocean (besides that of *Friesland*, and the sea coaste of *Island* and *Groinland*) hee holdeth the dominions of the foresaid Ilands of *Sbetland* & *Faria*. The *Orchades* acknowledge the kings of *Norway* for their lordes, although they are subiect to the *Scottish* crowne. Sithence the kingdome of *Norway* be-



# Europe.

came elective, and turmoyled with ciuill wars and intestine discords, it came to the possession of the *Danish* Kings, who, that he may hold it surely, intreateth the Inhabitants cruelly, spoiling them of their substance, and to leaue no hope of better fortune to this miserable people, he holdeth fortified al the creeks and hauens of the sea-coast.

Riches.

Corne.  
Timber.

Stockfish.

Forces as  
land.

The wealth of the kingdome consisteth in the aboundance of cattlc & sea-fish, whereof there is such store, that of the herring fishing onely, a mighty masse of Money is yeerely gathered; so huge is the number of all sort of fish, that at sometimes of the yeere a ship can make but slow way in the sea; & the Marrisches and Medowes adioyning therunto are very pleasant and fauory to the feeding of their Cattle. *Scania* is rich in Corne, and pasture, and well replenished with people: *Norwey* hath no riches of any moment, except timber fit for the erecting of houses and building of shippes (from thence transported into *Holland* and *Flanders*) and cattlc affording great store of Cheese and Milke. Some profit also ariseth of a kinde of Fish dryed in the winde, which the *Dutchmen* call *Stock-fish*. It is taken in *January*, & laid in the wind and cold, vntil it be indurate & hardned like wood, and then carryed into diuers Regions as a kinde of sustenance. The greatest matter of gain to the king of *Denmarke*, is the narrow sea or streight, betweene *Cronburg* and *Eltzenburg*, commonly called the *Sound*, which is a passage so narrow, that no shipping can passe that way, without the licence and fauour of the watchmen, keeping garrison there to receiue the impostes, and customes of the arriuing vessels: it is easily gathered to vwhat some of Money that impost amounteth, by the infinite number of shipping of *Holland*, *Zealand*, *France*, *England*, *Scotland*, *Norwey*, and the *Balticke* Sea, that saile in those seas, and of necessity must passe the iawes of that narrow streight. The inhabitants are as greedy of *Rhenish*, *French*, and *Spanish* wines, the Spices of *Portugall*, and the fruits of *Antoluzia*, as they againe are needy of the Waxe, Hony, Skins, and Corne, which are brought thither from *Prussia*, *Linonia*, *Mosconia*, and the bordering nations. Touching his powerful ablenes in land seruice, it was neuer seen that he enterprized any iourney of reputation, but that against the *Theutomarsi*, vpon whom King *Valdemar* layde the yoake of sub-



## Scandia.

subiection : but falling againe into rebellion, after many chances of war, beginning in the yeere 1500. they were vtterly vanquished by *Fredericke* the second, in the yeere of our Lord 1558. Before these ouerthrowes they discomfited *John*, the son of king *Christian* the first.

What this king is able to performe by sea, may be gathered by the nauies, which vpon occasions he hath rigged at the intreaty of *Henry*, the second King of *France*. *Christian* the second sent a Nauy of a hundred ships into *Scotland* against the *English*, and in them ten thousand Land-Souldiers. But for as much as it is apparant that he is Lord of so ample a Sea-coast, and possesseth so many hauens in *Denmarke*, *Scandia*, *Norwey*, and so many Ilands without the *Balticke* Sea, it is most likely that hee is able to assemble a great fleet of ships if Mony were not wanting : which as I take it, cannot but often faile him, considering that in his whole kingdom there is growing no Marchandize of value (excepting sea-fish) neither is there any famous Mart-town, which is able to draw, or long to maintaine traffique with other Nations. The greatest matter is his customes of the Sea-townes, the profit of certain mines in *Scandia*, the Horses and cattle of the *Danish Chersness*, the timber and fish of *Norwey*, and the Ilands. It hath beene obserued, that 50000. Oxen hath bin driuen out of these prouinces into *Germany*; for which, tole hath been payd at *Gutthorp*. He reapeth some profit likewise of *Ward-house*, whether the *English* now of late yeeres haue sayled betweene *Norwey* and *Groenlant*; some to *Colmogro*, others to *Stockholme*, not farre from *S. Nicholas*, where they traffique with the *Russies* for wax, for hony, & for flax: thither resort likewise *Hollanders*, *Scots*, and *Frenchmen*. Almost in the middle of this bay is also an Iland and towne called *Wardohuis*, which *Fredericke* the second caused to be very strongly fortified, & here the Merchants do pay their custome.

## Norwey. CHAP. 8.

**N**orwey vpon the East respecteth *Denmarke*, on the Welt, it is bounded with the Ocean : on the South lyeth *Sweuia*,



## Europe.

vpon the North it is seperated from *Lapland* by high and steepe craggy rocks. The Westerne and Easterne parts are rocky and hard to trauell, yet is the ayre there temperate, in somuch that the sea freezeth not, neither doe the snowes long continue.

The land it selfe is not very fruitfull to sufficiencie, for it is poore, and towards the North, what by reason of the rockes and cold, it yeeldeth no sort of corne. And therefore the inhabitants (except the better sort) instead of bread, eat dried fish, viz: stock fish, which to their great profit they transport through Europe, and exchange for corne. The countrey, (especially the Sothern parts,) transport rich Furrer, Tallowe Butter, Tand-Leather, Traine-Oyle, Pitch, Clap-boord, all sorts of Timber-works, & Mastes, Fire-wood, and Timber for building, and that with great ease and little charge.

Their owne buildings are base and poore, and the inhabitants honest, louers of strangers, liberall of giift, and most seruiceable. Amongest them are neither Filchers, Theeues, nor Pyrats, though they dwell in a most conuenient scituation for Pyracie. *Birgis* was once their Metropolis, a hanse towne, and for its safe harbour, one of the foure cheefe Mart-townes in Europe, (viz:) *Birgis* in *Normey*, *London* in *England*, *Nugardia* in *Moscouie*, and *Burgis* in *Flandens*: But it is now decayed.

The cold, Northerly, and smally-frequented Ilands of *Schetland*, *Frisland*, *Island*, and *Gröneland*, with the Navigations (such as they are) thereunto for Fish, I imagine euery man can conceiue, and therefore forbear further to writ.

## *Sweueland.* C H A P. 9.



He King of *Sweueland* raigneth in *Scandie*, which is a larger prouince then *Denmarke*; for it is accounted to bee a iourney of five and forty dayes from the borders of *Scandia* to *Lapland*, and the coast of the *Balticke* Sea, is little lesse then 4. hundred leagues long, a tract of Land esteemed larger then *France*, & *Italy*. In *Liunia* this posseth *Riualia*, the *Narue*, *Danouia*, and other peeces of good estimation, the Ilands *Vlander*, *Alandes*, and



## Scandia.

and other places (not woorthy speaking off) scituated in the *Sweucian* and *Finland* Sea. These regions besides *Liunia* are diuided into three seuerall Kingdomes, (viz :) *Gotbland*, *Sweueland*, and *Vandalia*, which againe are subdiuided into eleuen prouinces, and twelue Countries, amongst which the *Lappians* are not accounted, because this people (though inhabiting a larger Countrey then *Sweueland*) cannot bee teamed to liue vnder any certaine dominion, by reason of their misery, pouerty, and wandering from place to place, thorough Woods and Mountaines; but they, who haue any manner of certaine abode, or setled habitation, are vnder the Sweuish dominion, and pay rich skinned for their tribute.

Of the three Kingdomes whereof wee spake, *Gotland* bordereth with *Scandia*, and is diuided into East & West, both bounded vpon the lake *Weret*: in the middest whereof the King (delighting in the pleasantnesse of the place) keepeth his Court. Twenty foure Riueris doe runne into this lake, yet it emptieth it selfe but by one mouth. The inhabitants for the excessiue noyse of Waters, call it in their tongue, the Deuils head. The *Gothia* signifieth a good Countrey, which doth well agree thereto for the aboundance of sustenance, no region being comparable vnto it for fertility of flesh, Fish, and Corne.

Next followeth *Sweueland*, which is larger then *Norwey* and *Goiland* both together. In *Sweueland* is *Upsalia* their cheefe Citty, and *Stockholme* (the Kinges seat.) *Stringa*, *Enuecopia*, *Orogundia*, *Arboia*, *Arosia*.

Then comes *Finneland* scituated betweene the *Balticke* and *Finland*. *Finland* Bay, where stand *Abo* the chiefe Citty, *Raugina* and *Ango*, both famous Mart-townes: *Vames*, *Viburge* and *Castleholme*, in the *Alandian* Ilands. The Husbandmen doe not inhabite in Townes, but by reason of the inplenty of Timber and Woodes, the Vallies and other places are so well defended from the fury of the Northern vvind, that they liue here in very good sort, keeping in their Houses flockes of Cattle, and all sorts of Instruments to digge, to build, or to make any thing necessary for the life of man; and this is the reason, that townes heere are neither so faire nor so frequent, as in *Germany* or *England*. Ouer and aboue, the Citties and Villages, there are accounted 1433. parishes:



## Europe.

Parishes, in some of which, a thousand people or (as they tearme it) a thousand Householders or fires do inhabite, but there are fewe of these Parishes, in which at the least there are not one hundred families. By this a man may iudge the number of this people, especially if he consider the fruitfulness of their generation; for the Women of *Finland* by a secret operation of their Beere (as some thinke) become exceeding fruitfull. The menne liue heere very long, cheefely in the most Northerly parts; neither is it miraculous amongst them to see a manne liue aboue an hundred and thirty or forty yeeres. And in truth, thys long liuing is the cause of their propagation: for where men liue shortest liues, there the vertue of generation must needes soonest decay: and therefore our Lord GOD in the beginning of the World did permit mankind to liue seauen hundred yeeres and more, that the world might the sooner be peopled, and the act of generation (which now for the shortnes of our liues is determined within forty yeeres) was then more vigorous at one hundred and vpward, then in this our age at twenty.

Riches.

Prouision.

Siluer.

The riches of this Kingdome consisteth in plenty of victuals, which this word *Gothia* (signifying an heauenly Region, as we sayde before) and *Finneland* (signifying a good Countrey) doe well witnesse. Their prouision is flesh, fresh-fish, salt-fish, Fish dryed in the smoake and sun, corne and beere: whereof there is so great aboundance, that it is a hard thing to see a Begger amongst them, and traouellers are there freely entertained. It is so rich in mines of Lead, Copper, Siluer, and some Gold, that no Prouince in Europe may compare therewith. And these mines are to be found in euery place, if the country people (bound to carry wood to the mines, and to other seruile works) did not hide and hinder the discouery thereof as much as in them lieth. Most fine Siluer is found in the Prouince of *Vestros*; and more wold be, were it not for the enuy of the inhabitants, who thogh they know not the vse of trying of mettals, do notwithstanding murmur that any strangers should imploy their labours therein. And this their frowardnes toward strangers ariseth not of hatred, but vpon a ielousie, that they should be ouer-reached, or otherwise abused: for by nature they are simple and well meaning, not giuen to ambition, nor infected with auarice.

The



## Scandia.

The Kinges reuenuē consisteth in foure things; the tenths of <sup>Reuenues.</sup> Ecclesiasticall liuings, mines, tributes, and customes. The profits of the Church-liuings amount to a good sum of Money: for in this Kingdome there were seuen Cathedrall Churches: three-score *Monasteries* of men and women, endowed with most rich reuenues. First *Gustan*, and after his Son *Eric* seized the greatest part thereof into their possessions. Some of the foresaid mines are wrought at the Kings charges; some at the charge of priuat persons, allowing onely the tenth part.

Of three Copper-works I haue known the tenth part (which <sup>Copper.</sup> is the Kings) to amount to the value of three thousand Dolars yeerely: heereby estimation may bee made of the Syluer and Lead. But his Taxes doe farre surpasse all his other in-comes: for he leuieth the tenth of Rie, VVheate, Barley, Fish, Oxen, Skinnes, and such like. Of the tenth of Oxen, at some times hee hath gathered eyghtene thousand, and with them mayntayneth his Court, his Officers, his Nauy, and his Armies: for <sup>Taxes.</sup> in the time of warre, eyther with the *Dane* or *Moscouite*, hee alloweth his Souldiers victualles, and by this meanes prouideth it at very easie rates, as well offending as defending. The marriage of the Kinges Daughters is at the disposition of the people, and they allow them besides Siluer, Plate, and other gifts, one hundred thousand Dolars for a dowry. Of the vplandish people and others, vvhich pay not the imposition of victualles, the King is accustomed to exact of euery poll according to his ability, fiue dolars or more yeerely. The Customes are payde in the Hauen-Townes; the cheefe whereof are *Caimare*, *Lodhuis*, and *Stockholme*, (where at some times three hundred shippes of burthen are to bee seene) *Abo*, *Anga*, *Reualia*, *Parnouia*, *Narue*. It is thought that the K. doth lay vp in his treasury 6. or 7. hundred M. dolars ouer & aboue the expences vpon the fortresses of *Reualia* & *Viburgh*. Ther are maintained in *Swene-* <sup>Forces of</sup> *land* and *Gothland* about 32. companies, eucty troupe consisting <sup>Footmen.</sup> of 500. or six hundred Souldiers, all harquebusiers, alwaies ready to march whither occasiō calleth. Because of the thicknes of the woods, the horsemen serue with petronels, and sildome vse pikes or lances. These are most excellent footemen; for euerie soldier is able to make and furnish himselfe with any furniture  
what-



## Europe.

whatsoever, euen the making of his owne flask and touch-box; as likewise the common people in *Perunia*, and the neighbouring prouinces, being contented with a little, haue alwayes accustomed to make all implements for their houses and bodyes; to build, to Weaue, to play the Taylors, to Sow, to Reape, & to forge tooles fit for their businesse. And as for those Trades, which are neyther common nor necessary, as to paint, to worke in Siluer, and such like, there are notwithstanding found among them vety good Worke-men, wanting rather matter then Arte to worke vpon. The *Swenian* Horse-men are diuided into thirteene companies: *Sweueland* and *Gothland* maintayne eleuen, & *Finland* two; and vpon necessity they can rayse a greater force: for the Dukedome of *Vrmeland* (as report goeth) is able to furnish better then ten thousand men with Horse. In *Marchland* there is such plentyfull breede of Horse, that there they are sold at a very low rate. Both these prouinces are in *Gothland*. Their Horse is not so bigge bodyed as the *Firelander*, but exceeding strong, hardy, actiue, able to endure trauell, and fed with a little. I will not omit to speake of two noble vsages of the King of *Sweueland* towards his Souldiers: one is, that if a Souldier bee taken Prisoner, hee is ransomed at the Kinges charges; the other, that if his Horse bee slaine, the King bestoweth another vpon him. To his Captaines, and those which serue on Horsebacke, in part of payment of their wages, hee giueth yeerely a Garment, which the  *Germans* tearmeth *Idolis*, and may be taken for a Cassocke.

Sea forces.

As touching their Sea affaires, by reason of their huge Sea-Coast, and infinite hauens, the Kingdome swarmeth with Mariners and shipping, which the King may arrest in his Dominions, as other Princes are accustomed to doe; hee maintayneth commonly fifty ships of war, whereof euery one carryeth forty peeces of ordinance, more or lesse. King *Gustan* first brought in the vse of Gallies. In the warre which King *Iohn* waged with the *Danes* (before the peace treated on at *Stetin* was agreed) he put to Sea seauenty great shippes, besides other of smaller burthen, in which were 22000. fighting men. In the Summer time they war at Sea; in the Winter at land: for then the Riuers are frozen, as likewise the sea neere the shore for a great space. See-  
ing



## France.

ing I haue spoken of Gunnes, I will adde thus much, that the King is thought to haue about eyght thousand great peeces, the most part of Brasie, and that he could cast many more if he had more store of tin. In the Castle of *Stockholme* onely are numbred foure hundred.

Vppon the West side of *Sweeland* is *Denmarke*; on the East *Moscouie*, with both which he hath had long warre. The *Swe-  
uians* haue suffered much losse by the *Denmarkes*: for king *Chri-  
stian* the second besiedged *Stockholme*, & forced it, committing  
all kind of cruelty against the Inhabitans, filling the Citty with  
bloud and dead carcases. The title which the *Dane* pretendeth  
to the Crowne of *Sweeland*, is the cause of their enmities. The  
Hauens, the scituation of the Countrey, and especially *Gothland*  
(which is a member of *Gothia*, and therefore the *Sweuian* clay-  
meth it as his right) affordeth the *Dane* this facility of inuading  
at his pleasure. After *Gustan* recouered the Kingdome, he & hys  
sonne *Henry* and *Iohn* raigned successiuely: and although bloud  
enough hath beene shed in the warres betweene *Gustan* and the  
*Danes*, yet the Kingdome hath retayned her honour: and the  
Citty of *Lubecke* (the mightiest state in that Sea) sometimes by  
confederating with the one, sometime with the other, doth in  
so euen a ballance peyse the differences of these two Nations;  
as it suffereth not the one to practise against the other, vpon the  
perrill that may ensue to the offender. In warring with the  
*Moscouie*, the *Sweuian* hath most aduantage, because *Finneland*  
(which bordereth vpon *Russia*) by reason of the great Marishes,  
whereof it is full, yeeldeth hard and perrilous passage to the e-  
nemy, oftentimes swallowing vp whole Armyes in those con-  
gealed waters: there he keepes the Castles of *Vsburge*, *Narue*,  
*Reuelia*, and other piles & peeces vpon the borders of the great  
Duke of *Moscouia*, excellent well fortified, as bridles to stoppe  
his violent courses. In which, hee dooth very wisely; for those  
peeces which lie in the territories of our enemies are to bee re-  
garded most carefully, because they bring foorth two notable  
effects: first, they defend what is ours, and offend what is the  
enemies. The further they are distant from our borders, the  
better they stand vs in steed: for while the enemy is occupied  
in besiedging thereof, our owne state standeth in quiet, & time  
F  
affoordeth



## Europe.

safoordeth meanes for rescue, or deliuiery thereof at leysure, & that without spoyle to our owne people, or losse of our proper reuenues. They grieue the enemy with so much the more damage, by how much the neerer they are scituated vnto them. Of this effect was *Caleis* in the possession of the English, & the places which the *Spaniards* and *Portugals* hold in *Affricke*. But the fortresses built in our owne borders, serue to no other end, then to defend what is already ours, and that to our great disadvantage: for as oftentimes they are inuaded, all things are doone at a sudden, and it cannot be auoided, but somewhat will fall to the spoyle of the enemy. To end with the King of *Sweueland*, he is so much better able then the *Moscouite* to defend his territories, by how much sea-forces ioyned to land-forces are able to preuaile against a state furnished with Land-forces onely.

### CHAP. 10.

## The Kingdome of France.



THE kingdome of *France* hath for his bounds the *Alpes*, which diuide it from *Italy*, the *Rhodanus* which separates it from *Sauoy*; *Sagona*, which parts it from the *Burgundians*, and the Riuer *Mosell*, which diuides it from *Lorraine*, and the *Dutchy* of *Lucemburge*. It hath on the East, the Riuer *Aa*; on the South, the *Mediterranean* Sea, and the *Pyrenean* Mountaines; on the West, the great Ocean; and on the North, the English Ocean. The neerer the North, the narrower it is, and narrowest betweene *Caleis* and the *Brittish* promontory. The figure thereof is betweene round and square, and therefore bigger then a man would take it. It contayneth most large Prouinces, as *Picardie*, *Normandie*, *Brittanie*, the Isle of *France*, *Champaigne*, *Burgundie*, *Auergne*, *Dalphenie*, *Prouince*, *Bry*, *Blais*, *Turin*, the *Dutchie* of *Aniou*, *Zantoin*, *Burgundy*, and many others. The beginning thereof standeth in forty two degrees, and inioyeth such diuersity of Ayre, that that part which lyeth toward the *Mediterranean* Sea, (where standes *Languedoc* and *Prouince*) bringeth forth all sortes of fruites like *Italy*; that which is towardes the Eng-



## Scandia.

English Ocean (where standes *Brittany*, *Normandy*, and part of *Picardie*) bringeth forth no wine; the residue of the kingdome aboundeth aboue beleefe with all kindes of fruites which Europe affordeth, except Oliues, Figges, and such like. The gentleness of the Ayre, with the fertility of the ground, and the scituation of the Riuer is so propitious and naturall for the increase of fruite, and euery other liuing Creature, that *France* aboue all the other Regions of Europe may best boast of these prerogatiues. Betweene the Mountaines of *Auerne*, *Dalpheny*, and the *Mediterranean* Sea, the Ayre is so temperate, by reason of the coldnesse of the hills (alwaies almost couered with snow) and the gentle blasts coming from the Sea, that a man being in this place, would thinke he were vnder the clymate wherein *Genna* is seated: And again, the *Pyrenean* hills standing as a bulwark to breake and beate backe the fiercenesse of colde and tempests, giue the like moderation to another quarter of the Countrey. The Mountaines are full of Bathes and Veines of warme water; and the Northerne windes, which according to most opinions make the Ayre cold; are not heere so cold as in other Countreyes: For windes participate of the Nature of the place by vvhich they passe: if by Snowy Mountaines, then bring they with them the cold of those Mountains; if by Marshes, contagion; if by woods, they are broken; if by Sandy plaines, they are warme; if by Lakes or Seas, they are sharp and piercing. Hence commeth it that the windes *Panorm* in *Sycill*, are so extreame hot; for before they pierce thither, they scoure thorough the plains of *Sycill*, and taking heate from the sands, carry it into the Citty. The South wind is cold at *Genna*, because it passeth the Sea, and taketh coldnesse thereof without touching the Land before it arriue. But the North winde which bloweth through *France*, commeth from the Sea; and taking some meature of the heat of the saltnesse thereof, & finding no Mountaines couered with Ice or Snowe in his passage, augmenteth his heate by passing ouer the fieldes of *Normandie*, *Champaine*, the Ile of *France*, and other Prouinces, euen to the Hilles of *Auergne*: which being moderately heated by the South-Wind on the one side, and thys heat moderated by the North wind on the other, bringeth forth euery where excellent



## Europe.

Pastures, and feedings for Sheepe and Cattle, besides diuers sorts of medicinable plants and most perfect simples. Amongst many braunches of those Mountaines, there is one which is called the *Golden-hill*, for the noblenesse of the simples and abundance thereof. Of these experimentes, *England* may be a sufficient prooffe, which although it lie more Northerly then *France*, yet because it hath few Mountaines, and is enuironed on euery side with the Sea, the Ayre there is very milde and temperate, yea much more temperate then in *France*, which is farre distant from the *Pole*: as you may perceiue by the Vines which neuer ripen in England, and yet yeelde most perfect Wines in *France*. Yea, it happeneth very often, that the Northern or Western Windes rising from the Sea, bringeth Spring-tides before the Winter season be fully expired; so decking the fieldes with flowers, and the Gardens with Herbes, that the Inhabitanes of *Turon Poictou*, & the Ile of *France*, enioy as forward a Summer, as those of *Prouince*, or *Iago di Garda* in *Italy*.

The Region is included betweene the thirteene and nineteene Paralels, (viz:) from the midst of the fifth Clymat, making the longest day of fiftene houres and a halfe: In longitude it contayneth all those *Meridians* which lye betweene the fifteenth and twenty nine degrees, contayning in length 520 Miles, from the *Alps* to the West Ocean, and in latitude 584 from *Marsellis* to the *English* Sea.

Fertility.

The whole Land of *Fraunce* is fertile and fruitfull, and euery where plentyfull of all good thinges. And as *Appennine* spreading almost ouer the fourth part of *Italy*, for the most part is barren, and yeeldeth small store of fruite; so on the contrary, in the Mountaines of *Auergne* (beeing but fewe) stand many good Townes and rich places where cloathing is exercised, & from whence a good part of the Kingdome is serued with flesh, Butter, and excellent Cheefe: the rest of the Kingdome almost is plaine, heere and there garnished with fruitfull Hilles and greene Vallies: in euery place plenty doth (as it were) contend with variety; fertility with delicacy; commodiousnes of scituation with beautious Citties. And herein without all controuerfie *Italy* giueth place to *France*: for although some one corner thereof affoordeth exquisite pleasure and delightfull scitu-



## Scandia.

scituation, as *Riviera di Salo, Campania*, the territory of *Croton, Tarent*, and some other Citties of *Calabria*, yet these are singular, and few in *Italy*, common and frequent in *France*; especially in *Burgundie, Brie*, the Isle of *France, Turon, Anjou, Zantain*, and *Languedoc*. In each of which prouinces, it seemeth that nature her selfe hath diuided, and (as it were) dedicated by allotment, some places to *Ceres*, some to *Bacchus*, some to *Pomana*, and some to *Pallas*.

But there is nothing in *France*, more worthy the noting then the number and pleasure of the nauigable Riuers, wherof some (as it were) gird in the whole Realme, as *Sagona, Rhodanus, Mosell*. Some others cutte through the middle, as *Sequin, Loire, Garon*. Into these three streams fall so many other Riuers (some from the vtmost boundes; some from the inmost partes of the Realme) that it maketh the whole Countrey commodious for Traffique and Exchange of each others wants: Infomuch, that by this facility of carriage and entercourse of Merchandize, all things may be sayd to be in common to the whole Inhabitants of this kingdome. In *Anjou* onely are forty Riuers, great and small; whereupon *Katherin de medicis* was wont to say, that this prouince contained more Riuers then all Europe beside. True-ly this was a *Hyperbolicall* speech, yet not much more the truth: for the goodnesse of the soyle, and the easie transporting of commodities, hath beene the originall of so many great Citties and good Townes in this Kingdome, and those most commonly seated vpon the bankes of Riuers. And although it haue many goodly Hauens, yet the Vpland Townes are fayrer and richer, then those that stand nearer the sea, which argueth their wealth to be their owne, and not brought from forraine countries: for there, the Sea-Townes excell the Land-Townes, where more benefit and prouision is reaped by the Sea, then by the Land; as *Genua, Venice, Ragusi*: but where the state & prosperity of Cities dependeth wholly vpon the Land, there the vplandish-Townes farre surpasse the Sea-townes: as *Millain*, and many other in *Flanders, Germany*, and *Hungarie*. All this notwithstanding, although like goodnesse of soyle bee proper to the whole Realme of *France*, as likewise the scituation of the riuers commodious, yet *Paris* except, (whose largenesse procee-



## Europe.

deth from the Kings Court, the Parliaments, and the Vniuersity) the Townes there for the most part are but small and meane, yet beautifull, commodious, and very populous. *John Bodin* writing a description thereof in the time of *Henry* the second, saith, that there were seauen and twenty Villages hauing parish churches, not comprehending *Burgundy* amongst them. In another description written in the raigne of *Charles* the ninth, it is sayde that the number of the Inhabitanes exceeded fifteene Millions.

And as the Citties and Townes in *France* may boast of their Riuers, so the Castles and Villages of the Noble men, are no lesse fauoured with the pleasure and strength of Lakes and Marshes; which although they may not be compared to the lakes of *Italy* and *Swizerland*, yet are they so many, and so full of excellent Fish, that the numbers of the one, may equalize the largesse of the other. The same may be spoken of *Woods*, that are not so well growne, as plentiful: out of these *Woods* in times past, the greatest partes of the Kings reuenues did arise, and the Noble men do make great profit by selling great quantities thereof for fire-wood, but greater by sales of *Timber trees*: for, for want of stone, the greatest part of their buildings consist of *Timber*.

In regard of the commodious scituation of these riuers seruing so fitly for the transportation of victuals from one place to another, this kingdome is so abundantly furnished with all plenty of prouision, that it is able to nourish any army in the fildes, how populous soeuer. When *Charles* the fift entred *France*, first by *Prouince*, and afterward by *Champaigne*, it maintayned more then one hundred and fifty thousand souldiers, besides the ordinary garrisons. In the raigne of *Charles* the ninth, and in our times also, there were maintayned in thys Kingdome 20000. Horse 30000. footmen strangers, and of *French* 15000. Horse, and 1000000. Foote-men; neither did the Kingdome for thys feele want or scarcitie.

There are in *France* (as a man may tearme them) foure Loadstones to draw riches from forraine Nations; corne carryed into *Spayne* and *Portugale*; wines transported into *England*, *Flanders*, and the inhabitantes of the *Balticke* Sea, and Salt, where  
with



## France.

with the whole kingdome and the bordering Nations are plentifully stored. This salt is made in *Province* of the Salt water of the *Mediterranean* Sea, & at *Browage* in *Zanone*, where the heat of the Sunne ceaseth his vertue of getting, making and boyling Salt (of Sea-water) not dayning to yeeld so great a fauour any farther Northward. I said of Sea-water, because further North, there may bee salt found also, but made eyther of some speciall spring-water (as in *Lorraine*) or compound of some minerals mixt with fresh waters, as in *Poland*, *England*, and *Germany*, or else taken foorth of some salt mines: such as in times past were in *Sweeland*; but they are now decayed.

The fourth commodity is *Canuasse* and *Linnen-cloth*, whereof what profit ariseth, a man will hardly beleue, vnlesse he hath seene what aboundance thereof is carried into *Spaine* and *Portugall*, to make sailes and cordage for the furnishing of shipping. There groweth also *Woad*, *Saffron*, and other *Marchandize* of smaller value, which though they equallize not the aboue sayde commodities, yet rise they to a round sum, yea such, as may enrich a Kingdome. By reason of these neuer-dying riches, *Loves* the eleuenth was wont to say, that *France* was a continuall flourishing Meddowe, which hee did mow as often as he list: And *Maximillian* the Emperour tearmed the *French* King to be *Pastorem omnium cum velleribus aureis*, which hee sheared at his pleasure.

It is vndoubtedly true, that if the *Kinges* of *Fraunce* were as wise and pollitike, as they are powerfull in armes and riches, the affayres of Europe would much stand at their deuotion. But force and wisdom sildome keepe company together; therefore the Poets fayne *Hercules* furious: *Aristo* fayned *Orlando* sottish: *Virgill* describeth *Dares* to bee insolent: and the *Gracians* tearmed all those people *Barbari*, which wanted eyther Arts or learning: *Homer* bringeth in *Achilles*, as one vnable to bridle his owne fury: and *Mars* so vnaduised, that he suffered himselfe vnawares to bee caught in *Vulcans* net: for what state can be more dreadfull, or what power can seem more terrible, then the Maiesty of that kingdome, which is able of it selfe to feed 15. Millions of people, and yet hath sufficient remaining for the nourishing and maintenaunce of any puissant Armye besides?

For



## Europe.

For the aboundance of people, and plenty of victuales are the strongest sinnewes of all Kingdomes, and therefore the *Romaines* highly prized the rusticke diuision for their numbers and prouision.

Reuenues.

As touching their reuenues, *Lewes* the eleuenth gathered a Million and a halfe: *Francis* the first, attayned vnto three Millions: *Henry* the second to sixe: *Charles* the ninth to seauen: *Henry* the the third to aboue tenn: *Lewes* the twelfth left his kingdome full of Golde and Siluer, and was therefore called *Pater populi*: *Francis* the first, though he managed great warres, and made infinite expences, left notwithstanding eyght hundered thousand Crownes in his Treasury: but *Henry* the second hys Sonne, enuying the greatnesse of *Charles* the Emperour, and co-ueting to surpasse him, tooke vp Money of euery one at 16. *Per centum*, left his Sonnes indebted thirty Millions of Crownes & without credite amongst the Merchantes to the value of a farthing: insomuch that *Charles* the ninth, and *Henry* the third his Sonnes (the last more then the first) were inforced to lay such heavy imposition, not only on the people, but also on the Clergy, that *Henry* the fourth now raigning might well complaine, that after the discease of these two Princes, hee found the state of *France*, as *Vespasian* found the Romain Empire after the deaths of *Nero* and *Caligula*, the first whereof, had wastfully giuen away fifty and fiue Millions, the other royotously spent threescore & seauen in one yeer. Whereby the world may see, that the riches of a Prince, consisteth not in the aboundance of reuenues, but in the thrifty husbanding therof. For *Francis* the first made greater warres with lesse reuenues, left his credite sound vwith the Merchants, and ready Money to his Sonne; where on the contrary, *Henry* made far lesse war, and yet left the kingdome deeply indebted, and the people poore and miserable.

With the foresayd reuenues, the former King maintayned 1500. *Lancers*, and 4500. *Crosbowes* (in report 4000. *Lancers*, and 6000. *Crosbowes* continually payde:) which troupes of Horse were accounted the strongest caualry in all Christendome. Eucry *Lancier* brought with him one *Crosbow* and a halfe, so that one company of *Lancers* had another of *Crosbowes*, seruing vnder one ensigne, commonly called a *Guidon*:  
and



## France.

and one Captaine governed both companies, consisting in the whole 100. Lanciers, and 150. Crosbowes.

One Million and three hundred thousand crownes were yearly spent vpon these companies. A Lance receiued 250. a Crosbow eyghty, the *Guidon* 300. the *Lieutenant* 380. the *Captayne* 820. *Charles* the seuenth reduced these Ordinances to perfection, made the number certain, appoynted their wages, trained them in exercise, and placed them vpon the frontiers, vnder captains, Lieutenants, Ensignes, and *Guidons*. He likewise deuided these Ordinances into men at armes and Archers, adioyned to them *Targatiers, Harbengers, Muster-maisters, Pay-maisters, & Commisaries*, committing them to the charge of the *Constables, Marshals*, and great Lordes of his Kingdome: the residue of theyr Subiectes they did not much inuere to serue on foot, eyther vpon distrust of their valour, or for feare of mutinies and rebellions. For the *French* by Nature, are more fierce then strong: & if at the first charge they bee gallantly resisted, they will soone forget theyr fiercenesse, and loose courage, becomming indeed rather Women then men. Besides, they are not able to indure hardnesse and trauell, in continuance of time growing so slothfull and negligent, that vppon some disorder or other, a good leader will find an easie occasion to vanquish and defeat them: whereof often experience was scene in the Realme of *Naples*, & at *Garigliano*, yea though they were double the number of their enemies. For when Winter beganne to draw on, and raine and cold to molest theyr bodies, then began they to drop away one by one, leauing the Camp so disordered, and their Trenches so vnfurnished, that through these Misdemeanors against all sence and reason, the *Spaniards* carryed away both the honour of the victory, and the free possession of the *Italian* Prouinces. But *Charles* the eyght, considering of what importance the seruice of footmen were, instituted a squadron of five thousand *French* foote; That number *Francis* the first augmented to five thousand, howbeit at this present day they are againe casheerd for for their euill carriage and behauour, and in theyr places those regiments instituted, which continue to this day, and are five in number, (viz:) The regiment of the *Guard*; the regiment of *Champayne*; the regiment of *Piemont*, and the regiment



## Europe.

of *Gascoin*, commonly called the regiment of *Navarre*. In each of these are twelve companyes, of hundreds a peece, quartered in Garrisons through diuers places of the Kingdome, and from thence vppon occasion of seruice drawne into the fielde. *Leres* the eleuenth, that at his pleasure he might shear or rather fleece the people of *Fraunce*, and make them vnapt for warre, waged the *Swissars*: These presidents *Francis* and *Henry* his successours following, continually hyred great numbers of the *German* nations.

But whosoever hee bee that goeth about to make his people vnwarlike, and entertayneth *Forraine* Souldiers, greatly ouer shooteth himselfe. For by the exercise of Armes and Occurrences of warre, courage is increased, and the commons by practise and experience will become hardy, and vppon occasions of necessity able like Souldiers to maintaine theyr actions: for as conuersing with good men makes men good; so the company of Souldiers maketh other couragious. Besides, many casualties may happen, which may not bee committed to the experience of strangers, because they know not the scituatiō of places, neyther may many matters, for the weight of the businesse, be trusted to theyr fidelity. VVherefore it is very expedient, that that people bee entertained vnder military discipline, in whose Prouinces warre is like to continue, eyther by reason of scituation, or other casuall accidents: as it happened to *France*, where after peace was concluded with the *Spaniard*, and the *Swissers* & *Almaines* departed to theyr homes, yet by remayning full of *French* Souldiers, all things remayned full of confusion and disorder.

Of their Sea-forces little can be spoken, yet haue they an Admirall, which is an office of great honor and profit, by reason of commodity transported and returned into the Country; but of no great commaund, because there is no shipping belonging to this Prince, as in *England*, *Spaine*, and *Denmarke*.

The King hath foure guards: the first of *French* Gentlemen in place and attendance like our Gentlemen pensioners; they are 200. in number, and their pay is 20. Crownes a month. The second sort was of *Scots*, and they likewise are Gentlemen, some attending on the Kings person, others appoynted to other offi-



## France.

ces in the court, and go alwaies armed eyther with the Halberd or Harquebuze. Those which attend on the Kinges person are 24. and receiue yeerely 400. franks a piece, the residue 300. & a livery. The third sort is of inferiour *French*, and theyr employment is such, as the seruice of the Yeomen & the Guard in *England*. The fourth consisteth of *Swissers*, and they waight at the Court gate in warlike manner, & are releued twice a day, once at Morning, and againe at euening. One hundred of them receiue twelue franks a month, the residue 10. franks monthly, and two suites of apparrell, (viz:) Hose and Doublets twice a yeere, one for the Summer, another for the winter. Hee retayneth the *Swissers* for theyr loue towards the House of *Austrich*, though notwithstanding for number of Gentry, greatnesse of Offices, goodnesse of Townes, and multitude of the Guard, this Kingdome may seeme to challenge precedence before any Court in Europe; yet for Maiesty of the Prince, order of the Court, prouision of the Courtiers, and entertainment of strangers, it may no waie compare with that of *England*.

Concerning Munition, there is no kingdome wherein is greater plenty, then there; whereof sundry reasons may bee giuen; First, for that the Kingdome is deuided into many Regalties & principallities, as *Burgundie*, *Brittaine*, *Anion*, and *Normandy*, &c. euery of which prouinces strengthen their owne Frontiers. Besides, the plenty of their Munitions hath beene greatly increased by the warre of the *English*, who in times past commaunded a great part of the Kingdome. Secondly, the scituation and nature of the places fit for fortifications, as also the willingnesse of this people, hath euen with ease ouercome the labour of these affaires. For there is no Nation more industrious in fortyfying, and more prodigall in expence vpon these workes: neyther are the bowells of the Kingdome lesse fortified then the Frontiers; for *Beauois*, *Trois*, *Orleans*, *Angiers*, *Bourdeaux*, *Limbofin*, *Carcaso*, and *Soissons*, are for strength and fortification nothing inferiour to *Calais*, *Perone*, *Narbone*, or any other fortyfied Frontier: So that each skirt of euery particuler prouince standeth insteede of a Frontier to euery border of the adioyning territory thorough the whole kingdome.



# Europe.

## Netherland. CHAP. II.



Of all three partes of *Gaule*, that which wee call *Netherland*, or *Paesi Bassi*, for it low scituation towards the Ocean, by the authority of *Cesar*, *Strabo*, and other approoued Authors is accounted the worthyest, not onely for the nobility & excellency of the Countrey, but likewise for the greatnesse and worthinesse of those thinges that haue beene inuented there, and the accidents that there haue happened. For they inuented the art of Printing, restored Musicke, framed the Charyot, deuised the laying of colours in Oyle, the working of colours in Glasse, the making of Tapestry, Saies, Searges, Wo-steds, Ruffets, Frisadoes, and diuers sorts of Linnen-cloth, with innumerable other small trifles: all sortes of Clocks and Dialls, and the Marriners compasse.

It is diuided into 17. Prouinces, (viz:) the Dukedomes of *Brabant*, *Limburg*, *Lutsemburg*, and *Guelders*: the Earledomes of *Flanders*, *Artois*, *Henault*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Damure*, and *Zuiphen*, the *Marquisat* of the sacred Empyre, the *Seignories* of *Friesland*, *Mechlin*, *Utrecht*, *Ouerissell*, and *Groningen*, all territories rich, plentifull, and exceeding populous. In them are 208. walled Townes, stately and magnificent, besides 3230. Borroughs, ha- uing priuiledge of walled Townes, and 6300. Villages vvith Parrish Churches. It hath mines of Lead, Copresse, and Cole, and Quarries of excellent good stone. The Emperour *Charles* had an intention to erect it into a Kingdome, but the difficulty consisted herein, that euery of these Prouinces being gouerned by peculiar customes, prerogatiues, and priuiledges, would ne- uer haue yeilded vnto one royall Law common to all, especial- ly those that hadde the largest priuiledges; for which cause he gaue ouer his determination. It is seated commodiously for all the prouinces of Europe, and contayneth in circuit about 1000. *Italian* Miles. The Ayre of latter times is become much more holesome and temperate then in times past, whether it bee by reason of the increase of Inhabitantes, industry of the people, who



## Netherland.

who spare no charge to amend whatsoeuer is amisse. The Beeues of *Holland* and *Friesland* are very great, and weigh some of them 1600. pound of 16. ounces to the pound: The Ewes in these prouinces, and some part of *Flanders* bring foorth three & foure Lambes at a time, and the Kine often two Calues at once. It bringeth forth great quantity of Mather, very perfect woad, but no great store; but of Flaxe and Hemp great aboundance. VVhosoever shall consider what commodity they raise by their fishing and Traffique onely, may well say, that no Nation thorow the whole World may compare with them for riches. For *Guicciardin* writeth, that of their herring fishing they make yeerly 441000. pound sterling; their fishing for Cod 150000. pound sterling: and of their fishing for Salmon more then 200000. Crownes, which is of sterling Money 60000. pound. The continuall riches that groweth in the Countrey of other sortes of Fish taken all the yeere, is infinite. The value of the principall Merchandize yeerely brought in and carryed out, is likewise infinite; the foresaid Author esteemeth it to be about foureteen Millions, one hundred and thirty Crownes: whereof England onely bringeth to the value of fiue Millions, and two hundred and fifty thousand crownes. It is a wonder to see, how that the Inhabitanes of all these Prouinces (especially of *Brabant* and *Flanders*) vnderstand and speake two or three languges, & some foure or more, according to their entercourse with straungers, yea in *Antwerp* you shall here the women speake *Dutch*, *French*, *Italian*, *Spanish* and *Englsh*.

Of their forces at Sea and Land (because they are so vvell knowne to all the Northerne Nations) I will begin to giue you instances of no higher times, then when they began to vnder take the cause of the Gospell and their Countrey, against the fury of the *Spanish* Nation, (viz:) about the yeere of our Lord God 1567. at which time the Duke of *Alua* made preparation in *Spaine* to descend into these Prouinces. To speake nothing of their late Nauigations to the Ilands and East *Indies*. In the very Infancy of this quarrell, after the Prince of *Orange*, perceiued by the death of the *Counts Horne*, and *Egmont*, and his owne pro- scription, that this people sought nothing but the oppression of the Countrey, and extirpation of the reformed Religion, hee



## Europe.

stood vpon his Guard, and leuied an Army of 44. Ensignes of Almaines, foure thousand *French* and *Wallons*, and seauen thousand Horse well armed.

And though it pleased GOD at the first to suffer them to receiue many ouerthrowes, yet by taking of Townes (as the *Briel* by the Lord of *Lumay* 1572.) and diuers other strong places by the *Count* of *Berge*, they haue euer sithence euen vnto this day maintayned their iust quarrell, to the excessiue losse, both of men and treasure to this tyrranous Nation. In the yeere 1573. they defeated the Nauy of the Duke of *Alua*, vnder the conduct of *Count Bossu*, & 1574. the *Flushingers* inioyned thelike victory against those whom the great *Commendador* sent to reuictuell *Middleborough* at that time straightly belegered by the Prince of *Orange*. Who although hee were thus sufficiently busied in the low Countries, yet shewing how little hee esteemed the forces of the Spanish King, granted out of his troupes the three thousand foote, which *Sebastion de Costa* had demaunded in the behalfe of *Sebastian* his Maister for the voyage of *Affricke*.

Anno. 1578. they ouerthrew the whole Campe of the Arch-Duke *Mathias* neare *Rimnant* in *Brabant*, wher the glory of that dayes victory was next vnder God chiefly attributed to the valor of Maister *Norris*, then *Collonell* of the *English*, and Steward *Colonell* of the *Scottish*. Anno. 1579. the *Hollanders* hearing of a confederacy betweene the Malcontentes of *Artois* and *Henalt*, and the Captaine of the *Briel*, for the deliery of the town preuented them at Sea, and obtayned a very famons victory. What victories by the fauour of God, they haue of late daies obtained, and what dangerous sidges they haue most resolutely indured, the belegurings of *Harlem*, *Leidren*, *Anwerpe*, *Sluce*, *Bergen* vpon *Zome*, *Bomel*, *Ostend*, and infinite other places, which the battailes of *Turnholt* and *Newport*, can well witnessse to the whole world.

## Spaine. CHAP. 12.

Sithence the remembrance of latter times, a larger Empery hath not befallen any Christian Potentate, then that which  
the



## Spain.

the *Spanish* enjoy at this day, especially since the uniting of the Kingdome of *Portugall* (with the dependancies thereof) vnto this Crowne. For besides the large and faire Prouinces in Europe, the goodly regions of *Asia*, and diuers rich territories in *Affricke*, hee enjoyeth in peace and security, without any riuall or competitor, the new World, in circuite more spacious, then eyther Europe or *Affricke*.

In Europe he is sole-Soueraigne of *Spain*, holding it whole and entire, a thing worthy obseruation; for that by the space of 800. yeeres before our age, it neuer obeyed any one Prince, but was dismembred and peece-meale claymed by diuers Seigniors: Hee hath very much shaken *Belgia*, & Lordeth it ouer the Kingdome of *Naples*, contayning in circuit 1400. myles: and retayneth *Insubria*, otherwise called the Dutchie of *Millain*, comprehending three hundred miles in circuite. Of the Ilandes hee holdeth *Moiorique*, *Minorique*, and *Euisa*: the first, of three hundred miles circuit; the second of 150. the third of eyght. *Sicill* is reported to containe 700. *Sardinia* 562.

In *Affrica* he holdeth the great hauen called *Masalquiuir*, the most secure and safe harbour in the whole *Mediterranean* sea. He hath also *Oran*, *Mililla*, and the rocke commonly called the *Penion of Velez*: and without the Streights hee possesseth the *Canary* Ilands, twelue in number, and the least of seauen, containing 90. Miles.

In the the right of the house of *Portugall*, hee possesseth the famous places of *Septa* and *Tangier*, which may rightly be surnamed the keyes of the Streights: yea of the *Mediterranean* Sea, and *Atlantique* Ocean. Without the Streights, he holdeth the Citty of *Mazaga*, and by the same title in the vast Ocean, hee claymeth the *Terceraz*, *Porto-Santo*, and *Madera*, famous for the Wines which grow therein, and the Lady-like Iland of all the *Atlantique*, contayning by estimation 160. Miles in compasse: then the Ilands of *Cape Verd*, seauen in number. Vnder the æquinoctiall hee holdeth the Iland of *Saint Thomas*, somewhat more spacious then *Madera*, but most plentifull in Sugar, & from thence rangeth ouer that huge tract of land, which trendeth from *Cape Aguer*, to *Cape Guardafu*. Lastly, hee is Lord of all the Traffick, Merchandize, negotiation, & nauigation



## Europe.

on of the whole Ocean, and of all the Ilands which nature hath scattered in these seas, especially between the *Cape of Good-hope* and the promontorie of *Guardafu*.

In *Asia*, in the aforefaid right of the Crowne of *Portugall*, he ruleth the better part of the Western coasts, (viz;) *Ormus*, *Diu*, *Goa*, and *Malaca*. *Ormus* for his commodious scituation, is growne so rich, that these verses are growne to a common pro- uerb among the *Arabians*.

*As in a Ring the welsset stone appeareth to the eye,*

*Such to the Worlds round-circle, doth rich Ormus-Iland lie.*

A great portion of *Arabia Fœlix* belongeth to the principality of *Ormus*, as likewise *Baharem*, the Iland-Queene vwithin that gulfe, for plenty, circuit, variety of fruites, and the rich-fishing of Pearle. In this Sea the *Portugals* possesse *Damine*, *Bazain*, *Tauaan*, and *Goa*; which Citty (to omit *Chial*, *Canora*, *Cochin*, and *Colan*) is of so great esteeme, that it is thought to yeeld the king as great reueneue as many prouinces in Europe doe their Lords: and finally the *Portugals* hold all that Sea-coast which lyeth betweene the Citty *Damine*, and *Malepura*: wherein no prince (except the King of *Calecute*) challengeth one foote of Land. The Iland of *Zeilan*, wherein they possesse a strong Hauen & a Castle, commonly called *Columbo*, may rightly be called the delight Nature; and they enioy also *Malaca*, which in those places is the bound and limite of their Empire, as also the Key of the Trafick, and the Nauigation of the East Ocean, and of all those Ilandes, which are so many and so spacious, that in circuite of Land they may well be compared to all Europe.

To continue their trade with the *Chinois*, and Ilanders of *Tidore*, and for their entercourse to the *Moluccas* and *Banda*, they haue erected certaine strong places in *Amacan*, but resembling rather *Fastories* then Castles.

Certainely it would amaze a man to thinke, how many puissant Kinges and fierce Nations are bridled and yoaked by the Armes of twelue thousand *Portugues*; (for in so huge a tract of Land and Sea, there are, nor euer were, a greater number inhabiting) and those few, not onely to haue discovered, and conquered the *Atlanticke*, *Indian*, and the East-Sea, but also euer since to keepe and defend the Soueraignty thereof against all Inuadours.



## Spaine.

dors. For to their owne euerlasting glory; and the prayse, profit, and reputation of the whole Christian-common-wealth, it is about one hundred yeeres, since they first set footing in these territories, and to this day haue made good, whatsoeuer in that space they haue formerly conquered. Neither can there any man to the eclipsing of this their deserued commendation, obiect vnto them the facility of subduing a naked & vnarmed people, (altogether raw & vnexperienced in the feates of Armes) if he recall to his remembrance, how by the vertue of their armes, they tooke the Kingdome of *Ormus*, from the Vassall and confederate of the K. of *Persia*: as also how they drowned & defeated at *Diu*, the Nauy of the *Sultane* of *Egypt*, fully furnished with *Mammelukes*, a kind of Soldiers, no lesse famous for their valour and discipline, then the *Pretorian Turkish Ianizzaries*: as also that they made good the sayde place against the leagues of the *Turkes* and *Guzarits*. In the Red Sea they haue often foyled the *Turkish Armada*. In the yeere 1552. they defeated his whole flecte at *Ormus*. In *Trapoban* they affronted the Kinges of *Decan*, *Combaia*, *Calecute*, and *Achem*; Princes faouered, and throughly assisted with the forces of the sayde Emperour: yea, such haue beene their expeditions in *Cambai*, *India*, that whole Ocean, and along the coastes of *Asia*, that in desert of glory & admiration, they are to be censured nothing inferior to the victorious prayses of *Alexander* the great; yea, so much the rather to be preferred, because neither in circuit of territory, nor numbers of people they were euer comparable to the *Macedonians*; for with nineteene ships they ouerthrew the *Egyptian* Nauy, farre more powerfull in number and furniture. With two thousand Souldiers they forced *Goa*, and recouered it being lost with 1500. With 800. they won *Malaca*, and not with many more, *Ormus*.

Another member of the *Spanish* Dominions lyeth in the new World, wherein because he hath no corriuall able to make head against him; he challengeth as his owne, whatsoeuer either by discouery or conquest he attayneth vnto. This new worlds dominions is diuided into Continent and Ilands.

In the North Sea are so many Ilands, (most of them of forty Myles in compasse) that their number can hardly bee ascertay-



## Europe.

ned or knowne : and some of them are rich and spacious, sufficient to erect a great and stately Kingdome. Of these, *Boriquen* is three hundred Miles long, and threescore broad : *Jannoa* is little lesse. *Cuba* is three hundred long, and twenty broad : *Hispaniola* containeth a thousand and sixe hundred Miles in compasse. On the Continent he is absolute Lord of all that sea-coast which watereth *Florida*, *Nova Hispania*, *Iucatan*, and all that spacious Southerly *Peninsula*, to the Cape of *California*, and *Quinira*. For euen so far haue the discoueries and nauigations of this Nation pierced. The coast of *Nova Hispania* counting his beginning at the Towne of *Santa Helena*, and cutting by *Panama* to *Quinira*, containeth about 5000. and 200. Miles in length, to which if you please to adde the vpland Regions coasting towards the North, you shall find no lesse then 9000. Miles.

*Peru* beginning at *Panama*, containeth by the *Maritime* coast 12000. and 600. Miles : of which three thousand lying between the Riuer *Maraguon*, and the Riuer of *Plate*, and including *Brazil*, do acknowledge the Soueraignty of *Portugall*.

In the Continent are many Kingdoms and Signiories, amongst which those of *Mexico* and *Peru* (once most powerfull and wealthy dominions) were counted chiefe, and as it were two imperiall Souerainties. The King of *Mexico* did not claim by inheritance from their Auncestors, but were chosen by six Electors ; Him whom they iudged young, valiant, and wise, of an able body, and fit for the war, they crowned : and one of theyr Kings, because he proued a Coward, slothfull, and irresolute, they poysoned. He kept continually about his Person a Senate of priuy Councillours, consisting of 4. degrees of Nobility and Maistracy ; without whose authority and priuity, no matters of consequence might be questioned, or put in execution. They regarded nothing so securely, as the good education of theyr youth, their ceremonies, superstitions, and their orders of soldiary. There was amongst them a worthy chiefetaine called *Tlacacel*, so expert and fortunate in millitary prowes, that he subdued the greatest part of the *Mexican* seigniory, but withall of so great & admired a spirit, that he obstinately refused and forsook the kingdome being offered vnto him ; saying, that it was more auailable and commodious for the common-weale, that another



## Spaine.

ther should weare the Crowne, & he attend vpon him as a minister and Councillor; and that his shoulders were too weak to sustaine so weighty a burthen: adding moreouer, that he wold no lesse imploy his care and indeuour for the safety of the common-weale, then if he himself were inuested in the soueraignty. These kings liued along while in great Maiesty, inhabited sumptuous Pallaces, and maintained a mighty troupe of their vassalls for the guard of their persons.

On one quarter they enlarged their bounds, and transferred their religion and language to the skirts of *Teguant Pecum*, two hundred leagues remote from *Mexico*: and on another quarter as farre as *Guatimall* 300. leagues distant. In these places they made the North and South Seas their boundes; but *Mecoican*, *Tapcalan*, & *Terpeacan*, they could neuer bring vnder their yoke. Their differents with the Cittie of *Tascula*, incoraged the *Spaniards* to inuade their Dominions: and beeing entred, made theyr victory easie, and the end fortunate: this happened in the yeere 1518. This people (deuided into seauen tribes) came into those Regions, from that part of the North, where of late yeeres the *Spaniard* discovered a most wealthy & populous prouince, which at this day they call new *Mexico*.

Their chiefest delight consisted in warlike exercises, & thereby theyr people attayned vnto places of honour: *Metezuma* theyr last King instituted certaine bandes of Horfe-men, the principall whereof hee tearmed Lyons, *Aegles*, and Leopards. These hee priuiledged to weare Golde and Siluer, and a Silken Cassocke after the *Arabian* fashion; to goe shod and to occupy gilded and painted vessell; which things were vtterly prohibited to the vulgar people.

In the daies of *Inga* (once King of *Peru*) the estate of this Empire was far greater, then of latter times: for in the highest fortune, it reached from *Pasto* to *Chile* 1000. leagues in length, & 100. in bredth, euen from the South Ocean, to *Andi* in the East. The mercilesse fury of the waters in some places standing, and Moorish; in other running, gainsaid and put a period to theyr further progresses. VVhen without any colorable or iust title they inuaded theyr confining Neighbours, they most ridiculously pretended, that in an Vniuersall Deluge, mankinde vvas



## Europe.

preserved in themselves onely, and therefore would have the World beleue that they onely retained true Religion, which (as they said) they were bound to sow and disperse in the minds of all men, eyther by faire meanes or foule. Their chiefe GOD was *Viracoca*, that is to say, the Creator of all things; next vnto him they adored the Sunne. *Inga Pacacuti*, who instructed them in the greatest part of theyr superstitions, when hee had indowed the Temples of the other Gods with Tithes and reuenues, assigned none to the Temple of *Viracoca*, alleadging, that forasmuch as he was the maker of all things, he needed not any thing.

Amongst other memorable Ordinances by him instituted in the winning of Countreyes: one was, that the conquered land should bee diuided into three partes: the first was dedicated to the Gods, and the maintenance of the charge of their Ceremonies: the second, and greatest portion was giuen to *Inga*, therewith to maintain his estate, the expences of his Court, Parents, Barrons, and Garrisons: the third was distributed amongst the Souldiers: no man could clayme property in any thing, to say this is mine; but by the fauour and sufferance of *Inga*, neyther might that discend by inheritance. The Landes belonging to the people and comminalty were yeerely limited, and so much allotted to euery man, as was thought sufficient for the sustentation of his family: some yeeres more, some yeeres lesse, without exaction of any rent; in lieu whereof, they conditioned to Manure the Lands of *Inga*, and the Gods: the increase thereof they stored in most ample Garners thereunto appoynted, from whence in the times of scarcity, it was shared amongst the people: and the like they did with their Cattle, deuiding them by head: which point of gouernment in mine owne opinion farre exceedeth either the partitions of *Lycurgus*, or the *Agrarian* Lawes of the *Romaines*.

Besides Merchandize, incredible treasures of Gold and Silver are transported out of *Noua Hispania* and *Peru*: Of those treasures commonly *Peru* yeeldeth two parts, and *Noua Hispania* the third; which is more rich in Merchandize then *Mexico*. Amongst the rest it yeeldeth *Cochinella*, a commodity of inestimable value, and infinite store of hydes. The Ilandes afford plen-



## Spaine.

plenty of hides, Cotten, Wooll, Suger, *Cannafistula*, hard wax and Pearles.

Amongst these riches and treasures of *Peru* two things are wonderfull: one, that in the Siluer mines which were discouered in *Potosie*, in the yeere 1545. there is, and hath bene found so huge a Masse of Bullion, that the fift part (which is the kings) in the space of forty yeeres amounted to one hundred and eleuen Millions of *Pezoës*: neyther yet did two third partes pay theyr Customary due to his Maiesty. The other is the Quicke-Siluer mines in *Guacauacan*, found in the yeere 1567. out of which the King hath receiued 40000. *Pezoës*, all charges defrayed.

It is a strange thing to note, that whereas mother Nature hath interlaced so ryotously her Golden and Siluer Veines in the bosome and VVombe of *Peru*, it hath bestowed no such blessing vpon her neereft Daughter *Brasile*: but in stead thereof hath enriched her with a most temperate & holesome aire, with many pleasaunt Springes and large Riuers; not without sufficiency of wood: she hath deuided the land into fruitfull plaines and delightfome hills, clothed it with the beauty of continuall greene-nesse, abounding aboue beleefe with Sugar-canes, which the *Portugals* there planted, and now transport, in infinite numbers, into forraine Regions.

The *Philippine* may well be tearmed the appendances to thys New-world; for although in respect of their scite, by reason of their proximity, they may bee thought a part of *Asia*: yet the discoueres thereof trauelled through *New Spaine*, before they could discover them: of which landes more then forty are subiect to this foueraigntye, and by them haue bene reduced to a ciuill kind of life and pollicy.

Now hauing generally runne ouer the spatious (I will not say boundlesse) members of this Empyre, I will deuide the discourse thereof (at least of as much as concerneth theyr strength and pollicy) into foure particulers; the first whereof shall in-treat of his pieces in Europe; the second of his Dominions in the New-world; the thyrd of his territories of the VVest and South coast of *Affricke*; the fourth of his principalities of *India* and *Asia*.



## Europe.

The Prouinces which hee holdeth in Europe are of the most puyssant and powerfull sort, that are comprehended in this diuision. *Spaine* it selfe hath beene alway acknowledged for so wealthy, so puyssant, and so spacious a Kingdome, that not without good cause it may challenge the precedence of all the Prouinces of the Continent: if not for any other consideration, yet in regard that the *Romaines* and *Carthagenians*, continued so long and so cruell warres for possession and royalty thereof. The *Gothes* and *Vandals* (when with the streames of their ouerflowing multitudes) they swarmed ouer the greatest part of the *Romaine* Empire, heere sat them downe, and made it the place of their inhabitation. *Trebellius Pollia*, tearmed it and *Fraunce* the ioynts and sinnewes of the *Romaine* Empire. *Constantine*, when hee deuided the Empire, preferred it before *Italy*: And in the deuision, when *England*, *Fraunce*, *Spaine*, and *Italy* fell to his lot, hee little esteeming the last, and voluntarily leauing it to his competitor, contented himselfe with the three formost, (viz:) from *Colibria* to *Fanteraly* 49. leagues and a halfe: from *Fanteraly* to *Cape-Fenestre* 39. and from *Cape-Fenestre*, to *Saint Vincents* one hundred, and from hence to the Streight of *Hercules* 49. & an halfe, and so comprehending this by account, at this day in circuit it is 1893. Miles.

Of hys  
greatnes in  
Europe.

**B**V T beeing now to relate the true quality and state of this great Prince of Christendome (the matter beeing so much the more hard, by how much the more copious in it selfe) and not to weary your patience with long-discourse, I will restrain my selfe to thinges of most importance with all possible variety. In performance whereof, leauing to tell how out of thys House of *Austria*, in the space of three hundred yeeres, tenne Emperours haue already successiuelly succeeded one another from Father to Sonne, as also by what casualties, so many Kingdomes and Prouinces haue beene vnited vnto this crowne, and in particuler how the houses of *Austria* & *Burgundy* haue in such sort beene conioyned, that had his enterprises agaynst *England* and *Fraunce*, falne out conformable to expectation, without Question he hadde beene much inabled to haue marcht on  
with



## Spaine.

with large paces to the Monarchy of the whole world.

This his Empire is deuided into foure parts, the Kingdomes of *Spaine*, the states of *Italy*, the Dominions of the *Indies*, and the Countiyes of *Flanders*. *Spaine* is by the *Spaniards* (for the greater grace) deuided into tenne Kingdomes, though they may bee well reduced vnto three Classes, that is to say, *Castile*, *Aragon*, and *Portugall*: the Ilandes of the Ocean, and *Navar*: The States of *Italy* (which are the sinnewes and nourfery of his warres) comprhending the Kingdomes of *Naples*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, the Dukedome of *Millaine*, and the three forts situate vpon the Sea-Coast of *Tuscain*, *Orbatello*, *Urcole* and *Telemon*. The Dominion of *India* is deuided into the East and VVest *Indies*: in the East hee hath but some Ilands farre distant from the firme Land, but in the VVest hee hath diuers partes adioyning vpon the Sea-Coast, not penetrating farre within the Land. And although hee dooth daily conquer some of the Neighboring places, yet they bee of no great value or consequence. From the *Low-Countries* hee reapeth small profit, for he hath there lost his ancient reuenues, beeing exceeding great, hys Coasts increasing, by reason of the wars, with dimminution of his forces.

To intreat first of *Spaine*, (because it is the censure of this spacious Empire) it is conserued by two meanes, that is to say, by Justice & Religion, keeping this people in obedience more with seuerity and chastisement, then with clemency and mercy. The prouince it selfe is barren, if we consider each part thereof by it selfe alone, but all being reduced together, it aboundeth with all things necessary; beeing stored with diuers Minerals. True it is that it hath fewe men, and is not populous, both by reason that a great number are drawn from thence to serue in the wars, to reenfoce the Garrisons, and to defend the Forts abroad, as well amongst the *Indies*, as in any other places of his Dominions: as also for that many of them do exercise Merchandize and Nauigation, which (although it bring some dammage to the state, because so many leaue the Countrey) yet prooueth it very beneficiall and commodious by their enricht returne vnto theyr owne Houses, and ridding by that meanes the Countrey of the more slothfull sort of Home-liuers. It is defended  
towards



## Europe.

towards *France* with confines strengthened both by Nature and Art: (viz:) by the naturall height of the *Pirenean* Mountaines, which separate the one Countrey from the other. And by the artificiall forts of *Scialon*, *Parpigniano*, and *Pampalono*. On the other parts it is incompast with the Ocean & *Mediterranean* Seas, being as afore said secured from the power of the *French* Armes, not onely by reason of the craggy scituation, where it is Mountainous and hard to passe, and by the said forts, but also through the difficulty that the *French* should there finde in iourning, & the incommodity and want of victualls entering into a Countrey so sterill and vnfruitfull. The other part of *Spaine* (confining vpon the Sea) remaineth exposed vnto the *Turkish* Nauy, from which it is secured by hauing few ports, & those diligently kept and guarded with so powerfull forces, as are able to affright any that should assault them. But amongst all the offensive Potentates, the Kingdome of *England* is most able to infest it more then any other: for in the late wars it did beyond measure trouble the Kingdome of *Portugall*, in pittying the quarrell of *D. Antonio* (a man much faouered of that Crowne) in such sort that the City of *Lisboze*, once famous and well inhabited, became poore, and well nigh dispeopled. For whereas in times past one might number 1000. Vessels within her portes, 500. of them were consumed and taken by the enemy, which did not much displease his Maiesty: for hee in pollicy was well content to see the *Portugalls* so impouerished and abased, because they liue male-contentedly vnder his obedience and gouernment. At all times his Maiesty is constrained to maintain a strong *Armada* in these Seas, to safeguard the Nauigation to the *Indies*, and to secure the Merchants comming from thence into these Countries; ouer and besides twenty foure Gallies which hee keepeth to guard the Coast, and to defend it from the *Turkish* fleet, and the incursions of Pirats. The charges heereof, and for maintenance of all the fortifications and defences of *Spaine*, amounting yeerely to halfe a Million of Gold: as for the *Englisb*, his Maiesty armed many particuler shippes for that purpose, and to that end he tooke into pay the *Ragusean* Marriners. The number of Souldiers in all the presidiary places of *Spaine* amount to 8000. not reckoning any man of sort, nor Marriners; for in steade of  
these



## Spaine.

these, the Moores and Turkish slaues doe serue in the Gallies: This Kingdome doth neuer send forth any Horsemen, because there be but few, and yet sufficient for their owne businesse.

In the next rank followeth the *Italian* Prouinces, *Naples*, *Milaine*, and *Sicily*, wherein nature hath confined and heaped vp as if it were into her Cloffet, all those delightfull happinesse, which with her owne hands she hath heere and there scattered & dispersed through the residue of the European Prouinces: & whereof wee will discourse in their proper places, desiring our Reader in imagination to refer them to this place of discourse.

The reuenue which his Maiesty doth principallie raise vpon the Ecclesiasticall liuings, (viz:) the tithes of the Church, the Bulles of the Crosse, amongst the *Indies*, through all *Spaine*, and the Kingdome of *Sicily*, doe amount to two Millions by yeare: and these may be well numbred amongst his ordinary reuenues, because they bee yeerely rayfed and bee the surest and most certaine, that this Crowne enjoyeth. The commendams of vacant presentations, remaining sometime vnprovided for, or not full, and the denomination of benefices, doth yeelde yeerely to hys Maiesty a great quantity of Money. The whole reuenues of the Clergy are valued at fixe Millions of Gold by yeere, there being 34. Cathedrall Churches all very rich, of which some haue 50. Millions, some 100. and some 200. Millions of Crownes of yeerely reuenues: and in particuler the Archbishop of *Tolledo*, hath more then 300. Millions, remaying ouer and besides free to his Prelate 200. Neither doth his Maiesty care to bring these Churches to a greater number or more heades; for then hee should with greater difficulty make vse of the reuenues and riches thereof, when occasion required. And it is sayde, that the Cardinall *Birogo* gaue to his Maiesty at diuers times, more then a Million and a halfe of Gold vpon like occasion.

The ordinary reuenues of *Spaine* do amount to fixe Millions of Gold; whereof much is pawned for the debts of the Crown, the rest is spent in charges of the warres, in the gouernment of the Kings houshold, and in the Gallies, which he maintayneth to safeguard the coast of the Kingdome. In extraordinary reuenues he raiseth much more; for in the Kingdom of *Castile* alone in one yeere, his Maiesty had nigh eyght Millions of Gold. And



## Europe.

while I was at his Court, his Maieſty ſent a Ieſuite through all *Spaine*, who went from houſe to houſe, requiring their beneuolence, as an almes for the expences in his wars: by which means he rayſed a Million and a halfe of Gold; but with much diſhonour, ſauing, that it was ſayde, that hee did better to demaund this Mony for the loue of GOD, then to take it by force: yet was not the request ſuch but that it had in it the effect of a commaund; his Maieſty excuſing himſelfe, that the Emperour hys Father, whileſt he liued, did the ſelfe ſame thing, in his greateſt and moſt vrgent affaires and neceſſities. There dooth not want alſo other meanes to rayſe Money, as the impositions of the Millſtone; which as it is ſuppoſed if it once take effect, will amount to two Millions of Gold yeerely. It hath beene already propounded in the Councell, but is not yet reſolued vpon. There be alſo the falles of offices, eſchets, penalties, and amerciaments, and other meanes to raiſe Money.

His Maieſty hath five habits or orders of Knight-hood, (viz:) of *St. James*, of *Alcantara*, of *Callatrava*, of *Monteſea*, and of *Chriſt*. This laſt order is in *Portugall*, and altogether doe yeelde him yeerely 275. Millions of Crowns, which commeth to them in rents payd by the *Iuccari*. The order of the Croſſe, (amongſt theſe orders) is much deſired and greatly fought for, but eſpecially of the great men of *Spaine*, becauſe they yeeld both honour and profit, being in number 250. which haue in yeerly reuenues 1500000. Crownes of Gold, but to ſome he giueth the order, not the Fee, to others the Fee, not the Order, but to many for their good ſeruice, both Fee and order. There is alſo the order of the *Toiſon*, of which his Maieſty is chiefe, which is the moſt honorable, and moſt fought for of princes; although it yeeldeth no profit; of this is made great account, and heere with onely Princes and perſonages of quality are honored.

In theſe Kingdomes are found diuers diſcontented Perſons, and ill ſatiſfied with the gouernment, for that all thoſe *Moores* which there inhabit (being by force made to turne Chriſtians, and by the ſame force conſtrayned ſo to continue) are wonderfully diſpleaſed; And ſuch, as are called *Iewes*, or halfe Chriſtians, doe dayly increaſe in number, and multiply in riches; For they all marry and neuer go to the wars, but continually intend  
theſe



## Spaine.

their Traffique and commodity. Besides these, there bee all the descendents of them, that haue at any time been condemned by the inquisition, which liue in *Spaine* most desperately, because they are therby held infamous, euen to the third and fourth generation, and disabled to receiue any dignity, honour, or office.

Next these, all the *Portugalls* may be comprized in this number of Malecontents, by reason of the particuler hatred which they haue alwayes borne to the *Castilians*, and for their bad vsage to the *Spaniards*, being alwayes held vnder theyr commaund, with mindes cruelly affected. The Prouinces of *Aragon* also, for theyr priuiledges broken and annulled, and for ryling in armes by meanes of *Antonio Perez*, late Secretary to his Maiesty (who then liued in meane estate in the *French* Court, hauing payed the price for his rashnesse) doe euilly brooke this gouernment, beeing alwayes in subiection, seeing that their chiefe Cittizens, (hauing with losse of theyr liues payde the debt of that punishment due vnto them) haue left a memoriall behind them of that their fact, the stroke whereof is imprinted in all the rest, which are yet for a long time ready to lay downe theyr liues also. Last of all be the Nobles of *Spaine*, which in times past were many in number, and in great estimation with the King, which be now much abased and brought to the number of thirty fixe onely, being now vnemployed by his Maiesty, and receiue small charges from him, and those in places farre remote, and of little or no reputation: some of which doe much blame the King therefore, inferring that thereby hee maketh the people more insolent, hating the Nobility and theyr greatnesse, because they would not that they should much increase in power. The state is serued in all affayres, (as well of small as great importance) with common Persons, and of no great estimation, for two respects; one, because thereby he is better serued; the other, because he will not make any man too great. For the Spanish nation by Nature is prooude, yet base, and such as careth not though they be hated, so they may bee feared, vsing a certaine *Decorum* (which they call an obeysance, or to speake more properly, a cōpliment or ceremonious curtesie) being ful of flattery, shewing themselues in such publike charges, more seuerer ouer



## Europe.

their owne, then ouer other mens. Ordinarily he is a good Souldior on foote, obedient to his commaunder, and patient in the distresses and labours of warre: but by night they neuer go vpon any seruice. By it selfe alone this Nation hath done nothing of any reckoning, but accompanied with others, it hath made good assayes of theyr owne valour, alwayes boasting of the taking of the *French King*, of the victories of *Almania*, of the enterprise of the *Terceres*, and of the happy fight of the *Curzolari*, without once remembering their contrary successes, of *Goletta*, the *Algeries*, and *England*.

Of ordinary reuenues from *Italy* it receiueth foure Millions of Gold, much of that of *Naples* being pawned: the which the Kingdome of *Cicily* doth yeerely supply by sending thither ordinarily 400. Crownes, the Counsell of *Spaine* taking order for the rest. These states of the Catholike K. in *Italy* be defended from the forces of bordering Princes, partly by Nature of the scite, & partly by the ayde of strong Fortes, ordinarily maintayning in these presidary places of *Italy* 10000. Spanish Footmen, 1200. men at Armes, 300. light Horses, and 36. Gallies for garde of the Sea-coastes: of which there be 16. of *Genoa*, 25. of *Naples*, 12. of *Cicily*, and three of *Sauoy*, although now they be fewer than the limited number. And yet with all this *Armada*, the coasts bee not fully secured, as appeared by the last yeeres example in the damages done by the Turkish Nauy in *Puglia* and *Calabria*, amounting as it is reported to the summe of more then a Million and a halfe of Gold. He serueth himselfe also, when occasion requireth with the Gallies of *Malta*, with the Popes gallies, which are eyghteen, and sometimes also with those of the great Duke of *Tuscany*.

The mindes of these his *Italian* subiects are exceedingly exasperated thorough the insolency of their gouernment, the intolerable charges, and the burthen of infinite taxations, which are continually imposed vpon them; finding out daily one means or other to rayse new summes of Money: The *Neapolitans* are most doubted for reuolting, by reason of the instability of that people; alwaies desirous of change and nouelties. *Milaine* is also suspected, by reason of the damage which they vndergo by lodging of Souldiers at discretion, being growne to a custome, with



## Spaine.

with the finall desolation of diuers families.

The *Indies* are diuided into orientall and occidentall, the king being Sole-Lord both of the one and the other. The orientall vsenot onely to bee indangered by the English Nauies, which in time of warre doe continually trouble them, but is in danger also to be one day wholly lost, and quite taken from the obedience of that Crowne, when the *Spaniards* which be there left for safeguard of the forts, and the gouernment of those places, shal resolue neuer to receiue againe the Spanish Nauye within the ports of those Seas, which hauing no meanes of recouery, wold in short time come to ruine, together with the hope to recouer their losse at any time afterward. The King maintaineth there, for custody of those Countries, many ships of warre, hauing also distributed 8000. Footemen, for the ordinary safeguard of the fortes.

The West-Indies (exceeding rich and abounding with gold and Siluer) are diuided into two partes : *Peru* and new *Spaine*. These Countries are full of mines, in which is found great store of Gold, keeping there in the *Indians* continually at worke, and liuing very barely, vndergoing the punnishment of their ignorance and puslanimity in suffering themselues to be easily ouercome, and so basely subiected. The King hath the first part of all extracted from the mines. These Indies in the time of *Charles* the fift, yeelded no more then 5. hundred M. Crownes of Gold by yeere, but they now yeelde an exceeding commodity to this King; for in the last three yeeres past (comprehending the Bulles of the Crosse, and other confiscations in those parts) he hath receiued from thence ten Millions of Gold. His highnes Ministers still making some newe gaine in those parts, sending this yeere from thence into *Spaine* thirty Millions of Gold, and the people still continuing their Nauigation thither with more gaine vpon their returne, then one hundred for another. The Merchants carry thither VVines, VVoollen-cloth, and other Merchandize of these partes; and bring from thence in lieu thereof, ouer and besides diuers sorts of Spices, a great quantity of Gold: by extraction of which, the fruitfulnessse of the mines is no whit diminished, but it seemeth that they do rather daily more and more encrease and multiply; in such sort, that the

By one year  
coniecture  
is to be  
made of an-  
other.



## Europe.

Countray-men in tilling the ground do find great store thereof together with the cloddes of earth when they dig it vp; And in my time there was discovered a mine of Quicke-Siluer which will yeelde exceeding profit, and most notable and incredible gaine. True it is, that all these profittes haue their interests, but they aryse not to aboue twenty in the hundred of expenses layd out about them, by reason of the conuoyes of the Vesselles, and the security of the fleet. For there is alwaies maintayned strong guardes in the Isle of *Iana*, apt by reason of the scituation, to giue the Empire of all these parts to him that can make himselfe once Maister thereof. The Souldiers which he sent into these partes, haue for their pay two Crownes a month, in such sort, that the Land-Souldiers, the Guarders of the Fortes, and the Gallies which hee mayntayneth for this purpose, is a speciall cause, that his Maiesty expendeth in interestes and charges amongst the *Indies*, more by a greater deale then a Million and a halfe of Gold.

I cannot forbear to tell of one meruailous thing and worthy of consideration; which is, that although his Maiesty by reason of the aboundance of treasure, and many other infinite riches, brought from the *Indies*, should seeme to bee far richer then other princes, and his state much more wealthy and abundant then the states of other, yet the Potentates see that the great *Turke*, not hauing any mines of gold, is in his state a great deale more wealthier, and so is *Fraunce*, which hath no such meanes to get Money; and yet though it bee deprived of this commodity, it is notwithstanding in it selfe more rich, & more mighty then *Spaine*. Therefore you must note that the Crowne of *Spayne* is much hindered, by reason of the vncertaine returne of his fleet, subiect euery yeare to the danger of Seas, Currents, and the surprisall of the English Navy, which doth still infest them. And yet notwithstanding there escapeth such plenty of Gold and other riches brought from thence, that they account that from those partes, (as appeareth by a record thereof from time to time kept in the Citty of *Sinile*) in seauenty foure yeers space there hath come into *Spaine* 260. Millions of Golde; a thing incredible to think, much more to tell, and yet most true. Of all which summe, there remaineth now in *Spaine* in ready  
coyne



## Spaine.

Coyne and Plate (in which this Nation doth much delight) about 56. Millions; 25. the *Genovaies* haue had for interest; seauen Millions were spent in the *French* warres, and those which he made for the conquest of the Kingdome of *Portugall*; eyght were bestowed vpon that glorious and stately building of the famous *Escuriale*, and the rest, which is more then 100. Millions hath beene all spent in the wars of *Flanders*. So that it may bee truely sayde, that all the enterprizes which this state hath vndertaken, haue beene performed with *Indian Golde*: beeing certainly to be affirmed without contradiction, that *Phillip* the second, during his raigne alone, spent more then all his predecessors, being in number 62. that haue raigned since these kingdomes shooke of the *Romaine* yoake, seeing he alone hath spent more then 100. Millions, and notwithstanding all this heere spoken of, *Spaine* is very poore and smally stored with wealth. For although his Nauigation to the *Indies* bee vphelde, yet the Traffique which hee hadde with *England* and *Flaunders* (which brought him exceeding and most secure gaynes) is all cutte off, whence it seemes that not without reason, the *Spaniards* say in discourse of this Golde brought from *India* into *Spaine*, that it worketh the same effectes vpon them, that a shewer of raine dooth vpon the toppes and couering of houses, which falling thereon, dooth all at last discend below to the ground, leauing no benefit behind; to those that first receiued it.

Hauing hitherto discoursed of the other states of the Catholique King, it remayneth now to speake of *Flanders*, which is the true correlatiue of the *Indies*, seeing that all the Golde brought out of *Indian* in the Low-Countrey VVarres: which Countrey yeeldeth now small profit to this Prince, though in times past it afforded exceeding commodities and Reuenues to him that hadde the Dominion thereof; for *Charles* the first drew from thence by extraordinary grieuances and impostes (occasioned by his manifold Warres) more then 24. Millions of Gold.

This Countrey, though it bee by Nature verie steryle and vnfruitefull, yet by meanes of Arte, it prooueth to the Inhabitanes very profitable and commodious, exercising with all trauayle and industry the Trade of Merchandize; by which  
in



## Europe.

in former times infinit riches arose to their princes, who alwaies held that Countrey deere, and fought by all meanes to conserue the Dominion thereof, as at this present dooth the Catholike King retaine that, which he hath in his possession, and to regain the Dominion of that which hee hath not, although with lesse hope then he hath heretofore had, by reason of the late losse of the City of *Grumminghen* in *Friesland*, with the which he hath not onely lost the hope of *Friesland* it selfe, but of all the rest also, seeing that the states of *Holland* and *Zeland* vnited together, and relieued with the fauours of the bordering Princes, doe keepe themselues free from his obedience, daily augmenting theyr power, by hauing for their Generall, *Grane Maurice* Count of *Nassau*, a Prince of exceeding valour and courage. By the space of so many yeeres, wherein this warre hath indured, the King hath profered diuers meanes of composition, finding not onely the people much opprest with continuall calamity of the wars, but himselfe wearied also vnder the long continued burthen of Armes.

But the *Flemmings* becing altogether vnwilling to bee gouerned and commaunded by the Spanish Nation, or to subiect (as they tearme it) the liberty of their conscience to Papacy, for these respectes of so great importance, and vpon which neither the one or the other party hath any will to leaue off the least of their Designes, all these Treaties, and accordes also, haue been vtterly dissolued, and now more then euer they were, bent to vphold the warres. Which to end, *Phillip* the second promised this people to condiscend vnto their petitions, graunting whatsoever they desired, protesting as concerning the first Article, to send one of the Princes of his owne bloud to be their Gouvernour, and to the second Article, concerning Religion, hauing called together his Deuines, & propounded vnto them in what state his Maiesty findeth himselfe, by hauing sustained the wars so many yeeres, with purpose to maintaine the Catholike cause in these parts, and how the enterprise by means of armes is each day become more difficile, rather loosing then gayning by thys course, he desired to know of them if it were lawfull to make an accord, by suffering them to enioy the freedome of their consciences: whereupon they concluded that his Maiesty might so doe  
with



## Spaine.

with good reason, his thoughtes beeing not onely knowne to GOD, but his actions also tending to this end, made manifest to men, that he might hope by fayre meanes, and with loue to gaine that, which hee could neuer obtayne by threatning and force.

Which resolution being propounded to the states in the name of his Catholike Maiesty, that hee would suffer them to enjoy the libertie of their conscience, which they so much desired, it seemeth by experience that they do but only giue him the hearing, being inwardly farre otherwise determined, standing still vpon their guard, with protestation neuer to be reduced vnder the obedyence of the Crowne of *Spaine*, nor at any time to serue the Spanish Nation. In which deliberation they confirme themselves, knowing that they feele no extraordinary greuance by this Warre. For although it seemeth that the wonted trading and Traffique betwixt the *Spaniards* and the *Flemmings* be ceast, yet, seeing that that part of the people which obey the King of *Spaine* be pertakers of this commodity, the residue also not subiect, doe by this meanes participate thereof, so his Maiesty lyueth much troubled in mind about this warre, grieving beyond measure, that those of *Holland* and *Zeiland* do aduenture by sea into *Italy*, passing so boldly the Straights of *Gibraltar*. By meanes whereof, they bring store of Corne and graine into *Italy*, and recarry back great store of Mony: for these states hauing found out this meane to vtter their graine, without imparting it as in times past, to the Subiectes of his Maiesty, doe make but small account of this warre, by reason of so important respectes: and his Maiesty is contrarily much preiudiced by their venting of their Corne in the Kingdomes of *Naples* & *Sicilie*, by his licence and permission, for he must needs giue these commodities to others, with very small profit and gaine, and cannot, as first hee promised to himselfe, by this meanes bridle the *Italian* Princes, and retaine them all together in duty for that one respect.

For the maintenance of this warre, his Maiesty maintaineth a great number of men in armes, by occasion whereof (though many be taken away) the payes were brought to the number of forty thousand, his Maiesty spending (ouer and besides the reuenues which hee hath out of those Countreyes) 250. thousand



## Europe.

Crownes monthly, and now lately he hath obtayned four millions of gold of the *Genovais*, for the vpholding of these wars, of which the Cardinall Arch-duke of *Austria* now goeth generall: which summe being added to the reuenues of the Arch-Bishoprick of *Tolledo*, the profittes and prouisions of the whole charge amounts to 400. M. Crowns by yeare; but it is thought that the generall shall not haue with him any great number of soldiers, though he receiueth frō his Maiesty supreme and extraordinary authority. It was once supposed that these wars would the rather draw to end when *Phillip* the second gaue the Princessse for wife to the Arch-duke, with the assignement of *Flaunders* for her dower, beleeuing that the people would quiet themselves vnder the obedience of that Prince, if they might be suffered to inioy the liberty of theyr consciences, but time hath reuealed what effects those proiects haue produced.

Hee is serued but with ill will of any Nation that hath ventured in this action, for hee neyther graceth the *Spaniards*, nor trusteth the *Flemmings*, nor will commit any great charge to the *Italians*, least they should grow too great: and therefore keepeth vnder, and granteth but to very few any degree or dignity of account: which is the principall cause that hee hath few men of valor and experience in his seruice, but goeth still on with losse of reputation in matters of warre: for by the death of the two Dukes of *Alua* and *Parma*, the matters of the warre are reduced to tearmes of small consideration, and held of little account and estimation.

The number of the Gallies maintained in seruice, is 86. hys ordinary reuenues together, with the extraordinary, and raised vpon aduatage, is ten Millions of Gold.

Hauing hetherto spoken of the reuenues, and states of this so mighty a Prince, it remaineth now to discourse of the quality of his Councell, and the conditions of his Counsellours, a matter both of great importance and worthy of vnderstanding, being the very seat of the soule of gouernment.

The gouernment is absolute and royall: matters of seuerall qualities are handled in seuerall counsels, & they are 7. in number besides the priuy Councell: That the King may be the better informed of all affaires, they keepe alwaies neere about hys  
person



## Spaine.

person in feuerall chambers vnder one rooffe . Their names are these, the counsell of *Spain*, of the *Indies*, of *Italy*, of the *Low-Countries*, of war, of the order of *S. Iohn*, and of the *Inquisition*. In these the slow and considerate aduises of *Fabius*, rather then the rash and heady resolutions of *Marcellus* are receiued. As much as may be, innouations & change of ancient customes are auoyded. In regard whereof, *Innocent* the 8. was wont to affirme, the *Spanish* Nation to be so wary in their actions, that they seldome committed any ouersight therein. By this course the King rangeth vnder his obedienee, *Castilians*, *Arragons*, *Biscaines*, *Portugals*, *Italians*, *Germanes*, the new-world, *Christians* and *Gentiles*, people vtterly different in lawes, customes, and natures, as if they were all of one Nation, and his naturall subiects.

And whereas some obiect, that this Empire cannot long endure in so flourishing an estate, because the members thereof are so far disioyned: to such obiections let this maxime be opposed, That spacious dominions are best preferued against forraine attempts, as those of meane capacity haue the like aduantage against intestine diuersions. But in this Empire thus diuided, spaciousnesse and mediocrity are well vnited. The spaciousnesse is apparant in the whole body compounded of feuerall members: the mediocrity in the greatest part of the feuerall members. For seeing that the portions thereof (as *Spaine*, *Pern*, *Mexico*) are so great & goodly states of themselues, they cannot but be stored with all those good things, which are requisite eyther for greatnes or mediocrity; that is to say, with a puissant vnion to resist forraine attempts, and sufficient inward force to prouide against domesticall discontents. For who knoweth not that by meanes of Sea-forces al these members may strengthen one another, and stand as it were vnited, euen as *Cesar Augustus* by maintaining one fleet at *Reuenna*, and another at *Massana*, awed the whole *Roman* Empire, and kept it in assured tranquility: as also we haue seene, the *Portugalls*, by reason of their Sea-forces, which they maintained in *Persia*, *Cambia*, *Decan*, and other places of the *Indies*, not only to haue giuen the law to those famous Princes, but maugre their enemies to keep it, and peaceably to enioy it at this day.

These his Maiesties Counsellors, shew no token of good cor-



## Europe.

respondency amongst themselves, but which is far worse, are (if not meereley contrary) yet much opposite the one vnto the other; whence oftentimes arise deliberations of great prejudice to that gouernment, slacknesse in matters of great importance, and most of all in those, which haue most neede of the speediest execution. All matters once resolued off in Councell, passe indifferently, with incredible and surpassing secrecy, as well those of meane, as others of weightiest consideration. For, it being the firme minde and intention of his Maiesty, that all thinges should passe with silence, and those especially, which most concerne him, hee and his Counsell doubting to erre in disclosing any, though neuer so light, silence therefore indifferently all, as well great as small, to their greatest praise, and commendation of secrecy, which is the true scope of all matters of state. *Phillip* liued with like ends proposed to himselfe, as are common to other Princes; to wit, to increase his dominions, and to suppress his enemies: but in particuler, desirous after his death, to leaue his Sonne in an happy estate, that he might thereby more certainly ariue to the Monarchy of the whole World. And therefore, for his greater credit and reputation, his will and pleasure was, that of all Embassadours, and their followers, hee should be followed with as great honor and reuerence as his owne person. Not forgetting that he hadde no greater enemy, then the bloud of *France*, and therefore sought all that he could to work diuision in the members thereof, and to weaken the forces of that Kingdome, by all meanes, that were either possible or imaginable to be effected. Hee saw that Kingdome vncertaine of their suecessor, and subiect to ciuill wars, and internall discords; and therefore hoped (as occasion should offer it selfe) to gaine one day a good part thereof, at least to dissiue it, and to bring it to so low an ebbe, that it should neuer after haue either means, or power to reare it selfe to her auncient potency and greatnes. And therefore in all his discourses and propositions which hee held with the Prince, hee euermore labored with often inclinations, to infixe this most firmly in his minde, and to imprint it with a deep impression neuer to be razed out, That he should wage warre with the Crowne of *France*. Alwayes making thys his pretence, that his meaning onely was to free that kingdome  
from



## Spaine.

from Heresies, and to reduce it to the true and Catholike fayth; although the true end thereof were (as before it hath beene sayde) to destroy and as much as in him laye, vtterly to adnihilate & bring to naught that powerfullnesse and potency of theirs which hath (as it should seem) alwaies opposed it selfe to those ambitious designements, intended herefore by his predecessors, for obtayning the Monarchy and Empire of the World. But in his latter dayes, his last consultation was, to vndergoe once more another interprize for *England*, as well in regard of the many dammages receiued by the English fleete, as also because the Queene of that famous Iland, continually releued her Neighbours against him: especially those of the Lowe-Countries, who without those succours sent from her, could hardly and with great difficulty haue maintained themselues agaynst him.

And so farre raged this last resolution in his thoughtes, that he began euen to make a perticuler description of the people & Subiects thereof, and of the men and Munition that might be required in such an interprize, building his hopes vpon the intelligence which his Catholique Maiesty had with the Catholikes of that Kingdome: and excusing themselues of the badde successe of the forepassed warre, by the disorders which were then committed, & by the long delay of prouision at that time; but this his latter resolution tooke not his last effect, howbeit (for some good respect as they would haue it) this practise and working of theirs is still desired, euen against some particuler kingdomes of *England*.

Some haue counselled his Maiesty to impatronize himselfe of *Greece*, and *Morca*, by taking them from the Turkish Empyre: Beeing that those people desire nothing more then to shake off that tyrannicall yoke, and to ease themselues of so barbarous & so insupportable a gouernment. But considering the ill successe which happened to the Emperour his Father in the Turkish warres, and the hardnesse in holding what he getteth, he shewed no inclination therunto at all, but seemed to mislike so much of the motion, as one whose thoughtes were bent vnto another course; namely, that he might conserue peace in *Italy*, & keepe as much (as might bee possible) the Princes of *Italy* disynited,



## Europe.

that he might thereby the better rule them, and carry a more commaunding hand ouer them, and likewise dispose of them at his pleasure. And therefore in the differences which rise and grow vp amongst them, they constitute him their arbitratour and chiefe Vmpeere, who descideth these grieuances as himselfe listeth (albeit that they breake foorth into armes or otherwise) with intent to hinder them from growing to any dangerous greatnesse: which effected generally (excepting the *Venetians*) he maketh little reconing of all the rest of the *Italian* Princes.

This state layeth clayme to the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, vnto part of that whereof the House of *Austria* remayneth heyre. He dooth the like to the City of *Tunis* in *Affrica*, to the Island of *Corfica* possessed by the *Genois*, to the base and higher *Brittany*, as also the Kingdome of *Hierusalem*, whose Tytle hee taketh vpon him; and finally (as it is aboue mentioned) pretendeth himselfe the Monarch of the VVorld. But this mightinesse of his hath many contrarieties in it selfe, which hinder this motion, and cruelly curbe these his deseignements, by reason he sets forward with such dulnesse of speede, whereby the prouision which is prepared for effecting of these future enterprizes, coms alwaies too late. For if hee bee to prouide Souldiers in *Italy*, after they bee pressed, inrolled, and set onwardes, they shall lie waighting three or foure months at the Riuer of *Spaine*, before they bee embarked for theyr voyage, theyr pay still running on, to the great dammage and preiudice of that Crowne; so that wee may very well auouch, that what another Prince performeth with two hundered thousand Crownes expence, his Catholike Maiesty can scarce execute so much with the cost of 500 thousand. His Money beeing besides not so well mannaged as it might bee. For there is no account kept at all of those his so great Reuenues, and In-comes of the Crowne, as also of those expences which are daily laide out for the conseruing of so many states, and for the managements of so many wars; his officers besides, shewing themselues for the most part litle circumspect in those charges and offices, that are laid vpon them, and notwithstanding, that all these armies and armes of his Maiesty are continually labouring in diuers parts of the world, yet the  
king



## Spaine.

King himfelfe carries euermore a moft quiet mind, and far from the thoughts of warre, beeing naturally much more inclined to peace then armes, and more giuen to ciuill gouernment, then to the noife & rumor of war; and therefore layeth afide al thought of thofe enterprizes in himfelfe, cafting the burthen vpon other mens fhoulders.

Bnt great and worthy of much confideration, is that oppofition and aiftance which he finds in this his gouernment, through the male-contentedneffe of his fubiefts. *Flanders* he may behold ftill holding her Weapons in her hands, which fhe hath continued for the courfe of fo many yeeres with fuch obftinate refiftance, that fhe may not be brought to obedience. *Spaine*, hee may fee swelling with ciuill feditions, and of euill affection towards him, for thofe their priuiledges, which haue been broken and violated by him, and through the many and infinite taxations, which haue lately beene impofed vpon them. And in *Italy*, as well the ftate of *Millaine*, as the Kingdome of *Naples*, are defirous of any other prince then himfelfe, as being willing to be gouerned by any other Nation, then the *Spanifh*. Befides, his *Indies* are fubieft vnto danger, afwell in regard of the infurrections of the Souldiers, which are there in garrifon, whereunto they are fubieft, as alfo in that, they are expofed to the incursions of the *English*, *French*, and *Flemifh* fleetes, which infeft them full oft, and almoft in fuch continuall manner beat vpon their coafts, that it may be truely fpoken of them, that they are neuer out of feare. But of no leffe danger is the dammage, which that crowne may very eafily receiue, by a fuddaine and vnexpected losse of their fleet, becaufe on it are grounded all the hopes and defignes of the faide ftate, that are of any importance. But more pernitiuous and fuller of troble then the reft, would be the losse of the *Indians*, which with eafe either forrain fleetes may be taken from them, or much molefted and hindred: or if neyther of thefe, yet that the Spaniards themfelues, fent thither in *Colonies*, combining themfelues in one bond of vnity, hauing all the fortreffes in their owne hands, together with the ports & fhips that are ther, fhould one day refolue to be gouerned by thefelues, denying all obedience to theyr Kings commaundement. Another contrariety alfo doth this great ftate incurre, and it is this;  
that



## Europe.

that the Prince thereof, hath farre better meanes to get Money then men. For howbeit vpon euery occasion, and when neede serueth, he is serued by the *Swizzers* and the *Dutch*, yet these of themselues are little or nothing woorth, and easily vpon euery sleight occurrence of their slacke pay, ready to make commotions, and in their fury to forsake the felde. Of other Nations (besides that, his Maiesty dareth not to trust them) he cannot (although he would) haue such a sufficient number as shold supply his neede and occasion. So that, howbeit that this Prince be Sole Lord and Maister of so many mighty states, and of so great and potent an Empire, yet liueth he full of continuall trauels and discontents, which are also made the greater, by considering the perrill wherein the Lowe-Countries stand, the discontent of his owne seruants, and the little surety he hath in the fayth of strangers.

Now hauing taken a full view & mature consideration; both of the states, as also the end and intent of this mighty Monarch, together with those contrarieties which those states do suffer, it resteth that in this last place wee should intreat of the intelligence which he holdeth with other Princes; which as it is of al other knowledges the most necessarie, so is it the hardest to be discouered, bringing with it for the most part greater difficulty, to be able fully and iudiciously, to pierce into the purposes and inward thoughtes of Princes, but especially, into the secrete Councelles of the King of *Spaine* himselfe, who is so full of cunning, and the very Father himselfe (as I may so tearme him) of dissimulation: making alwaies that iudgement of him, as may be gathered out of those demonstrations, which are so apparant to be seene, and out of the successe of those things which in this kinde doe daily occurre.

To beginne therefore from this poynt: I say, that generally (to instance first of all in the Pope,) his Catholike Maiesty, will haue him to be such a one as he may wholly depend vpon him, and to be confident of his fastnesse. And therefore in the election of the Popes, his indeuor is, that not any ascend to that dignity, that doth any way fauor of the *French* faction, (and therefore alienated from his deuotion) nor any that are of singuler Nobility, least theyr spirits might be too generous to be basely  
abu-



## Spaine.

abused by him : nor any of the kingdome of Naples , for feare (taught by former examples) of some newe disturbance in his states : But his principall desire is, to create one of base lignage. and of meane respect, and such a one, as shall if it bee possible acknowledge his Cardinalship and all other dignities, to proceed from him : and such a one, whose parents, and kinsfolkes are but poore, that by the bounty which he shall bestow vppon them, and the pensions which he shall conferre on their friends he may bind them vnto him, and confidently assureth himselfe of their fauour and partaking, when occasion serueth.

And for this cause in all that hee can, hee seekes to weaken the Popes, and detract from their dignities, to make them inclinable to his will, and wholly to depend vpon him, procuring them to continue in this office of their loue, by furnishing their state with Corn out of *Puglia* and *Sicily*, & by vpholding the authority of the holy Sea, in defending their coasts frō the incurSIONS of the Turkish fleets, & from the depredations and inroades of Pirats : and lastly, by giuing them to vnderstand, that it is in his power to call a Councell, and in it to take an account of their actions, and to call their prerogatiues in Question. And howbeit the absolution and rebenediction of the King of *Navarre*, did much mooue, nay beyond measure trouble the minde of *Phillip*, who did hope for great thinges at this Popes hands, yet did he dissemble this offence, as on the contrary, did his holinesse the preiudice that was and is doone him in *Spaine*, in regard of holy Church, whereby not onely his orders and decrees are broken and moderated by the Councell of the King ; but also, sometimes reiected and contemned, whereof his holynesse hath made often complaint to the Spanish Embassadour, but to small purpose.

In the Colledge of Cardinalles, the King at this present hath not much authority, by reason of his imperious proceeding, and lesse will haue hereafter, the *French* Nation beeing now risen to some greatnesse ; which will now euery day more and more be able strongly to oppose themselues against the *Spanish*, by whose concurrencie, greatnesse and contention, one with another, that Sea hath gained such greatnesse and reputation in the greatnesse.



## Europe.

With the Emperour (howbeit all be of his bloud) his Catholike Maiesty hath not any great intelligence, in regard that hys *Cesar*-like Maiesty would not accept of the Infanta with those poore and common conditions, which were proposed vnto him, as also, because in many occurrence that haue beene offered, he hath giuen him but slender satisfaction, neither would euer seek any counsell of his Maiesty, which principally is by him desired, to the intent that he might seeme to relie vpon him. But true it is, that these gulfes are now ouerblowne, and these distastes are at length somewhat lessened, in consideration that the said Catholike King hath lately sent 300. thousand Crownes to his Imperiall Maiesty, for the behoofe of this present Turkish war, the Emperour hauing sent an Embassadour of purpose to repay his greatest thanks for this so great a kindnesse.

For the Arch-Dukes, his Catholike Maiesty doth make litle reckoning of *Maximilian*, hee hates *Mathias*, and onely loues that Noble Cardinall, to whom (as it hath beene told you) hee hath lately giuen the gouernment of *Flanders*, and made him generall of those parts.

As for the most Christian King of *France*, he is not onely hated of his Catholike Maiestie vpon interest of state, because by his depression, *Spain* would the sooner and more easily rise to a Monarchy, but also out of that ancient emulation, which hath euer beene betweene these two kingdomes; besides, being exasperated one against another, by so many iniuries, so many wrongs, & so many iars and brawles, both new and old. Which are so many the worse taken, because it is not vnknowne to his Catholike Maiesty, that his highnes is much hated of the *French* King, aswell for the foresaide respectes, as also for that he hath more feelingly beene offended by the house of *Austria*, then of any other Prince whatsoever. For, of his two kingdoms, the one of *Navarre*, and the other of *France*, of the first he was deprived by the grandfather of *Charles* the 5. that was Emperour. And for the 2. hath bin shrewdly pursued by the Catholike King, vwho hath left nothing vnwrought to stop the passage of his rising, & to hinder him from his heighth, howbeit they bee both of one bloud, both hauing marryed two sisters, daughters to the *French* King, *Henry* the 2. And yet notwithstanding all this breaking  
the



## Spaine.

the bondes of bloud and confanguity, his Catholique Maiesty hath hadde so hard and long a strife with him, and hath in such fort and manner opposed himselfe to his deseigns, that he hath bin able, if not wholly to hinder, yet at least to delay his greatnesse, although now at this present hee is in that state, that hee ought rather to seeke for peace, then warre, with the Crowne of France.

With the King of *Polonia* hee hath not any negotiation, saue good intelligence, because hee is liacked in kindred with thys Crown, hauing to wife one of the house of *Austria*. And because betwixt these two Crownes there is not any pretension of state, or interest of confines, which are wont to be causes from whence discords and rancours arise, and also for the most part euil intelligence amongst Princes.

Some wise and experienced commaunders in discoursing on this point, and opposing the ieaalousie & emulation of the grand Seignior affirme, that if the King should imploy those treasures, which now hee spendeth in erecting of fortresses vpon the increase of his Nauy: (an expence sufficient for the furnishing of a hundred and fifty Gallies) it would bee an occasion, that the *Turke*, whose Nauy now exceedeth not the number of a hundred and thirty gallies, would augment it to the number of 200. least he should seeme to be inferiour to this King, whereby his Maiesty should be drawne vnto an excessiue expence, and his reputation nothing augmented thereby. But that subtill, I will not tearme it sophisticall argument, is easily answered, and let men assure themselues, that in action nothing is more dangerous then an ouerweening conceit of their owne wisedome. For it is not inough, barely to say, that the Grand Seignior will be superiour in Sea-forces, but wise men must weigh, whether it lie in his power so to do, or no. For although the *Turke* be Lord of a larger Sea-coast then the King, yet can he not compare with his Maiesty, either in furniture or Mariners. Along all the Coast of *Affricke*, hee hath not an harbour, where hee can builde or keepe a couple of Gallies, except *Algier* and *Tripolie*. In the *Euxine* sea, what place of name is there besides *Capha* & *Trapezond*? What better report can wee giue to the Coast of *Asia*? More implementes then a spacious Sea-Coast are incident



## Europe.

to this businesse: he must haue plenty of Timber and cordage; he must be furnished with a people practised in Sea affayres, able to endure the labour and working of the Waters; delighting in Traffique and Nauigation; cheerefull in Tempestes and rough weather, which dare dwell as it were amongst Perils, & expose theyr liues to a thousand daungers: As for the Turkish Subiectes, the better part neuer saw Sea, and those that haue v-  
sed it, are not to be compared to the *Byskaines*, *Catalonians*, *Portugalles*, and *Genowais*; (I adde this people for their many good seruices doone at Sea, in the behalfe of his Crowne.) To conclude, in two thinges the King excelleth the Turke; the first is, that although the Turke can command more men, yet the best and greater part of them being Christians, he dare hardly trust against vs; the second, that the Sea-Coasts of the King are neerer conioyned then those of the Turke, and in that regard are sooner established. By this facility, experience hath prooued, that the Easterne Nauies haue beene often ouerthrowne by the Westerne, the Southerne by the Northern, the *Carthagenian* by the *Romaine*, the *Asian* by the *Gracian*. *Octavius Caesar* with the Navy of *Italy*, defeted the fleet of *Egipt*; and in our times the *Armada* of the Christians, the fleet of the *Turkes*. The *Turkes* themselues confesse, that in Sea-fights the Christians excell, & are vnwilling to deale with those forces. As often as *Charles* the fift rigged forth his Navy, it was so puissant, that the Turke neuer durst leaue the harbour. In his iourney of *Algier*, hee rigged 500. Vessels; in his *Tunis* voyage sixe hundred. *Andrew Dorie* conducted so gallant an *Armada* into *Greece*, that the Turk not daring to mooue out of his station, he tooke *Patras* and *Corona* in *Morea*.

With this Emperour, this King of *Spaine* hath not now, neyther peace, truce, nor warre. The one he ought not; the other he will not; and the third hee abhorreth; knowing how great the power of the great Turke is, especially at Sea, against him, without the help of the *Italian* Common-wealth. And yet for all this dooth not that King feare the Turke so much, but the great Turke feareth him as much, if not more. For hee knowes, that he is to deale with a Potentate of much estimation and reputation, and well practised in the World; and although of late  
thete



## Spaine.

there haue fallen out betweene them certaine iarres and differences, vppon dammages done by the one and the other Prince reciprocally in each others Dominions, yet it is to bee thought, that these two so powerfull Princes, will not easily be brought to take armes, seeing they emulate each others greatnesse, and contend with equall strife, to bring all Christendome to theyr subiection; pretending both one and the selfe same end of Religion. Besides, it is sufficient for the Catholike King to haue reuenged his wronges, and for the Turke, that hee is no more molested by the Spanish Armadoes. He expecteth (after he shall haue ended his warres with *Hungarie*) to haue occasion to shew his griefes by assaying the Kingdome of *Naples*, and that of *Sicily*, by inuading *Affrica*, and so diuert him from that designe which he hath to make himselfe Mayster of *Prouince*, and by this meanes to indamage and trouble the saide King, with whom he may contend with some equality, for that their forces may very well be saide to be ballanced with a iust and equall peyze. For if the one hath a warlike and a well armed Empyre, the other hath a vnited and most ritch Kingdome. But heerein the Turke hath the greater aduantage, that he spendeth but little in the warres, in regard of that that not onely the King of *Spaine* spendeth, but euen all the Princes of the World: for his Souldiers receiue for their pay, those Landes which hee hath gyuen them to holde for their life, with this condirion annexed, that they shall be alwaies ready to serue him in his warres.

His Land-forces consist in Cauallrie and infantry: the best Foote-men of all the *Germane* Nations, it the *Wallon*: and it is well known, that in all ages the *Spanish* haue bin accounted one of the most valorous Nations of the World. The *French* in nine yeere were subdued to the *Romaine* yoake; the *Spaniards* helde out 200. The power and person of *Augustus Caesar*, were requisite to the subduing of the *Cantrabians*, whereas they not onely deliuered their owne Countrey from subiection of the Moores, but inuaded *Affricke*, and therein many strong places. So the *Portugals* inuaded *Barbarie*, tamed the Coast of *Guinea*, *Aethyopia*, and *Cafraria*; they conquered *India*, *Malaca*, and the *Moluccas*: the *Castilians* sayling through the *Atlanticke* Sea, subdued the New-worlde, with all the Kingdomes, Prouinces, and



## Europe.

people therein : and finally droue the *French* from *Naples*, *Sicill*, and *Millaine*.

These people are much inclined to melancholy, which makes them solemn in their conuersation, slow and aduised in action: they loue complement, and stand much vppon apperance, presuming greatly of themselves, & exceedingly boasting of theyr owne doings : and to maintaine their reputation, they will imploy all they haue in furniture and apparrell : in suffering of hunger, thirst, heat, cold, labour, and extremities, they will lay vp any Nation in Europe. By these vertues they haue atchieued the glory of so many victories, & although sometime they haue beene ouercome, notwithstanding, they haue vanquished theyr vanquishers, as it fell out at *Raenna*. They neuer suffered any famous defeature, but in the iournies of *Algiei* and *England*; the one by the casualty of tempest; the other by the skilfull pro- wesse and Sea-faring dexterity of the English. Three or foure thousand of them turned topsie turuy the better part of *Germa- ny*, & made way with their Swords through the thickest of their enemies. In the iourney of *Caruen* in *Barbarie*, being foure thou- sand foote Souldiers of great valour, they made a braue retraiet the space of foure or fiue Myles, beset and charged with twen- ty thousand Horse by the King of the *Moores*, at least fiue or six times, with the losse onely of 80. men, and the slaughter of 800. of the enemy. They serue better on foot then on horseback, although they haue horses of excellent courage : & better with the Harquebuzze, then with any other kinde of Weapon: vvith great care they will couer their losses and weaknesse.

As concerning their Causalry, it cannot be gainsaid, but that the Spanish genet is the noblest Horse of Christendome, far ex- celling the courser of *Naples*, or the Horse of *Burgundy* so much esteemed of the *French*; or the *Freslander* in so great request with the  *Germans*. It should seeme that nature her selfe hath armed this people, in giuing them the Iron mines of *Biskay*, *Guipuscua*, and *Medina*, with the temperature of *Bayon*, *Bilbo*, *Toledo*, and *Calataint*; the *Amories* of *Millaine*, *Naples*, and *Boscoducis*, the corne and prouision of the inexhaustible garners, of *Apulia*, *Sicil*, *Sardinia*, *Artesia*, *Castile*, and *Andeleuzia*, with the plentifull vintages of *Soma*, *Calabria*, *San Martin*, *Aymont*, & sundry other places.



## Spaine.

places. To conclude, this Prince is so mighty in Golde and Silver, that therewith (to spare his owne people, ingaged in the defence of so many Territories, Prouinces, and frontiers, from vndoubted destruction) hee is able to wage what numbers of horsemen & footmen of the *German* and *Italian* Nations it pleaseth him.

The Princes whose dominions are bordering, and in regard of their forces are any way able to indanger his dominions, are the *Venetians*, the *Kinges of France* and *England*, and the *Turke*. The *Venetians* (long since the *Dutchy of Millaine* came to the possession of this crowne) haue set them downe with great quietnesse, rather looking to the strengthning and keeping of theyr owne Townes and pieces, then to the winning of others from theyr Neighbours. And good reason it is, sithence peace is the surest anker-hold of their common-wealth. For wee haue seene the *Spanish* in fauour with the *Venetians* (when theyr state stood dangerously ingaged with the warres of *Baiazet*, *Soliman*, and *Selin* the second) cheerefully and resolutely to haue entred into the action at *Cephalonia*, *Preuisa*, and *Lepanto*, when neuertheless at the same instant they had at theyr owne doores, *Algier*, *Tunis*, and *Aphrodisium*, theyr daungerous enemyes, neerer: and also affronting *Spaine*, *Sicill*, *Sardinia*, the *Baleares*, and the Kingdome of *Naples*, then *Cypros*, or the Ilandes of the *Ionian* Sea.

Concerning *France*, sithence the *French* Nation hath put an end to theyr ciuill discontentes, what trophee or tryumph can the *Spaniard* boast to haue carryed from them. Indeede it cannot be denyed, but in elder dayes the warinesse of the *Spaniards* hath turned the furious attempes of the *French* to matter of too late repentance. For the great Captaine surprising *Barletta*, and then incamping vppon the bankes of *Garigliano*, first tooke from them the possession of the Kingdome of *Naples*, and afterwards all hope of regaining it againe. By the same temporizing *Anthony Leua* wearyed King *Francis* at *Ticinum*, and prosper *Colonna*, cleered the *Duchy of Millain*.

In assaulting of townes and fortresses, I confesse fury to be of great moment; I confesse likewise that by this vertue the *French* preuayled at *Ioious*, *Momedium*, and *Calcis*; but in set bartels



## Europe.

tels, as at *Graveling*, *Saint Quintius*, and *Siena*, most commonly they haue had the foyle: for in the fielde good order and skilfull conduction doth more preuaile, then valour and furious resolution: In assaults, fury and resolution, more then counsell or temporizing. In their warres with the English, they receiued more dishonor, then in the warres of any other Nations. As to detract from the fame and well deseruing glory of any Christian people, argueth rather an enuious humour, then an vnpartiall Writer: so to passe the bounds of modesty in any action, deserueth no lesse a reprehension. For who acknowledgeth not their discoueries of the Indies to bee woonderfull, their conquestes therein maruailous; their treasures inestimable; their continuance in warres long, as being nouzeled therein since the infancy of *Charles* the fifth: the braue Prouinces of *Italy* and *Flanders* annexed to their Crown to be a matter of goodly consequence. But let vs marke and consider theyr fortunes, sithence the vn-sheathed their Swords against the Christian VVorld, and wee shall soone see, that their treasures, their *Armadas*, their long experienced Infantry, and their conquered Prouinces, haue little or nothing augmented; Nay, haue they not discountenanced. their reputation in these partes? By the expence of infinite Millions of Gold, and efusion of so much Christian bloud, what haue they gained in *Fraunce*? VVhat is *Netherland*? The World seeth more cleere then day light, that for all their great boasts, their large Territories, and infinite Treasures, sithence the English haue delt with them, held them at the staues ende, and discovered their weakenesse; euery Birde hath pulled a feather, their credite to haue beene broken with the bankers of *Germany*; holds giuen ouer for want of pay: their sea forces foiled (if not as they say) discomfited. In the yeere 1586. Sir *Francis Drake* forced the Towne of *Saint Domingo* in *Hispaniola*, *Saint Augustines*, and *Carthagena* on the Continent. And when in reuenge of like pretended iniuries they entred the English Channell with their inuincible *Armada* of 150. sailes, by the fauour of GOD and valour woorth remembrance, through vnknowne Seas, with the losse, taking and sinking of one hundred of their best and tallest Vessels. To requite this Brauado, and to teach this proud Nation that the English (contrary to their opinion) were



## Spaine.

were as well able to offend as defend: In the yeare 1589. they shewed their victorious Nauy of a hundred twenty fixe shippes before the Groine in *Galizia*, assaulted the base Towne, they wonne it, and with 6000. Souldiers at the bridge of *Berges* discomfitted sixteene thousand: thence weighing Ankor, and sayling alongst the Coast and sight of *Spaine*, landed at length at *Pineche* in *Portugall*, wonne the Castle, marched fifty Miles into the Land, kept their Courts of guard in the suburbs of *Lisbon*, and thence returning to *Caskaies* without any great fight or skirmish tooke the Castle, and then sette sayle for *England*, and in their returne, landed at *Vigo*, tooke the Towne and wasted the Countrey.

And againe, after their great and considerate care of future preuention, both for *Spaine* and the *Indies*: their shippes burnt and taken, theyr Gallies put to flight, *Porto Rico*, wonne by assault, *Cales* sacked, and the *Flemish* by their trauels encouraged to strippe him of his trade of Spicery, may well put them in remembrance what they haue receiued at the handes of the English, sithence their first ambitious apprehension of the westerne Empire.

In the East *Indies* he confineth with the King of *Persia*, betwixt whom there is not any euill intelligence, but contrariwise, rather great tokens of much loue and amity, as by whose helpe that King hopeth to find meanes to ouerthrow the Turk. Howbeit he hath very oftentimes denyed him assistance and ayde in those warres, which he made against the house and family of *Ottoman*, being very much vrged and sought vnto by the *Persian*, to send vnto him some of his people that were men expert & skillfull in casting great Ordinance, and also in building and founding of forts, and other the like matters of defence & assistance. Excusing himselfe, with the perrill of his Religion, which doth not permit Christian Princes to lend aide vnto Infidels: though indeede the true cause was, because he would not thereby giue an occasion of future trouble and molestation to himselfe (by communicating these two aduantages so important in *VVarre*) in his nauigation to the *Indies*, which are adioyning to the *Persian* Sea.

With the King of *Fesse* and *Morocco* his Catholique Maiesty



## Europe.

is in league, vppon interest of those states hee possesseth in *Africa*.

With the Duke of *Sauoy*, to whom hee is knit by coniunction of bloud, and tied by strictnesse of kindred, there ought not to be any doubt of their good intelligence each to other.

His Catholicke Maiesty would very willingly that the great Duke of *Thuscany* should wholly depend vpon him; but he is so far from that, that he doth not onely not depend; but in many occasions hath still shewed himselfe opposite vnto this Crown, & hath lately discovered himselfe to be a defender of the crown of *France*, by ioyning alliance with the most Christian King; and therefore there is not any good intelligence betwixt them. In like manner, the Embassadour of *Thuscany* is of little regard in that Court, and the Dukedome of *Ferrraa*, is now diuolued to the Church.

The Duke of *Mantua*, labours bodily to bee in grace, vvith his Catholique Maiesty; and for this ende hath yeilded himselfe vnder his protection; hoping heereby to bee secured from those troubles, which he might receiue from the Duke of *Sauoy*, for the Marqueship of *Monferrato*. Imagining withall, that for the quiet of *Italy*, and for the better assurance of his owne states therein, and particulerly, for the state of *Millaine*, the Catholicke King will bee ready to defend him from all molestations, that shall be offered.

The Duke of *Parma* is not only a deuout seruant, and a neare Kinsman, but also a subiect to this Crowne by the Citty of *Placentia*, and therefore wholly depends thereupon, hauing taken a secret oath to obey him in all commaundes. Proceeding with all possible respect, not to giue the least occasion of offence, by reaso that the inuestiture of *Placentia* was not granted absolutely to the house of *Farnesi*, but onely to the fourth descendency, after which it returnes again to the king of *Spain*, as duke of *Millaine*. And therefore his excellency (that hee may not seperate himselfe from his Maiesties desire) did lately refuse, to linke himselfe in aliance with the great duke, least he should displease the King, whose mind he saw was bent against it.

The Duke of *Urbine* being a Prince of small power, wholly relies vpon his Maiesty, as receiuing his greatest benefit from him,



## Spaine.

to whom hee hath committed the charge of all his *Italian* Cavalrie.

The Common-wealth of *Genoa*, is like a Shippe, beaten at Sea, and tost with contrary vvindes, and tempestuous stormes, placed (as it were) betwixt two Anchors, which are Prince, *Doria*, a true borne Cittizen, and the Embassadour of the Catholique King, who hath the protection thereof in his Maisters name, to his great benefit. If euer hee chance to become sole Lord thereof, it will adde a greater Dominion to his greatnes, for the nature and quality of the scituation of that Citty, whereof the *Spaniards* are wont to say, that if the King their Maister were but once LORD of *Marselles* in Prouince, and of *Genoa* in *Italy*, by the benefite of these two most famous portes hee might easily ariue to the Monarchy of the vvhole VVorld. But howbeit, the King of *Spaine* bee not Lord thereof, nor yet hath so great a part therein, that hee can assuredly say, that it wholly restes at his commaund, yet by fauouring and vpholding the greatnesse of the Prince *Doria*, he maketh him the Instrument to serue his turne, and by his meanes obtayneth what hee vvill or can in reason desire of that Nation, which is also deeply interessed with his Catholique Maiesty, in regard that the king of *Spaine*, hath taken vp great summes of Money vppon interest of the *Genois*, and will take heed how they break with him, least they bee hindered of their gaines, together with theyr principall: And it is thought, that his Maiesty is behinde hand with them, for more then a Million and a halfe of Gold. Neither with this Nation could the publique good preuaile so much, but that their priuate benefite, was euer able to sway them more, beeing manifest to all the world, that in this respect, the publike treasury is alwaies poore, and particuler men continually abound in wealth.

Of the religion of *Malta*, the said king taketh a particuler protection, as that in like sort depends wholly vpon his pleasure, & doth readily execute his royall commaundements, seruing his turne oftentimes in keeping the coastes of *Spaine*, and the Kingdomes of *Naples*, and *Sicily*, from the incursions of Pirates, and that without any one peny cost, or charges to the King.

The signory of *Lucca*, hath placed both her selfe, and all that



## Europe.

it hath (fearing the potency of the great Duke) vnder the protection of his Catholicke Maieſty.

In generall, the Spaniſh Nation beareth little loue to the *Venetian* common-wealth, as ſuſpecting it to fauour the *French*, & for the ſtrict friendſhip which it holds with the moſt Chriſtian King, and the moſt renowned ſtate of *England*, of late apparant and profeſſed enemies to his Catholicke Maieſty.

Againe, there is alſo little inclination of loue toward this ſtate, becauſe they thinke, that it maketh profeſſion to ballance the ſtates and forces of the Princes of Chriſtendome; and though they eſteeme well enough of it; yet they loue it not a iot. Notwithſtanding, the *Spaniards* knowe, that in thoſe warres which may happen betwixt the Turkes and this people, they cannot (out of their perticuler intereſts) but ayde and aſſiſt them, and that on the contrary from them, they haue no hope of retributi- on in like occaſion. But withall they aſſuredly beleeuẽ, that the aydes which they ſhall aſſoord it, ſhall be but feeble, and ſlowly ſubmiſtred, in ſuch ſort, that they ſhall not giue it any great reenforcement, but only ſuch as may be ſufficient to ſaue it from ruine, yea ſcarce that.

Finally, for a perfect review of this tedious diſcourſe, I will recite vnto you theſe moſt weighty, ſecret, and laſt inſtructions giuen by *Phillip* the ſecond, King of *Spaine*, to his Sonne *Phillip* the third now raigning: teaching him how to gouerne himſelfe and his kingdomes after the deceaſe of his ſaid Father; brought to light by a Seruant of *Don Chriſtophero di Mora*, called *Rede- rigodſt*. And tranſlated out of *Spaniſh* and *Dutch* into *Engliſh*, that the world may ſee how iudicially this manuſcript of the Kings owne hand agreeth with theſe relations.

**S**On, I haue often troubled my minde, and entered into moſt deepe and ſerious conſiderations, how to leaue a quiet and ſetled eſtate vnto you after my deſceaſe: Howbeit, neyther the long time of my life, nor the opportunity of Princes affected to my ſeruiſe, would aſſoorde me ſufficient aſſiſtaunce in this behalfe: I confeſſe that I haue ſpent more then 594. Millions of Duckets; in liewe whereof I haue inioyed nothing the ſpace of 33. yeeres, but hart-ſorrow, and vexation of Spirit. True it is that



## Spaine.

that I recouered *Portugall*; but as lightly as *France* is escaped from me, so likewise may *Portugall* slide backe. Would to God I had followed the counsell of *Charles* the Emperour, my Lord and Father of famous memory: for then could I much more quietly brook those my sorrowes, and die with a more willing mind, leauing to you the succession of this mortall life.

This, then besides so many stately Kingdomes and Seignories, as a perpetuall testament I leaue behind vnto you, as a mirror and Looking-Glasse, wherein you may see, how to frame your actions, and to carry your selfe in your gouernment after my death.

Alwaies looke well to the charges and alterations of other states and Countries, to the end you make vse, and reape good profit thereby, as occasion shall serue; and withall, haue a cautious and circumspect eye ouer them that bee in Counsell vwith you.

Two meanes you haue whereby to maintaine your *Spanish* Kingdomes; the one is gouernment, the other the Trade of the Indies.

Touching your Gouernment, you must draw vnto you, and relye eyther vpon the Nobility, or the spirituallly, of your Dominions.

If you leane vnto the spirituallly, you must seeke to bridle and curb the other, as I haue done: but if you meane to strengthen your selfe with the Nobility, cut short the liuings and Reuenues of the spirituallly, as much as is possible. For holding them both in equall fauour, they will consume you; and besides, you shall set your Realmes out of quiet, and neuer come to resolution, the balance being ouer-weighed, sometimes by the one, & sometimes by the other.

My Counsell is, that you hold in league with the Prouinces of the *Netherlands*, especially if you meane to helpe your selfe with the Nobility: for they be friends to *Fraunce*, *England*, and the *Germane* Princes. And neyther *Italy*, *Poland*, *Sweden*, nor *Denmarke* can stand you much in steed: for the King of *Denmark* getteth his Reuenues by forraine Nations.

*Sweden* is alwayes at diuision, and is vnfit in regard of scituation.



## Europe.

The *Polacks* be as Maisters ouer their Kings. *Italy*, though it be ritch, it is far distant from these before named; besides that, all the Princes therein are of diuers humors and dispositions.

But on the other side, the *Netherlands* are exceeding populous, & abound mightily in shipping: the Inhabitants being a people most constant in labours, diligent in searching out things profitable, couragious in their attempes, patient in aduersity.

True it is, that I haue bestowed those Prouinces vpon your sister *Isabella Clara Eugenia*, howbeit in the transport thereof, are comprized a hundred meanes, wherby you may help your selfe: The principall whereof bee, that you are Tutor and ouer-seer of all her children; and that she may alter nothing in the catholike Religion: These two main points being taken away, you are absolutely dispossessed & quit of the *Netherlands*; and other Kings would be so forward to draw them vnto their allegiance, that it may happily redound to your ouerthrow.

Contrariwise, if you meane to rely and cleaue to the clergy & state spirituall, you shall purchase your self many enemies: I haue had the experience thereof: But hold all correspondency vwith the Popes: Giue them much: be friendly alwaies to them: Entertaine such Cardinales as be most in credit with them: Make your selfe Maister of the Conclaue. Make much of the *German* Princes Bishops, and vse to bestowe no more pension on them by the hand of the Emperour, but deale so as they may acknowledge your self for the giuer; surely they will serue you the more willingly, and receiue your gifts with greater gladnesse.

As for them that be of baser degree and quality, let them not come neere you, and so shall you seeme to giue your Nobility & commons the better countenance. For certainly I must needs say, their pride is great, they are mighty in substance, whatsoever they desire must be done, they will bee chargable vnto you, and in the end will seeke to rule your Scepter. Wherefore make your party good, by the meanes of such as are descended of noble parentage, & great families, and promote them now & then to some spirituall liuings. The common sort is not so seruiceable; for they will procure you such vnspcakable hatred, as that thereby you might be forced to consume your treasure: & therefore repose your trust in none of them, vnlesse they be of great quality.

Aban-



## Portugall.

Abandon and shake off your English spies.

Cleare your selfe of the *French* charges.

Vse the seruice of some part of the *Netherlandish* Nobility, so that you may ioyne and knit them vnto your, best and most trusty subiects. Now as concerning the trauaile and Nauigation to the East and West Indies, therein dooth consist all the power and might of the Kingdome of *Spain*, as likewise the straying and bridling of the *Italians*.

*France & England* cannot be debarred from meddling with the aforesaid trade & nauigation, their powers be great, their seamen be many, their seas be too large, their Merchants too rich, their Captaines and Souldiers too greedy of Money, and their Subiects too trusty.

I haue for your sake, in the transport of the Low-Countries, put downe a prouiso; altogether to restraine the *Netherlanders* from dealing in the aforesaid trade: but I feare that time and men will proue changeable: wherfore you must do two things.

1. Alter often your Gouverors in the west Indies: 2. Those which you draw from thence, you shall put in office here at home, and make the of the counsell of *India* in *Spain*. So shall you neuer in my opinion be deceiued, but both parties will discouer your profit, and seeke their owne honour.

If you perceiue the English-men prepare to bereaue you of these commodities, as being strong both in shipping and Mariners (for the *French* I make small account) see that you strengthē your selfe with the *Netherlands*, notwithstanding that a great part of them be hereticks and would so continue, with condition that they shall haue full liberty to vtter all theyr commodities in *Spain* and *Italy*, paying theyr royall Incomes and customs, and all duties belonging vnto you: and then also you may graunt vnto them passage to trauaile and trade vnto your East and West Indies, prouided that they put in good security in *Spain*, and take vpon them a corporall oath, that vpon theyr returne from the Indies, they shall arriue in some part of *Spain*, and there to vnlode, vpon payne of death, if they shall bee found to doe otherwise. Mine opinion is, that they vwill neuer refuse to accept of this easie condition, and to accomplish the same: and by these meanes shall the *Indian* and *Spanish* be



## Europe.

be lincked and knit to the *Netherlandish* Trade: and *England* and *France* must then liue vpon their owne purses.

My Sonne, I could relate vnto you more secrets for the conquests of other kingdomes and Countries, but al such aduertisements with the discourses thereupon deliuered vnto me, and by me amended, you shall find in my Cabinet. Cause *Christofer de Mora* immediatly to deliuer the Key vnto you, least these so weighty secrets co me into the hands of some other.

Vpon the seauenteenth of September I caused the transcript or last scribled Cobby of these remembrances beeing in diuers places interlined, amended, and altered, to be cast into the fire: but I feare somewhat thereof might vnderhand be kept and reserved: wherefore set your eares to harken thereafter.

I haue this present day added thus much. If you can deale with *Antonio Peres*, to draw him into *Italy*, or at least to procure him to doe you seruice in some other Countries, but into *Spaine* or the *Netherlands* neuer let him come.

Touching your marriage, the particuler writings thereof remaine vnder the custody of the Secretary.

Moreouer, remember that you often read ouer this signed Bil and these writings, hereabout was neuer any body in Counsell with me, but mine owne hand.

Haue alwaies an especiall care ouer your Counsellors, and ouer those that are neere vnto you.

The deciphering of Letters you must your selfe take vpon you.

Do not offend nor anger your Secretary: deliuer them alwaies worke of small or great importance. Make prooffe of them rather by your enemies, then by your friends. And although you be inforced to discouer your secrets to your dearest fauorits, yet locke the chiefest alwaies within your owne breast.

Thus much gentle Reader, as it is thought hath beene saued out of those notes and writings which were seene to be burned, and this I thought good to publish for the common benefit.

( \* \* )

Portugall



# Europe.

## Portugall.



His Kingdome ( which is not aboue 320. Miles long, and sixty broad, not very populous, and but meanelly rich in essentiall Reuenues) yet by reason of the commodious scituation for Nauigation and acquisition, it hath equalized these wants (with surplussage) with the most famous Prouinces of the world: yea, this good fortune hath so elated their mindes, that they haue vndertaken diuers famous expeditions into *Barbary*, *Aethiopia*, *India*, and *Brasile*. VVherein within these hundreded yeares they haue taken and fortified the principall places and harbours of those Prouinces, challenging vnto themselues the peculiar Traffique of the *Atlanticke* and East Ocean. They haue seized vppon the *Terceraz*, knowing that without touching at those Ilandes no shippe could safely passe into *Aethiopia*, *India*, *Brasile*, or the New-world. Returning from those Countries towards *Spaine* or *Liisbon*, they put in to relecue their wantes and sicke Passengers, and outward they touch to take in fresh water and fetch the wind. In *Affricke* they are Lordes of those places which wee spake of before in the description of *Spaine*: In *Persia* they haue *Ormuz*: In *Cambaia*, *Diu*, *Damain*, & *Bazain*: The hither *India*, *Chaul*, *Goa*, and the fortresses of *Cochin*, *Colan*, the Iland *Manar*, and the Hauen *Columbo* in *Zeilan*. Amongest these *Goa* is the chiefest, as the place where the *Viceroy* keepeth his court. *Ormuz* is fayre for the iurisdiction of the Sea, and the Traffique of the *Persian* and *Cambaian* gulfes. *Cochin* & *Colan* for theyr plenty of Pepper. *Manar* for the Pearle-fishing. *Columbo* for the abundance of Cinnamon. *Damain* and *Bazain*, for fertile prouision. In these quarters they haue some Princes theyr confederats, others their feodaries. The chiefe and wealthiest of Allies, is the King of *Cochin*, sometime tributary to the *Calecute*, but now by the entercourse and Traffique with the *Portugalls*, he is

N  
growne



## Europe.

growne so rich and mighty, that the other Princes doe enuy his prosperity. The King of *Colan* is likewise their confederate.

Their chiefe force consisteth in scituation and strength of places, and in number and goodnesse of theyr shipping. As concerning scituation, this people wisely foreseeing, that in regard of their contemptible numbers, they were not of power to make any famous iourney into the In-land Regions, neyther able to match the *Persians*, the *Guizaris*, the Princes of *Decan*, the king of *Narsinga*, and other barbarous Potentates in *Campaia*, turned all theyr cogitations to immure themselues in such defensive places, that therein with small forces they might euer haue hope to diuert great attemptes, and make themselues Lordes and commaunders of the Sea and Navigation: which when they had done, they entertained and maintained so strong a navy, that no Prince in those parts was able to wrong them, yea, they furnished those vessels so thoroughly, that one single ship would not refuse to cope with three or foure of the *Barbarians*. With this *Armada* of one and twenty shippes, *Francis Almeida* defeated the *Mamelucks* neere the Towne of *Diu*. *Alfonse Albuquerque* with thirty great ships wonne *Calecutte*: with one and twenty hee tooke *Goa*, and regained it with foure and thirty: with three and twenty he tooke *Malaca*, with sixe and twenty he entred the red-Sea; and with two and twenty recouered *Ormus*. In processe of time, as their mightinesse increased, *Lopes Suarezius* made a iourney into the Red-sea with seauen and thirty *Galleons*. *Lopes Sequera* with twenty foure shippes, but with greater number of Souldiers then euer before, laide siedge to *Gudda* in the Redde-Sea: *Henry Menesius* wasted *Patan* with fifty Ships. *Lopes Vazius Sampaius* left in the *Arsenal* 136. vessels of warre, whereof the greatest part were excellent well furnished: *Nouis Acunia* vnderooke a iourney to *Diu* with 3. hundred ships, wherein were three thousand *Portugalles*, and five thousand *Indians*, besides a great number of his *Guarde* and *Seruants*, which ordinarily follow the *Visceroyes* in those countries.

Besides his confederates and feodaries, hee is confined vwith most mighty Princes, his enemies: as the *Persian*, who challengeth *Ormus* as holden of him in vassalage: the King of *Cambaia*, who



## Portugall.

who maketh title to *Diu*, and other places, which were once vnder his iurisdiction: *Nizzamaluc* and *Idaleam* (for so the *Portugals* call the the two Princes of *Decan*) and the Kings of *Calecut* and *Narsinga*.

As for the Kings of *Persia* and *Narsinga*, they neuer waged war against the *Portugals*, because they haue alwaies had to doe with more dangerous enemies: other Princes though they haue enterprized to their vttermost to regaine *Diu*, *Chial*, *Gon*, and other places, and haue left no meanes vnattempted to bring their desseignes to effect, yet theyr ability could not worke any prosperous successe to their laborious indeuours, by reason of scituation so commodious for the transportation and receite of continuall succours from the Sea. And though they haue vnder-taken the like actions in the deep of winter, hoping by tempests and other casualties to barre the *Portugalles* from their Sea-succours, yet they neuer preuailed, because the Shippes and courages of the *Portugals*, the one resolute to endure the sledge, and by patienceto ouercome, the other determining (hap what may) neuer to forsake their distressed country-men, haue set all vpon hazzard, and exposed their fortunes to the mercy of winde and waues in those tempestious seasons. Their woorst, greatest, and fiercest enemy is the Turke (who beeing backed with the like aduantage of scituation, which the City of *Aden* affordeth him) and sometime pricked on by his owne proper enuy, emulation, and ambition, sometime egged on by the perswasion of the K. of *Cambain*, hath often indeuoured to dispoyle them of the Souerignety of the Red-sea, and finally to driue them out of the *East India*. The greatest navy that euer he sent against them was to recouer *Diu*, consisting of 64. ships, but by thē defeated. Afterwards he sent a navy of greater ships, to the conquest of *Ormuz*, & that likewise was almost wholly beaten, brused, and drowned.

In the further Indies they hold nothing but *Malaca*, and the *Moluccas*. In times past *Malaca* was far greater then now it is: for it lay scattered three Miles alongst the Sea-coast, but the *Portugals*, that they might the better defend it, haue brought it into a round forme, contayning not aboue a Mile in compasse. Heere the King hath two puissant enemies, *Ior* and *Achere*, the one mighty at Land, and the other far mighty at Sea, by



## Europe.

whom the Towne, not without great daunger hath more then once beene besiedged, but by the ayde sent from *India* alwayes releued, with great slaughter of the enemy. At length *Paul Lima* defeated King *Ior*, and rased the Castle built by him neere *Malaca*, wherein besides other spoyles hee found 900. brazen cast peeces. This Territory is subiect to great danger, by reason of the puissance of this King of *Achem*, bending all his cogitations to the rooting and finall destruction of the *Portugals* out of this Prouince, & therefore the King of *Spaine* of late yeeres sent *Matthias Alburquerque* with a great power into *India*, with authority to secure the Territory of *Malaca*, and to fight with the King of *Achem*.

To secure their trade of Spice and Nutmegs in the *Moluccas* and *Banda*, they built a Castle in the Iland *Ternate*, of late yeers (for want of succours) deliuered vp to the *Mahumetants*; from whence the *Portugals* reculed into the Iland of *Tidore*, there establishing their trade and factory.

## The Romaine Empire.



His Empire in its greatest glory (viz:) in the dayes of *Traian*, stretched from the Irish Ocean; and beyond, from the *Atlantique* Ocean, to the *Persian* Gulfe, and from *Catnes* in *Scotland* to the Riuer *Albis*, and beyond the *Danny*. It began first to decline by the ciuill warres of *Galba*, *Otho*, and *Vitellius*. For in those times the Legions of *Britany* were transported into the Continent; *Holland* and the bordering Countries reuolted, and immediately after the *Sarrazens* finding the frontires of the Empire without Garrisons, passed ouer *Danubius*. The *Alani* wonne the Streights of the *Caspian* Hilles: the *Persians* indeuoured to get them a name and reputation; The *Gothes* wandred throughout *Moestia* and *Macedonia*; The *French-men* entred *Gallia*. But *Constantine* the Emperour restored it to the former glory, made an end of ciuill Warre, and tamed



## The Romaine Empire.

tamed the barbarous and cruell Nations ; and had he not committed two great faultes, the Romain Empire might long haue flourished. The first was, the translating of the Imperiall seat, from *Rome* to *Constantinople*; which action weakned the west, & ouerthrew the Empire. For it is more cleerer then the day, that as plants remooued out of their naturall soyle, and transported into Regions contrary in temperature and ayre, retayn small vigour of theyr naturall vertue : So humane actions, but especially Citties and Kingdomes, do loose their glory and splendour by these great alterations . And for this cause the *Romaine* Senate would neuer consent, that the people should leaue *Rome* and dwell at *Veij*, a Cittie far more pleasant and more commodious then *Rome*, especiall after the sacking therof by the *Frenchmen*.

The seate of *Constantinople* is so pleasant, so commodious, and so fertile , that it is hard to iudge whether humane wisdom or Nature hath shewed most industry in the scituation thereof. There is no Cittie vppon the face of the Earth better serued by Land and by Sea : on one side lyeth most beautifull Medowes ; on the other side the pleasant Vallies ; heere rise the fruitfull Hillocks, there floweth and refloweth the plentifull Sea, yeelding all sorts of needfull and delicate prouision to the Inhabitants thereof. He that did see it, would say, that here stroue *Bacchus* with *Ceres*, *Pomana* with *Flora*, magnificence, with plenty, who should bee most bountifull to this Cittie . After the Sea hath made many gallant Bayes and safe Roades (whereof *Bosphorus* onely in the space of foue and twenty Miles yeeldeth thirtie) it runneth by the Cittie and Countrey, with so quiet & gentle a streame , that the great Ships bring Corne from *Siria* and *Agypt*, and the riches of *Trapezond* from *Capha* doe seldome miscary. Here is euermore Haruest, which now and then faileth in *Thrace* and *Asia*. Here Sholes of Fish frisking and playing hard vnder the Walls of the Cittie, swimme in such wonderfull abundance , that hee which hath not seene it, will hardly beleeue it : but he may easily be perswaded heereof, that considereth howe in the time of *Winter* the Fish flying the colde places, descend by *Pontus Euxinus*, euen in the view of *Constantinople*, towards *Perpontys* : then, shunning the heate of Summer,



## Europe.

returne againe by the same way, from whence they departed in the beginning of the Spring. At these two seasons of the yeere, the Inhabitants as well for their profit as delight, store themselves with great quantities thereof. At this day on the North-east part of the Citty, on the other side of the water is the town of *Pera*; on the North part is the *Arsenall*, where the Gallies are built, and lye at roade, on the South side are the Houses wherein the Ordinance, Artillerie, and Munition are stovved. To speake in a word, there is no place fitter seated for plenty of all thinges, for weakening mens valours, and for corrupting of vertue, then this great and stately Citty of *Constantinople*: prooued by the sloth and delicacy of the greatest number of the Greeke Emperours, and theyr armies. For if the pleasure of *Tarent*, and the soyle of the *Sibarites* were inchantmentes sufficient to make men effeminate, and quite alter the nature of the Inhabitants: if the delights of *Capua* could soften and quench the fierce courages of *Hanniball* and his Souldiers: if *Plato* deemed the *Cyrenians* incapable of discipline, by reason of theyr long prosperity, what may we thinke of *Constantinople*? For scituation proud, for buildings sumptuous, especially of their temples, and for beautiful and commodious hauens pleasant and delightful about any other Citty throughout the whole VVorld? To conclude, when nothing can be more dangerous to a state, then innouations, what could bee more hurtfull (I may say desperate) to the *Romaine* Empire then that great, suddaine, and vnlooked for mutation? That good and well meaning Emperour, in this did neither more nor lesse, then as a man endeouering to adde a greater grace to his body, should place his face on his knees, and his hart on his heeles.

The second fault of *Constantine*, was the diuision of the Empire to his children, Anno. Dom. 341. By this diuision, of one Empire he made three, and withall, a memorable diminution of his authority and forces. For when his Sons fell to ciuill dissention, they consumed one another so cruelly, that the Empire resembled a bloudlesse, yea, a liuelesse body. And though sometime, vnder some one Prince, it stood on foote againe, yet it remained alwayes subiect to diuision, and parted into two Empires, the East and the VVest, vntill the comming of *Odoacer*,  
King



## The Romaine Empire.

King of the *Herules* and *Turings*, into *Italy*, with a mighty host: by which inuasion, *Augustulus* suffered such irrecoverable losses, that in extreame despaire he was forced to cast himselfe into the protection of the East Empire. This happened in the yeare of our Lord, 476. And about this time the *Huns* passed *Danubius*: *Alaricus* King of the *Gothes* tooke *Rome*: the *Vandals*, first spoiled *Andoluzia*, afterwardes, *Affricke*: the *Alans* won *Portugall*: the *Gothes* conquered the greater part of *Spaine*: the *Saxons* *Britany*: the *Burgundians*, *Prouince*. Anno. 556. *Iustinian* restored it somewhat to a better state, driving the *Vandals* out of *Affricke*, and the *Gothes* out of *Italy*, by his Captaines; but this faire weather lasted not long. For in the yeere 713. the armes and Heresies of the *Mahometans* began to vex the East Empire, and shortly after the *Sarazens* wasted *Syria*, *Egipt*, the *Archipelago*, *Affricke*, *Sicill*, and *Spaine*. In the yeare 735. they vanquished *Narbon*, *Auignon*, *Tolouse*, *Furdenx*, and the bordering regions. Thus by little and little beganne the Westerne Empire to drop, and as it was to draw towards his last age. As for the Easterne, it stood so weake and tottering, that with all the force it hadde, it was scarce able to defend *Constantinople* against the Armes of the *Sarazens*, much lesse to minister ayde to the Westerne Prouinces. But in the yeare of our Lord 800. *Charles* the great, King of *France*, obtayned the title of the Westerne Empire, and in some sort mitigated the fury of the barbarous people, which *Odo* Bishop of *Vienna* remembreth in these wordes; Vppon the Holy feast day of the Natiuity of our Lord, as soone as the mighty King *Charles* hadde made an end of his prayers, *Leo* the Pope set the Imperiall Crowne vppon his head, vwhereat all the people with one voyce cryed: *Carolo Augusto, à Deo coronato, magno, pacifico, Imperatori Romanorum, vita & victoria.*

The Westerne Empire was deuided from the Easterne in this manner: that *Naples* and *Sipont* Eastward, with *Sicill*, should belong to the Greek Empire; *Bononia* should remaine to the *Lumbards*; the *Venetians* were Neuters: the Popedome, free; the rest *Charles* should possesse. *Blondus* saith, that the Empresse *Iren* gaue the first councill to this diuision, which afterwardes was confirmed by *Nicephorus*.

Thus



## Europe.

Thus the beginning of this diuision began at the translation of the Imperiall seate from *Rome* to *Constantinople*, increased by renting it into many principalities, and tooke perfection at the Coronation of *Charles*. For before him there was one forme of Government, and the Lawes, Magistracies, and Ordinances which were enacted for the welfare of one Empire, tended to the good and honour of both Empires, as to the members of one body; and if one Emperour dyed without issue, the whole Empire remayned to the suruiuor. But when *Charles* the great was chosen Emperour of the West, there was no more regard taken of the East Empire, neyther the Emperor of the East, had to doe with the West, nor the West with the East. The Empire of the West, continued in this line about 100. yeares, and fayled in *Arnolph*, the last of that House. In the yeare 1453. *Mahomet* Prince of the *Turkes*, tooke *Constantinople*, and vtterly extinguished the succession of the Easterne Empire.

In the yeere of Christ 1002. all claime of inheritance reiected, the creation of the Emperour was graunted to the free election of seauen Princes, tearmed Electors. The reason why the Empire became electiue, which had so long continued hereditarie in the House of *Charles*, was because *Otho* the third, left no issue Male. After whom the Western Empire was maruellously curtaild and diminished: for nothing was left but *Germany*, and a part of *Italy*. The Pope held *Romagnia*; the *Venetians* liued free, possessing great Dominions ioyned to their state: the *Normans* (taking *Naples* and *Sicill* from the *Greekes*) helde them in fee of the Church, first vnder *Clement* the Antipope, then vnder *Nicholas* the second and his successors, who for their priuate gaine ratified the former grant of *Clement* Antipope.

In *Tuscane* and *Lombardy*, partly by the quarrels betweene *Henric* the fourth, *Henric* the fift, *Frederike* the first, and *Frederike* the second, with the *Romaine* Bishops: partly by reason of the valour of the inhabitants, the Emperor reaped more labour then honour, more losse then profit. And therefore *Rodolphus* terrified with the misfortunes and crosses of his predecessours, had no great minde to trauell into *Italy*, but sold them their liberty for a small matter. They of *Luques* payde tenne thousand Crownes, the *Florentines*, but sixe thousand. And so euery state  
by



## Germany.

by little and little forsaking the Emperour, no part of *Italy* remained, but the bare title. The Dukes of *Millaine* (and so every other state) vsurped what they could catch, without leaue asking, onely they desired their inuestiture of the Empire. But *Frances*, after the conquest of *Millain*, did little regard this inuestiture, saying, that he was able to keep it, by the same means, that he had got it. The Princes beynde the Mounts also withdrew their obedience; so that at this day the Empire is inclosed in *Germany*: & why the Prouinces of *Germany* are not vnder one gouernment, I will now relate.

Some Prouinces are as it were members of the Empire, yet seperated; for they neither do, nor will acknowledge that they belong to the Empire; as the Kings of *Denmark* and *Sweathland*, the Duke of *Prussia*, the *Swissers*, the *Netherlands*. Others confesse the Emperour for their Soueraigne Prince; but they come not to the diets of the Empire, nor will beare the taxe and tallages of the Empire; as the Dukes of *Sauoy*, *Lorraine*, and the Princes of *Italy*. Other come to the diets, and pay all impositions; those are the Princes and Citties of *Germany*. But the King of *Bohemia* by the grant of *Charles* the fourth is exempted from all contributions. Other places doe not onely pay contribution, but likewise a peculiar tribute to the Emperour: those are the Citties tearmed Imperiall.

Some of the Princes of *Germany* haue to doe both in the diets, and at the election of a newe Emperour; those are the fixe Electors; three Church-men, and three Lay-men, to whom vpon equallity of voyces, the King of *Bohemia* is ioyned; though he com not to the diets, yet hath he his voyce in the election. To speake in a worde, those are properly tearmed the Citties and Princes of the Empire, who haue to doe in the dyets, and as members of one body, participate of good and euill, aduantage or disaduantage, throughout the Empire. These liuing after the manner of a Common-wealth well vnited, haue the Emperour for their head, & for their common safety, who ruleth not absolutely, but by the diets, and cannot call them, without the consent of the greatest number of the Electors. The Ordinances of these diets cannot be frustrated, but by another diet; but of putting the decrees in execution, the Emperour hath full and sole

O

autho-



## Europe.

authority. And therefore as touching preheminance and dignity, hee is cheefe of the Christian Princes, as the Prince vppon whom the Maiefty of the Romaine Empire resteth, and ought to defend the Church of GOD, the Catholique Fayth, and procure the peace and welfare of the whole Christian common wealth.

Now seeing it is manifest that the glory of the westerne Empire consisteth in *Germany*, it is good reason to say somewhat of this most ample and flourishing Prouince. It lyeth betweene *Odera* and *Mosa*; betweene *Vistula* and *Aa*; and betweene the *Germane* and *Balticke* Ocean and the *Alpes*. The forme thereof is foure square, equall in length and breadth, stretching 650. Miles euery way. It aboundeth with Corne, Cattle, and Fish, which experience sheweth. For *Charles* the fifth had vnder his ensignes at *Vienna* 90. thousand footmen, and 35. thousand Horse. *Maximillian* the second at *Lauerin* almost 100. thousand footmen, and 34. M. Horse, and yet no man complained of dearneffe or scarcety. In the war betweene *Charles* the fifth and the Protestants, for certaine monthes, 150. thousand men sustained themselues abundantly in the field. It is rich in Mines of Gold, Siluer, and all sorts of Metall, and therein surpasseth the residue of the Prouinces of Europe. Nature hath also bestowed vppon the vpland Countries many springs and pits of Salt Water, of which hard salt is boyled. Neither is it lesse stored with Merchandize; for the Inhabitants more then any other Nation, do excell in curious worke-manshippe, and mechanicall inuentions: and it is so wateied with nauigable Riuers, that all sortes of Merchandize and Wares are with ease conuayed from one place to another. The greatest of them is *Danow*, next the *Rhene*, which runneth cleane through the Countrey, from the South to the North, as the *Danow* from East to West. *Albis* riseth in *Bohemia*, passeth by *Misnia*, *Saxony*, *Marchia*, and the auncient *Marquisat*. *Odera* springeth in *Morauia*, watereth *Silesia*, the two *Marquisates*, and *Pomeran*. Then followeth *Welara*, *Neccarus*, *Mosa*, *Moselia*, *Isara*, *Cenus*, *Varia*, *Moenus*. This deuideth *Germany* into two partes, the higher and the lower. The high stretcheth from the *Mase* to the *Alpes*: the low from the *Mase* to the Ocean. It is deuided into many Prouinces, the chiefe  
wher



## Germany

wherof (I mean the true members of the Empire) are *Alsatia, Sme-  
nia, Bavaria, Austria, Bohemia, Moravia, Silesia, Lusatia*, the two  
*Marquisates, Saxony, Misnia, Thuringia, Franconia, Hassia, Westpha-  
lia, Cleueland, Magunce, Pomeran*. In these Prouinces, (besides *Bel-  
gia* and *Heluetia*) are esteemed to be tenne Millions of men, and  
eyghty great Citties; Villages innumerable, and those plenti-  
fully stored with all sorts of Mechanicall Occupations. Those  
which are seated neare Riuer, for the most part are builded of  
Stone, the Vpland, part of Stone, and part of Timber. The  
Houses thereof are very fayre, the streetes straight, large, and  
paued with stone, yea more neat and handsome then those of *I-  
taly*.

*Strabo* writeth, that the *Romans* excelled the *Gracians* in clen-  
linesse of their Citties, by reason of their Channels to conuay  
away the soyle, but at this day, the Dutchmen do farre exceede  
the *Romans* herein. The greatest number of them are free, and  
haue had their liberty, some for seruice done to the empire, some  
for Money, some by force, as *Brunswike*, which hath withdrawn  
herselfe from the commaund of their Dukes: *Saxony* and *Den-  
marke* vse their owne lawes. In criminall causes they inflict most  
sharp torments, and vnusuall kinds of death; a signe of the cru-  
elty of their Natures. They were the inuentors of printing, of  
Guns and Clockes, things of notable vse for mankind.

The nature of this clymat is temperate inough, yet somewhat  
of the coldest, tollerable and healthy. No place thereof, vnlesse  
by nature it be vtterly barren, lyeth vnmanured, insomuch, that  
few remainders of that huge VVood *Hercinia*, are to bee seene  
at this day, vnlesse in place where humaine necessity requireth  
theyr growing, or Nature hath made the Earth fitte for no o-  
ther employment, as are the *Blacke-VVood*, the *Ottonique*  
*VVood*, and the *VVodes* of *Bohemia*. And yet doe they  
neyther carry that horrid face of thicknesse, as in olde times,  
neyther are they so vntrauelled, or vnhabitable, but exce-  
ding full of Habitation, Hamlets, Villages, and Monaste-  
ries.

The people thereof is deuided into foure sorts; husbandmen  
(they beare no office) Cittizens, Noblemen, and Prelates. The  
last 3. sorts make the assemblies, and states of the Empire. Of



## Empire.

Prelates, the Archbishops Electors haue the chiefeft place. The Archbifhop of *Ments* is Chancelor for the Empire, the Bifhop of *Coloine* is Chancelour of *Italy*, and the Bifhoppe of *Treuers* is Chancelour of *France*. The Archbifhop of *Salzburg* is of greateft iurifdiction and Reuenue. The Bifhop of *Maidburg* writeth himfelfe primate of *Germany*. *Breme* and *Hamburg* had great iurifdictions: next follow aboue forty other Bifhoppes, the great Maifter of the *Dutch* Order, and the *Prior* of the Knights of *Ierufalem*: then feuen *Abbots*, and they likewise are ftates of the Empire. Of feccular Princes the King of *Bohemia* is principall, who is chiefe Tafter: the Duke of *Saxony*, Marshall: the *Marques* of *Brandburg*, high Chamberlain: the Earle *Palatine*, Sewer. Befides thefe places, ther are 30. other Dukes, amongst who, the Archduke of *Austria* holdeth the higheft place: & of thefe dukes the King of *Denmarke* by his tenure of the Dukedome of *Holfatia*, is reckoned to be one. The *Marquifes*, *Lantgraues*, *Earles*, and *Barrons* innumerable.

Some fay  
80. fome  
84.

The free Citties (which in times paff haue beene 96. and are now but 60. gouerning themfelues by their peculiar lawes) are bound no further then to pay two fide parts of whatfoeuer contribution is graunted in the affemblies. The Townes Imperiall (becaufe as we faide before) they pay tribute to the Emperour, anfwere fifteene thousand *Florens*. But the Cittyes haue fufficient Reuenue of their owne, for the moft part amounting aboue the value of the impofed contributions.

It is thought that the Empire receiueth euery way aboue feauen Millions, which is a great matter: yet befides this ordinary, the people not ouerpreffed as in *Italy*, doe pay other great fubfidies to theyr Princes in times of daunger. The Empire is bound (at leaftwife accuftomed) to furnifh the Emperour, when he goeth to *Rome* to be Crowned, with twenty thoufand footmen, and foure thoufand Horfe, and to maintain them for eight months, and therefore it is called *Romanum subsidium*. The Reuenues of the Citties and Lay Princes, haue beene greatly augmented fince the fuppreffing of Popery, and bringing in of new impositions, which taking their beginning from *Italy*, (for euill examples fspread farre) quickly paffed ouer to *France* and *Germany*. In times of neceffity great taxes are layde vppon the vvhole Empire,



## Germany.

Empire, and leuied extraordinarily, and that they may be gathered vwith the greater ease, *Germany* is parted into tenne diuisions or circuits which haue theyr particuler assemblies for the execution of the edictes made in the generall dyets of the Empire.

As concerning the multitude of people, it is thought that the Empire is able to affoorde two hundered thousand Horse and Foot, which the war (before spoken of) may prooue to be true: As likewise the warres of *France* and *Belgia*: for since the yeare of our Lord 1566. the warre hath beene continued in those two Prouinces, for the most part with *Germaine* Souldiers; and yet to this day, great and continuall inrolments are taken aswell of Horsemen and Footmen, through the whole Empire. At one time *Wolfgang* Duke of *Bipont* led into *France*, an Army of twelue thousand Foot-men, and eyght thousand Horse-men in behalfe of the Protestants; and at the same time, the Count *Mansfelde* was leader of fiue thousand Horse-men of the same Nation, in behalfe of the Catholiques. *William* of *Nassaw* had in his army eyght thousand *Germaine* Horse-men, and ten thousand Footmen: The Duke of *Alua* had at the same instant, 3000. VVhat should I speake of the numbers that entered *Flanders* with Duke *Casimere*? Or those that entred *France* vnder the same leader, in the yeare of our Lord 1578? Or to what end should I make mention of that Army, whereof part serued *Henry* the fourth, part the league; But to prooue that this Nation must be very populous, seeing that warres are continually open in some one or other part of *Cristendome*, and no adition vndertaken therein, wherein great numbers of *Germaines* are not waged, and entertained. To speake nothing of the *Netherlands*, who in times past haue resisted the whole power of *France*, with an Army of fourescore thousand Men, or of the *Swissers*, who in their owne defence are thought able to raise an Army of 100. and twenty thousand Souldiers. I will onely put you in mind of that expedition, which they made out of their own territories into *Lumbardy*. in defence of that state against *Francis* the French King, with an army of of fifty thousand footmen.

The best footemen of *Germany* are those of *Tiroll*, *Sweuia*, and *Westphalia*: the best Horse-men those of *Brunswicke*, *Cleueland*,



## Europe.

And *Franconia*. Of Weapons they handle the Sword & the pike, better then the Harquebuze. In the field they are very strong, as well to charge as to beare the Shocke: for Order is of great effect, which is as it were naturall vnto them, with a stately pace and firme standing. They are not accounted off for the defence of fortresses, and for their corpulent bodies I hold them not fit for the assault of a breath. And therefore they are to be accounted rather resolute and constant, then fierce and couragious; for they will neuer come to the seruice, wherein courage and magnanimity is to be shewed. After the victory, they doe kill all whom they meet, without difference of age, sexe or calling: if the warre bee drawne out at length, or if they bee besiedged, they faint with cowardize. In Campe, they can indure no delays, neyther know they how to ouercome by temporizing. If their first attempts fall not out to their mindes, they are at their wittes end and losse courage; if they once beginne to runne, they will neuer turne againe. He that retaines them must bee at extraordinary charges and great trouble, by reason of theyr wiues who consume so much prouisiō, that it is a very hard thing to prouide it, almost vnpossible to preferue; & without this prouision they stand in no stead. Their Horses are rather strong then couragious: and because of ten which go to the war, eight are prest from the plough, they are of small seruice, and when they see their bloud, their heart quaieth. The Spanish Genits in this case waxe more fierce.

In Sea-forces they are not much inferiour to their Land-forces, although they vse no Sea-fights: the Citties of *Hamburg*, *Lubecke*, *Rostoch*, and some others are able to make a hundred shippes; some say one hundred and fifty, equall to the forces of the Kings of *Denmarke* and *Sweathland*. When these strong and inuincible forces are vnited together, they feare no enemy; and in imminent perrill they are sure of the ayde of the Princes of *Italy*, *Sauoy*, and *Lorraine*; for these Prince, neuer forsooke the Empire in necessity. To the *Zigetbar*-war, *Emanuel* Duke of *Sauoy* sent sixe hundred *Argolitrees*. *Cosmo* Duke of *Florence* three thousand footmen paid by that state. *Alphonfus* the second, Duke of *Ferrara*, was there in person with 1500. Horse-men; better Horse-men there were not in the whole Campe. *Williams*  
Duke



## Germany.

Duke of *Mantua* was there also with a gallant troupe of footmen; and *Henry* of *Lorraine* Duke of *Guise* had there three hundred Gentlemen. The common-weales of *Genes* and *Lucca* assisted with him Money. So did certaine English-gentlemen desirous of honour, and to win renowne, present themselves vnto his Maiesty in this seruice, amongst whom were Maister Smith, *R. Greenuill*, *H. Champernon*, *P. Pudshall*, *T. Cotton*, & *W. George* a Captaine of singuler valour and reputation. With the ayde of these Princes, and with those, whom *Pius* the fift sent to his succors, *Maximillian* the second, had in the field one hundred thousand footmen, and five and thirty thousand Horse. Anno. 1566. the states of the Empire granted him an assistance of forty thousand footmen, and eyght thousand Horsemen for eight months, and twenty thousand footmen, and foure thousand Horsemen for three yeares next following:

## Austrich.



AND because the Wersterne Empire hath continued in the most Noble family of the House of *Austrich*, and 7. Emperors haue successiuelly succeeded one another of that line; for the delight of the Reader we will speake somewhat thereof. This House grew famous almost about the same time that the *Ottoman* Prince beganne his Empire, and (as it may seeme) raised vp of God to stand as a wall or Bulwark against these Turks and Infidels.

*Phillip* the first, King of *Spaine*, Arch-duke of *Austrich*, &c. had two Sons, *Charles* the fift, afterward Emperor, and *Ferdinand* the first King of *Romaines*. To *Charles* as to the eldest fell *Belgia* and *Spaine*, with their dependances; *Ferdinand* succeeded him in his Lordshippes of *Germany*, as *Austrich*, *Boheme*, *Tirol*, and other Prouinces, whereunto by the marriage of his Wife *Anne*, *Hungary* was adioyned. This *Ferdinand* left three sons behind him, who although they deuided their inheritance into three partes, yet theyr successours euen to this day, did, and do gouerne them as one intire gouernment; their counsels are



## Europe.

are one; their mindes one, their descigments one, most liuely representing the ancient *Gerion*, where for the common safety, if any part be afflicted, euery member runneth to the succour of the other, as if it were to their peculiar tranquility Their dominion stretcheth so large, and is of such force, that if (by reason of the great tract of Land lying betweene the *Carpathy* Mountaines and *Segonia*) they did not border vpon the Great Turke (who alwaies contrayneth them to stand vpon their gard, & to be at excessiue charges) no Potentate throughout the Christian world, could go beyond the for numbers of people, for wealth and treasure, or for magnificent Citties. Any man may perceiue this to be true, that considereth the distance from *Tergiste* to the Borders of *Lusatia*; from *Tissa*, to *Nobus*; from *Canisia*, to *Constantia* vpon the lake *Podame*. In this progresse are contained *Lusatia*, *Silesia*, *Bohemia*, *Morauia*, *Austria*, & a great part of *Hungarie*, territories large and ample, abounding with people, corne and riches. Then follow *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*; the Countries of *Carinthia*, *Tirol*, *Cilia*, the Princedomes of *Sweuia*, *Assatia*, *Brisgonia*, and *Constantia*. Amongest these Prouinces, *Bohemia* is the largest, stretching one hundred and forty Miles in length, and reported to containe 780. Castles and walled townes, and thirty two thousand villages. *Morauia*, *Silesia*, *Lusatia*, are as large as *Bohemia*, but in strength and numbers of people, far inferiour. These three Prouinces are foure hundered Miles long, and 120. broad: they abound with excellent good Horse-men Foot-men. The Inhabitants of *Lusatia* (where twenty thousand men fit for the warre may bee gathered) are accounted as good & Footmen, as any other: *Syria* rich in mines of Siluer and Iron, is threescore Miles broad, and a 110. long: *Carinthia* a hilly and woody Countrey, it seauenty five miles long, & fifty five broad: *Carniola*, with the bordering Countries vppe to *Tergiste*, is 150. Miles long, and 45. broad. They are plentifulfull of Corne, wine, Flesh, and Wood.

The Countrey of *Tirol* is full of mines of Siluer and Salt-pits, and is eyghteene *German* Miles long and broad. The territories of *Sweuia*, *Alsatia*, and *Rhetia*, do pay little lesse then two Myriades and an halfe of ordinary reuenuie, and so much extraordinary: besides the eyghteene Cantons of *Rhetia*, are vnder the  
same



## Germany.

same iurisdiction. They are so well peopled, that vpon occasion, they are able to leuie 100. thousand Footmen, and 30. thousand Horse. I know no other Prouince in Europe able to say the like. And therefore the Emperour is not so weake a Prince, as those, who are ignorant of the state of Kingdomes doe suppose him, reporting his territoryes to be small, vnprouided of necessaries, poore in Mony, and barren of people. But this is certain, that as he is Lord of a large dominion, fertile, rich, and infinite of people; so let euery man thinke, that by the neighbourhood of the Turke, bordering vpon him from the *Carpathy* Mountains to the *Adriatique* Sea, the forces of a mightier Prince may seeme small and ouerlayde. For what Prince is there bordering vpon so puissant an enemy, but eyther by building of fortresses, or by entertayning of Garrisons, is not almost beggered, I will not say in time of warre, but euen during the securest peace, especially considering that the forces of the Turke are alwayes ready, strong and cheerefull, yea better furnished in the time of peace, then any other Nation in the hottest fury of war? Wherefore it stands him vpon, that is a borderer vpon so powerfull an enemy, either for feare or ieaalousie, to be euer watchfull, and to spare no charges, as dooth the Emperour; retayning in wages continually twenty thousand Sculdiers, keeping watch & ward vpon the borders of *Hungary*. These aske great expences, & yet lesse then these, are not to bee defraied for the strengthening of other places, besides other expences not meete here to be spoken of.

VWherefore, seeing the Turke like an vnsatiabable Tyrant, hath ouerwhelmed so many Noble Prouinces, & so many flourishing Kingdomes, yea and hath brought vnder his yoake those citties which were thought impregnable; and those Bullwarks vvhich the World deemed could neuer haue beene, forced let not vs that lye further off, shut both our eares, and say he is farre from vs, when he stands at our doores, yea close by our sides.

## Saxony.

THE Dominion of the Dukes of *Saxony* containeth the Marquisat of *Mysen*, the Lantgraue-dome of *Turinge*,  
P *Voit-*



## Europe.

*Voitland*, part of neather *Saxony* (almost within two *Dutch* miles of *Maigburgh*) part of the Landes of the Earles of *Mansfielt*, pawned to *Augustus* for some summes of Money, and a percell of *Frankhenland*. The whole country is seated almost in the midst of *Germany*, on all sides very far from the Sea, except *Voitland*, very plaine and Champion, sprinkled here and there with some faire woods and hills, and very full of many pretty Ryuers, but few of them nauigable. The chiefest of them all is the *Elue*, to which all the rest pay the tribute of their waters. All of it together is imagined to be in bignesse about a third part of *England*, or somewhat more. The climate in temperature is not much differing from ours of *England*. It confineth on the south-east with the kingdome of *Bohem*, and is parted with many high hills & great woods: on the South with the bishop of *Bambergs* Countrey, and on the south-west with the Lantgraue of *Hesse*: on the North and north-west with the Counts of *Mansfielt*, the Princes of *Anhalt*, and the Citty of *Maidburgh*, of which this Duke writeth himselfe *Bargraue*, & the Marques of *Brandeburghs* eldest son Arch-bishop, yet is it not vnder neither Iurisdiccions, but freely gouerned within it selfe, on the North-east lyeth the Marquesdome of *Brandeburgh* and the *Lansuities*, who partly belong to the Marques, and partly to the Emperour.

It is in peace at this time (as all *Germany* beside) with all the neighbor Princes: betweene the *Bohemians* and them, there is a great league, but betwixt the Emperour and their Dukes great icalousies vnderhand. The Duke of *Saxony*, the Marqueses of *Brandeburg*, & the Lantgraues of *Hesse*, haue many yeares, they & their ancestry, beene lincked together: both *Lutherans*, howbeit the Lantgraue thought to fauor of *Caluenisme*. The Bishop of *Bamberge* both himselfe and Country are all Catholikes, but of no power to hurt though they were enemies. The Countes of *Mansfielt*, haue a grudge to the House of *Saxony*, because most of their land being pawned to *Augustus*, is as they pretend, wrongfully detained, the debt being long since satisfied: but they are so many and so poore, as they may well haue the vwill, but not the power, to annoy *Saxony*; In Religion Catholiques. The Princes of *Anhalt* (as also the Countes of *Mansfielt*) are homagers to this Duke, but of smal power or riches, In Religion *Caluenists*.



## Germany.

### Caluenists.

For home-defence and strength this Dukedome is so strong by Nature on *Bohem* side, and vppon the frontiers, and within land so wel fortified by art, with reasonable strong cities, towns, and Castles, so well peopled, and all places of strength so vwell looked vnto, and kept in so good order, that it seemeth prouided to withstand the enemy not onely of any one, but of all the neighbour Prouinces. The greatest and chiefest citty within this Dukedome is *Eraford* seated in *Turing*, not subiect to the duke, but a free and Hanstowne: the next vnto it is *Leipsique*, the *Metropolis* of *Misen*; a towne very well seated, both for profit and pleasure, yet of no great strength, though it helde out *Iohn Fredericke* a siege of two or three months with small disadvantage: of building very faire and stately, with faire large streetes, and most of the houses of 7. 8 or 9. stories high, but all of brick, & no stone. There are besides diuers other pretty and reasonable strong townes, but aboue all *Dresda* (seated likewise in *Misen* vpon the *Elre*) besides that, it hath the honor of the dukes court there almost cōtinually resident; it is for delicacy of seat, strong and skilfull fortification, and fairenesse of building, being most of stone, so far surpassing the residue, that it is in all mens iudgements equaled, if not preferred before any other towne, either of *Germany* or *Christendome*, for the bignesse beeing not aboue a mile and an halfe English at the most, in circuit. In this towne is that famous stable able to receiue 128. horses, and an armory so well furnished with excellent artillery, and so well prouided of all furniture, both for Horse and foot (but for Horse extraordinarily) and so delicately kept, and in so good order, both for shew and vse, as it is deseruedly preferred for prouision of Land seruice, before any other in *Christendome* whatsoever. There were in it, in 1595. some eyghty Cannons, and demy-culuerins, and about 170. other Culuerins, and Sacrez, besides great prouision for fire-workes, with all thinges necessary, eyther for sledge or defence. It is generally reported, that therein is Armour sufficient for 100000. men: but indeede it is thought that there is inough to arme 70000. of which may be some ten or 12000. furnitures for horsemen. Besides this armory, all the citties and townes haue armories very well kept and prouided:



## Europe.

neither are the Noble men, Gentlemen, and Countrey-people vnfurnished.

There are in *Saxony* three vniuersities, *Wittenberg*, *Liepsique*, & *Iene*. The first is supposed to containe about 1000. or 1200. Schollers: The other two, some fixe or 700. a peece; but in Colledges, Lectures, Order, proceeding, and all thinges else, infinitely inferiour, eyther to *Cambridge* or *Oxford*: There are all professions in each of them, but *Wittenberg* is esteemed the chiefe Seminary of Diuines; *Iene* of *Ciuitians*, and *Liepsique* of Phyloso-phy.

All the Dukedome, but especially *Misen*, is one of the pleasaunt and fruitfulest parts of all *Germany*, and in truth much exceeding any that I saw, but onely the Dukedome of *Wittenberg*. It hath great store of very good Corne of all sortes, reasonable good, and conuenient store of most sort of Cattle: of Horses they haue plenty, and those strong and tall of stature, but fitter to draw, then to serue, yet very well fitting their manner of seruice being heauily armed, (viz:) with a Petronell, a case of Pistols, a Courtleaxe, and diuers times with a battleaxe; ouer and aboue all which, his Horse must be able to carry, two or foure bottles of *VVine* or *Beere*, in his great heauy Saddle, least in any case his Maister shoulde faint for want of liquor in his iourney. But theyr best races they haue out of the neather *Saxony*, where there bee exceeding store. The Bullockes are but small and nothing good. Of Sheepe they haue in some places indifferent store, especially within these 8. or 10. yeares; of body little and but reasonable good, yet so, as bearing indifferent good wooll; either the sheepe themselues or their fleeces, are bought vp by the *Netherlands*, and imployed in the making of cloath to some preiudice of ours in *England*.

They haue great store of mines of most sorts, as *Siluer*, *Copper*, *Tin*, *Lead*, *Iron*, and (as they say) some *Gold*. The cheefe places of the *Siluer* mines are *Tiberg*, *Auaberg*, *Mariaberg*, and other Townes at the foote of the *Bohemian* Mountaines. In *Voitland* there are also some Hills verie rich in Mineralles, especially one called \_\_\_\_\_ which being much celebrated for hauing some Riuers running out of it, East, *VWest*, North, and South, is exceedingly spoken of for *Siluer* and *Gold* mines, insomuch as in  
a story



## Germany.

a story written of the mines of *Saxony* called *Berg-Chronicon*, it is affirmed, that this Hill yeelded to the Dukes of *Saxony* in eighty yeeres, twenty two Millions of *Florins*, onely for the tenthes. Besides these mines, the Duke hath the Mine of *Mansfielt*, pawned to diuers Merchants of *Norinberge* and *Augusta*, and are thought to be worth yearely 30000. li. sterling. It is held that all his mines of *Saxony* (besides those of *Mansfielt*) yeelde the Duke one yeare with another 700000. florens, which is about 130000. thousand pound sterling.

Other commodities of worth they haue none, but flax, and a kind of thicke course cloth, which by reason of exceeding falsifying and deerensse of ours, groweth euery day into more and more request.

The whole dukedome, but especially *Misen*, is very populous, full of Citties, walled townes, and Country-villages, and all of them very well peopled. It is certainly affirmed, that the duke at 20. daies warning, is able to make an Army of 80000. men very well armed and furnished.

The people generally are reasonable fayre of complexion and flaxen haired, but not well-fauoured, either men or women: In behauiour as ciuill as any part of *Germany* whatsoeuer, especially the women, who taking themselues (as they are indeed) for the fairest and best spoken of all *Dutchland*, are in their apparell and entertainment indifferently gracefull. For their disposition (as indeed almost al the rest of the  *Germans*) is very honest, true, and not ordinarily giuen to any notorious vice but drinking, nor willingly offering any iniury, either to their owne countrymen, or to straungers, but when they are drunke; and then very quarrelsome, and (as it is saide) more valiant, then when they are sober. Wise in a mediocrity, but not of any great sharpnesse or subtilty of wit: Of body strong, and big boned, especially the Countrey-people, but of a kind of lumpish, heavy, and vnactiue strength, fitter for Husbandry, and other toilesome labour, then fighting. In their chiefe Citties some few giue themselues at their great and principall feastes to a little vse of theyr Peece, in shooting at a marke; but otherwise, by reason of their long peace, altogether vntrained to the warres, or any warlike exercises: But the vse of the pot serueth for all other pastimes,



## Europe.

and delights, in vvhich (notwithstanding they haue very small store of wine) they are not inferior to any other part of *Dutchland*.

They haue great store of artizans and handycrafts men of all sorts, but in their seuerall trades nothing so neat and artificiall as the *Netherlands* and *English*, or those of *Norimberg* and *Augusta*. Of Merchants they haue great store, especially in *Leipsiege* and other chiefe Citties, and those for the most part very rich, whereof this reason is yeelded; that though they haue no commodities, saue those before mentioned, nor are neare the Sea, or any great riuers, by which they may haue cheap & comodious importation or exportation of wares, yet *Germany* is so seated in the middest and heart of all Christendome, and *Saxony* so in the bowels of it, as by continuall trafficking with *England*, *France*, and the *Lowe-Countries*, *Italy*, *Poland*, and all the *Easterne Countries*, and by daily conueying all the commodities of each Countrey ouerland to others that want them, they grow very wealthy.

For such as giue themselues to the warres, and haue no other profession of liuing, though generally all the  *Germans*  are mercenary Souldiers, (and so their seruice accordingly) yet I heard of as few in this Prouince, as in any part of *Germany*; whether it were that the wars of *Hungary* imployed them all, or that other Princes growing weary of their seruice, their occupation began to decay.

Touching the Nobility, I can say nothing in perticuler of their numbers, names, titles, dispositions, &c. onely in general, there be Earles & Barrons. Some are meere subiect to the Duke, others are borderers, which are only but homagers, as the princes of *Anhalt*, the Counts of *Mansfelt*, the Counts of *Swarzenberge*, &c. of Gentiles there are good store, to the number as it is supposed of 3. or 4000. at the least, by which meanes the Duke is alwaies in his warres well furnished with horsemen, euery one, one with another, bringing three or four good horses with him to the field.

The nobility and gentility generally through all *Germany*, & particularly in this Dukedome, haue great royalties, and reuenues. The lands, goods, & chiefe houses, are vsually equally de-  
uided



## Germany.

vided amongst all the children, reseruing but little prerogative to the eldest brother. The honors likewise discend equally to the whole familie, al the sons of Dukes being dukes, & al the daughters dutcheffes. Al the sons of Counts, Counts; and the Daughters Countesses, &c. They are exceedingly had (both noblemen and Gentlemen) in extraordinary reuerence and estimation amongst the vulgar people, which both in their gate and seats in publike places, they very religiously maintaine. In time of peace they are but little vsed in counsell or matters of state, being almost all vtterly vnquallified, with either wisdome, learning, or experience; onely contenting themselues with that shadow of honor which their ancestors haue left thē. And if they haue bin famous (as by the rayfing of their Houses to that greatnesse it should seeme they haue beene) they imitate them in nothing, but in only continuing there so long and so holily obserued order of carowfing. In time of warre (which hath beene for many yeares till the late VVarres of *Hungarie*, very small, or rather none) because of theyr greatnesse, both in Reuenues and number of Tennants, theyr seruice hath beene vsually imployed: but now by reason of their long disvse of Martiall matters (which therefore seemed to make some amends, or at least some excuse for their other defects) they are become, if I gesse not amisse, not so fit for their greatnesse, as vnfitte for their want of knowledge, euery way, either in experience or contemplation. And truely I cannot so much as heare almost of any of them, eyther Noble or Gentlemen, that giue themselues to any Noble studies, exercises, or delights, except now and then to the hunting of the wilde Boare; by which, and by accustoming theyr heads to the wearing of their great heavy thrummed Cappes, in stead of a head-peece, they take themselues to bee greatly inabled for the wars.

For the valour and warlike disposition of the people of this Dukedome, I cannot commend them aboue the rest of theyr Country-men; neyther shall I, as I thinke, need to stand much vpon that point, sithence their actions shall plead theyr sufficiency in generall. The great matters which they haue vndertaken, and the little that they haue performed wil produce sufficient testimony. What they did one against another in the time  
of



## Europe.

of *Charles* the fifth, is not much materiall to proue their courage, since without question, Bulrushes against Bulrushes, are very good weapons. But in the same time, and vnder the same Duke and Captaine, they performed very little against the *Spaniards*, though with farre ouer-ballanced numbers, as in diuers places of *Sleyden*, manifestly appeareth: Touching their actions in the Low-Countries in the Prince of *Orange* his time, and in *France* during the ciuill warres, and sithence for the King, (if I mistake it not) it hath alwaies been prayse inough for them, if they haue helped to keepe their enemies from dooing any great matters, though they haue performed nothing themselues. Of latter time they haue rather increased then diminished this opinion in the warres seauen yeares since in *Hungary* (besides many other times of notable disorders amongst them by false alarmes) they fled most shamefully out of the Iland of *Komora*, being charged by a few *Tartars*, who with infinite hazzard and inconuenience swam ouer a part of the *Danuby* to come at them. The Summer after, Count *Charles* of *Manusfelt*, theyr generall, had them in such ielousie, as when the Turkes onely with some 12. or 14000. men came to victuall *Graz*, and past almost close by their tents, and they beeing at least fifty thousand strong, hee durst not set vpon them till they retyred, hauing performed the proiect of their iourney, least the *Germans* (who were farre the greater part of his army) being lustily charged, might giue backe, and so indanger the whole Camp. To omit many other particularities, about this point, too long to dwell vpon in this discourse, they are no more to be commended for their discipline, thē for their valour. For though they be commonly (as I haue heard) very well armed and keepe indifferent good order in theyr march, yet are they for the most part no more watchfull and prouident in their Campe, then if they were safely intrenched in an Alehouse: Quarrellsome exceedingly, and in a maner giuen to drinking continually, and almost euery common Souldier carrying with him his She-baggage, besides his bag and other furniture. For their vnreasonable spoyling and free-booting, the *French* stories make sufficient relation; and it hath alwaies beene hard to discern, whether those Nations that haue cald them to their succour, haue receiued more detryment by them, or by theyr  
pro-



professed enemies. For instance of their spoiling humour, the marquisse of *Turloch* taking in the marquesdom of *Baden*, and being constrained to keep some foure or five thousand men in sundry places in garison, they all offered (though he gaue them very extraordinary pay) to serue without any wages, so they might haue free liberty of pillage. Therefore let it not seeme strange, that I produce these general examples of this Nation, for though in diuers prouinces they are much differing, in complexion, in stature and many other things, yet for war, especially their vices in war, they are in a maner all of the same aire.

They haue greatly affected the English Nation, but of late times, they are not a little distated, vpon pretence of iniuries offered them about prizes, Sea-matters, and suppressing their priuiledges of the *Stilhard*; wherein though they themselues (as being Inland people, and trading litle by Sea,) are nothing interested; yet their neighbors of *Hamborough*, *Lubeck*, & diuers other Haunse-townes, making all these matters far greater & worse then indeed they are, haue spread euen into their minds the contagion of theyr owne grudge.

The Councell of *Saxony* are at this time fewe, and of those, scarce any that were Councillers in the time of *Christiannes*. Amongst them, there are some that are of the Nobility, Councillors rather in name then effect. For in that they liue in their contries, they are sildome present at any consultations, & meddle little in the ordinary gouernment of the state. The rest, after the manner of *Germany* are most Ciuillians. The whole gouernment of the affayres (as also the Court) is very priuate. Other particulars I cannot specific, neither in truth (if a man consider their outward portlinesse) though otherwise I doubt not but wise enough, do they merite the setting down of any. For being (as all Germans are) plaine and homely in their behaviour and entertainment, they are both in their retinue, apparel, and all things else very suteable; so that not only in this Court, but in the courts of diuers great Princes of *Germany*, they goe vsually apparelled in blacke leather, or linnen died blacke, the chiefest hauing only an addition, for ornament sake, of the princes picture in gold, or a chaine of one or two boughts, wherby

Q

they



they seem such lethern and linnen Councillors, as if they were in England, all men would take them for honest factors vnto merchants, or else some vnder clearke of an office, rather then such great and chiefe councellors to so grear Princes & estates. But as it should be great folly for a man to iudge the pretiousnesse of a Jewell by the case wherein it is kept, and much greater to esteeme it by the couer of the case ; euen so by the same reason, it were an equal indiscretion, to estimate a mans worth, either by their body or apparell, the one being but an earthen case of the heauenly mind, the other but the outward couer of that worthlesse boxe . So on the other side, it is an vndeniable certainty, that not only the common people and strangers, but euen wise men are moued and stirred vp with outward shews, and their minds according to those exterior matters, prepared to receiue a deepe impression either of like or dislike, fauour or disfauour, of reuerence, or carelesse retchlesnesse, and debased dispositions.

The reuenues of this Dukedom are, as most men affirme, very great, and without comparison the greatest of any Germain prince whatsoeuer. The means wherby it ariseth to that greatness are diuers ; first, the great quantity of siluer mines & such like, whose profit notwithstanding is very vncertaine, according to the goodnesse or badnesse of the veynes : the great impositions vpon all sorts of merchandize, and the assize vpon beere, which only in the citty of *Liepsiege*, being a little towne of two parishes, amounteth yearely to aboue 20000. pound sterling. The tenths of all sorts of increase, as Corne, wine, &c. The salt houses at *Hal*, and some other places, which belong all to the Duke ; besides the lands of the dukedome being very great, & the Taxes and subsidies assessed at their Parliaments or Dyetts, with diuers other casualties, which fall not within my knowledge. But aboue all, the greatest is an imposition which hath long time bin layd vpon the people towards the maintenance of the warres against the Turke ; which notwithstanding, they haue bin suspended for a long space lately, yet vnder colour of being sufficiently prouided and furnished against future necessities, they haue beene continued, and the treasure conuerted  
to



to the princes priuate vse, arising in all this time to that quantity, that if it had been reserued to the pretended vse, the wars might be continually very royally maintained (I speak as much as is required on the behalfe of that dukedom) and the people freed these many yeares from the imposition; which notwithstanding is not onely still continued, but since the last wars increased. What the generall sum of all the reuenues arise vnto, I haue nothing certaine, neither indeed is it certaine in it selfe, a great part thereof as aforesaid, consisting vpon casualties, as the mines and tenthes, &c. but for mine owne particular conceit, being not altogether vnconfirmed by other mens opinions, I cannot imagine how that it can arise to lesse then foure hundred thousand pound sterling yearly at the least.

Thus haue I bricfly runne ouer some few particulars of the great and noble dukdome of *Saxony*, worthy a much more ample discourse, and a far more worthier and better enformed discourse; being (all things considered) not only the greatest and mightiest prince-dome vnder the Empyre, but euen greater and mightier (I meane as it stood vnited in the time of *Christianus*) then the Empyre it selfe. For though the Emperor by his sacred imperiall seat be his liege-lord, and in greatnesse of dominion far superiour, yet was he in reuenue, in great loue of his people (though euen *Christianus* excelled not in that) in warlike prouision, and in German leagues and confederacies far inferior. Of the princes vnder the Empire, the *Palatine* elector is in place before him, as being the chiefe Elector temporall, and first Prince of the Empyre, but in power and riches nothing comparable. The *Marquesse* of *Brandenburg* possesseth a much greater circuit of Countrey, and hath more nobility & people; yet is a great deal of it very barren, his people for the most part poore, and himselfe though of great reuenue, yet farre short of that of *Saxony*. The duke of *Brnswick* hath a large dominion, well peopled, well furnished, and himselfe of a great reuenue; but both in place much inferior (being no elector) and ill beloued of his subiects, being as of body the strongest, so also of mind the vilest natured people of all Germany. In other things likewise he is inferior to the Du. of *Saxony*, a great part of his country being barren, and his subiects poore.



The Duke of *Bauaria* hath a large, rich, and goodly Countrey, lying in great length on both sides the *Danuby*, a great reueneue, & his subiects in good estate: but (as being almost the only catholike great Prince of the temporalty) of no great party, & vnfurnished of warlike prouision, but much more of treasure, being exceedingly behind hand, principally through the abuse of his Iesuites, by whom being wholly gouerned, he hath spent, and daily doth, infinitely, in building them Churches, altars, and colledges, & indowing them with large reueneues.

The Duke of *Wittenberge*, as in dignity he is inferiour to all these, so doth he (if I be not deceiued) approach nearest in most particulars of greatnesse to the Duke of *Saxony*: hauing a countrey, in circuit but small, being not much bigger by gesse then *Yorkshire*, but very full of neat townes and rich villages, very well peopled, and they generally very rich: The land is not so fruitfull as in other places, but far excelling the best in *Englad*, that euer came vnder my view; abounding exceedingly (especially about *Stutgard*) with wine, and the countrey so pleasantly diuersified, as that the hills (whereof it is full) and riuer sides being only employed to vines, the plaine is euery where full of corne of all sorts, of excellent medow and pasture, with sufficient store of wood. The Duke himselfe is wel loued of his people, very rich in treasure and yearly reueneue, so that setting the mines aside, he is rhought to be equall, if not superiour to the Du. of *Saxony*. But for prouision of warre (excepting powder, whereof there is some store) very meanly furnished, & for many respects not loued of his neighbor Princes.

The rest of the Princes of *Germany*, as the Du. of *Michelburg*, the Lantgraue of *Hesse*, the Marquesse of *Baden*, the Marquesse of *Ansbach*, or any other whatsoever, beeing in all respects much inferiour to these already named, need not to be brought into competition with the dukedome of *Saxony*, which makes the case the more lamentable, that so mighty a Princedome hauing beene many yeares wholly vnited in *Maurice*, *Augustus* and *Christianus*, should now by the ill ordred custome of *Germany*, be distracted and diuided into three parts, among three young Princes, and likely in time to be more disynited by subdiuiding it againe to their issues.



## Geneua.

**G**eneua, is an imperiall city in *Sauoy*, scituated at the south end of the lake *Lomanus*, hard by the lake: It is in circuit about two English miles, reasonable strong by nature and art, aswell for that it is seated on a hill, which on the west is not easily accessible, as also for that it is indifferently well fortified with ravelings, bulwarks and platformes, besides a deep ditch: The east and west parts therof standing continually full of water: The south part remaining dry continually, and is well defended with Casemats, the better to scoure the curtain: it is so much the stronger, for that it standeth almost in an Island, hauing the lake aforesaid, on the North, the riuer of *Rhosne* vpon the west, and the riuer of *Arba* vpon the south, being from the towne halfe a mile, and by reason of the swiftnesse of the current, and great moueable stones in the bottom, which are violently carried down the riuer, it is not passable, but with great danger.

The riuer *Rhosne* diuideth the towne into two parts, the one is called the high towne, and the other *S. Gervais*. Betweene, the riuer (in passing) diuideth it selfe into two branches, making a little Island, wherin are some few houses, and 7. or eyght milles to grinde corne. The weakest part of the towne is vpon the east side, and out of the west by *S. Gervais* church; and for that it might haue bin surprised frō the lake, *Monsier la Noue* caused a new fort to be made in the mouth of the lake, by reason whereof, that part is most secure. The towne is well peopled, especially with women; insomuch as they commonly say, that there are three women for one man; yeelding this reason, that the wars haue consumed their men. They reckon som sixteen thousand of all sorts. The territories are small, being no way aboue 2. lea. and a halfe; yet by reason the soyle is fruitful, being well manured, it bringeth graine of all sorts, and great store of wine. There is likewise plenty of pasture and feeding grounds; by meanes wherof, the inhabitants are very wel provided of all sorts of good flesh at a reasonable rate: no want of good butter and cheese, & for most part of wild-foule, as Partridge, Quaille, Pheasant and Mallard, in great abundance.



There are all manner of good fruites, and especially excellent pere-maines: besides the riuer & the lake afford diuers sorts of fresh fish, as pike, roch, carp, tench &c. and aboue al, the best & biggest carpes of Europe. The commodities of the Dukes country and of the *Bernes* with x. or xii. miles next adioyning are brought to this towne, by reason the peasant can get no mony in any place, which maketh the market to be wel serued. The towne standeth very wel for trade of marchandize, and if it might haue peace, it would grow rich in short time, for the ordinary passage to transport commodities out of *Germany* to *France*, especially to *Lions*, and so back againe into *Switzerland*, and *Germany*, is by this towne: beside all *Sauoy* in a maner, and a good part of the countrey of the *Bernes* resort hither to buy their armor, apparrell and other necessaries, the inhabitantes being for the most part mechanicall persons, making excellent good Peeces, as Muskets Caleeuers &c. they likewise worke Satten, Veluet, Taffata, and some quantity of cloath, though not very fine nor durable. There are many good merchants, especially *Italians*, who haue great dealing; some others are thought to be worth 20000. crowns, and in generall the towne is reasouable rich notwithstanding their warres.

The ordinary reuenue of the towne is some 60000. crowns which ariseth of the gables of marchandize, flesh, demaine & rithes: and if there might be peace, it would amount to twice or thrice so much.

There is reasonable prouision against a siege, the towne being able to make some 2000. men, and 100. horse, and furnish them with all necessaries, and hauing the lake open they want no prouision of corne, or any victuals. In the Arsnal there is armor for some 2000. men with Muskets, Pikes, Calecuers, &c. some 12. or 14. peeeces of ordinance, wherof there are about 8. or 9. Cannons, and Culuerings: plenty of small shot, Bullets, and fire-workes, besides some 60. peeeces in the bulwarkes. There was in former times prouision of corne for 6. moneths, but of late yeares they haue not bin so prouident. The people generally are maruelous resolute to defend their towne, especially against the duke of *Sauoy*, whom they hate exceedingly,  
not



not onely in respect of the difference of religion, but in matter of state: for the D. counteth them rebels & pretendeth a title to their town, alledging that til the yeare 1535. they were vnder the rule of their Bishop, who was Lord both in temporall and spirituall matters, & the Bish. acknowledged him for his chiefe Lord, and did him homage, till the yeare 30. at which time, and before, the money which was coyned in *Geneua*, was stamped with the Dukes name and figure vpon it. Besides, till the time aforesaid the D. of *Sauoy* might pardon offenders that were condemned: and further there was no sentence of lawe executed, but the dukes office was made acquainted therewith, in whose power it was to disanull, as he liked best. Likewise in the year 1529. when as those of *Geneua* had leagued theselues with *friburge*, the Duke disliking thereof, because it was done without his priuity, caused the league to be broken, alledging that the towne of *Geneua* could not conclude a matter of such importance, without his allowance and approbation. Besides al these reasons before remembred, this also is alledged as most materiall, that Duke *Charles* comming to *Geneua* with the dutches *Beatrice* his wife, those of the Towne presented him the keyes thereof, thereby acknowledging him their chiefe Lord and Maister. During the ciuill warres in *France*, the towne was maruelously peopled, insomuch as there were to the number of 12. or 14. thousand strangers, the greatest part wherof were Gentlemen: but since those troubles began to diminish, the number likewise hath decaied, and at this instant there are not many besides the inhabitants, by reason whereof, the towne is very much impouerished.

The towne is gouerned by a counsell of two hundred, called the great counsell, out of which is chosen another counsel, composed of five and twenty, and of these foure especial men, called *Sindiques*, who haue the managing of the whole commonwealth vnlesse it be in some great matters, wherein the whole state is deeply interessed, as in making of peace or war, in leagues offensiue and defensiue, appeales, &c.

The people are gouerned by the ciuil law: the iudge wherof is called a lieutenant criminall, before whō all causes are tried, & from



from whom there is no appeale, vnlesse it bee to the generall counsell of two hundred. When the towne was besiedged in 89. the *Venetians* did not onely send them intelligence of sundry practises against them, but also sent them 24000. crownes to maintaine their warres; and out of England they had 13000 crownes. The great Duke of *Thuscany* did likewise send them many intelligences at the same time: and heeretofore when as the Pope, the King of *Spaine*, the French King, and the Duke of *Sauoy*, haue ioyned their powers together, with purpose to besiege them, the Emperour hath not onely reuealed all their practises, but offered to ayd them with men and mony: yea & sometime the Dukes of *Sauoy* haue lent them money to maintaine them against the others. For hee had rather the Towne should remaine as it doth, then fall into any other mans hands then his owne.

The people are very ciuill in their behauour, speech and apparel, all licenciousnes being seuerely corrected, and especially dauncing: adultery is punnished with death, and the women drowned in the *Rhose*; simple fornication with 9. dayes fasting bread & water in prison; for the second offence, whipping out of the towne, and the third time, with bannishment. The towne lent vnto *Henry* the third King of France a litle before his death 450000. crownes, and twelue Canons, which are not yet restored: the *Bernes* seeme to be their friends, but those of *Geneua* are very ielous of them, and dare not trust them.

The ministers haue a consistory, vnto which they may call publicke offenders, and such as giue scandall vnto others, and there reprove them: and if the crime be great & the party obstinate, they forbid him the Communion; if notwithstanding he persist, they may excommunicate him. But the ministers cannot call any before them into the consistory, but by the authority of a Sindique, who must assist them, otherwise the ministers haue power to summon any man. They haue their maintainance out of the common treasury, and meddle with no tithes. Maister *Beza* in 87. had some 1500. Florens for his stipend, which amounteth to some seauen or eight and fiftie pounds sterling, besides twenty coupes of corne and his house.



All which will hardly amount to foure score pounds: the rest of the ministers had some fixe or seauen hundred florens, 20. coupes of corne and their houses. The ministers in the country haue 345. florens, and twenty coupes of corne. The professor in diuinity, hath *per annum* 1125. florens, and twenty coupes of corne; the professor in law 580. florens; the professor in greek 510. florens; the professor of Phylosophy 600. florens, and twenty coupes; the professor in Ebrew 510. florens.

All honest exercises, as shooting in peeces, crosse-bows, long-bowes &c. are vsed on the Sabbath day, and that in the morning both before and after the sermon, neither do the ministers find any fault therewith, so that they hinder not from hearing the word at the times appointed.

*Switzerland.*

**I**N the daies of Cæsar this prouince contained 240. miles in length, and one hundred and foure score in bredth; which circuit or territory seeming too narrow a roome, to containe so valiant and warlike a people, that not long before had ouerthrowne *L. Casius* a Roman Consull, slaine the Consull himselfe, and sold the souldiors for bondslaues; vpon these apprehensions, and the conceite of their owne valors they began to entertaine a resolution by conquest to gaine a larger territory, correspondent to the ambitious greatnesse of their minds, and to forsake their owne countrey, which first gaue them breath and being. In the heat whereof, they prepare for their departure, they prouide victuals, study tillage two yeares, buy carts and carriage beasts, and least any mans corage should decline with the time, they make a law that euery one should be in readinesse to set forward in the beginning of the third yeere. Being vpon their way and hearing that *Cæsar* (then proconsull of *France*) had caused the bridge of *Geneua* to be hewen downe, and to debar them of passage, had raised that famous fortification betweene the lake and the mount *Iura*, they sent some of their greatest Princes to Cæsar, to intreat a quyet passage thorough the Romane Prouince. At their appointed day of Audience, hearing Cæsars deniall, they resolue to open the way with the power of their forces. In triall of which proiect af-



ter they had received diuers defeatures, they againe sent their Emba. to *Cesar* to intreat an acceptation of submission, throwing themselues at his feet, & with many supplications crauing such fauorable conditions of peace, as might best comfort so distressed a people, and besecme the glory of so mighty a conquests: which requests *Cesar* vpon deliuey of pledges, mercifully granted, inioyning them to returne to the country from whence they came, and to build the citties and villages which before their comming foorth they had destroyed. Euer since which time they retained the reputation of their ancient glory, but neuer enterprised to forsake their limited habitations. The number of men, women, and children, that were in that iourny, was 3680000. wherof 920000. were fighting men: of them that returned, & saw the fortune of both their states, was 110000. Some hold opinion, that this Nation is vtterly extinguished, and that the present inhabitants (whereof we now intreat) both for their resemblance in maners & phrased of speech, are descended from the *Germans*.

It is almost all scituated amongst the *Alps*, and therefore supposed, to be the highest region in *Europe*, and the rather for that the most (famous riuer of this part of the worlde, (viz:.) *Rhene*, *Rodan*, & *Po*, falling from the high places, do disperse their channels through diuers Prouinces of Christendome. It is called in History *Confederatorum Regio*, a state populer, and subiect to no one Prince. And although it seeme to be inuironed with steepe and barren mountaines, alwaies couered with snow, yet in truth it is fertil inough, and intermixed with fruitfull places full of excellent pastures, wherein they bring vp infinit numbers of sheepe and cattle, to their inestimable profit, by venting of Butter, Cheese, and other white meats to forren Nations. Of wheat and wine they haue no such plenty, but are glad to craue in aid of their neighbors to relecue their wants.

From the times before spoken of vntill the comming of the *Saracens* into *Italy*, at what time the Pope sent an honourable Embassage of Cardinals, to intreat their fauour and assistance, they seemed to liue contented within their owne limits; and onely in rewarde of their many good seruices, (employed for the



the defence of the Church and Christendome) they desired of his Holinesse; that they might liue in liberty in these places, which they then inhabited, with the vse of their owne lawes and auncient customes. Which the Pope not onely graunted, but in token of their worthinesse and valour, hee gaue them a red banner with the image of the crucifix painted therein. After this seruice they again gaue themselues to a quiet & peaceable life, to follow tillage, and to husband their granges, vntill such time as certaine Noblemen their neighbours began to incroch vpon them, and to exercise tyrannicall iurisdiction ouer them. Which kind of seruitude (as people bearing in fresh remembrance their auncient and generous reputation) beeing vnable to endure, and inured to giue, and not to take, the law of their neighbors, opposed their forces against the insolency of the Nobility. This discontentment first burst out in the year of our Lorde 1300. about which time the Counts of *Aspurg* (afterward Dukes) had placed in one of their castles of *Vrania* in *Valstneet*, a Gentleman proud aboue measure, vnsociable, & in lust insatiabie. At first he was secret, but by custome imboldened, in feasts and publike banquets he would boast, how he had now abused one woman, then another: at last, amongst the rest hauing rauished a verye young and beautifull damosell, he was slaine by her two brethren. The Count agreed hereat, offered to do iustice vpon the offenders, but the inhabitants of that vally valiantly resisted, ouerthrew two or three castles in one day, and slew diuers of his officers. Which president the *Vnderualdenses* imitating, committed the like outrage vpon the gentlemen of their territory, exclaiming that the tyranny of the nobility had inforst them to this action. The first of the confederates were the *Suauis*, those of *Vro*, *Zurich*, & *Vnderwald*, and as wel as they might in so soden an innoucation gaue themselues to peace, and to respect the good of the league & the confederated cities. The residue of the noblemen & Gent. fearing if this example were left vnpunished, the sore would grow incurable, as an euill which could bring forth no lesse a mischiefe, then the vtter losse of their iurisdiction, mustred all their friends and followers, determining either to tame or



raze the confederated cities. But the *Swizers* well acquainted with the difficult passages of the country, easily frustrated the attempts of their enemies, thereby rather increasing, then diminishing their liberty. *Lupold* Duke of *Austria* enterprizing vpon them with a mighty army for the same quarrell, had the like fortune. So in succeeding ages did *Charles* duke of *Burgundy*, by their seruice vndertaken and performed for the defence of *Rhene* Duke of *Lorraine*. They are men of small stature, and very seldome go armed, but serue onely with the Pike, or two hand sword, because they feare no other forces saue the furie of the great Artillery, which (they say) a brestplate or curance is not able to defend them. And because of their order, they thinke it a matter impossible for any forces to breake them, or to enter vpon them nerer then a Pikes length. In a pitch field without doubt they are excellent good foote-men, but to invade a prouince, they haue little courage, and lesse to defend it; and commonly where they are not able to maintaine their accustomed order of fight, they auaille nothing; as in the war of *Italy* was plainly manifested, especially when they were put to assaults, as at *Padoa* and other places, wherein they gaue but weake testimonies of valor: whereas when they fought it out in open field at the Pikes length, they carried themselves valiantly, insomuch that at the battaile of *Raenna*, if the French had bin without their assistance, they had questionles lost the glory of that daies victory. For before both armies came to handystrokes, the Spanish had already ouerthrown the French and *Gascoine* footmen, & if the *Swizers* had not succored them, they had bin all flaine or taken. So in the war of *Girien* it plainly appeared, that the *Spanish* were more affraid of one band of *Swizers*, whereof the King had then waged ten thousand, then of any of the rest of the French regiments. Thus by the reputation of these, and their former exploits, they woon vnto their Nation so glorions a perpetuity of their armes and valour, that euer since they haue beene called vnto the ayd of diuers Princes, and in continual action vnder some one state or other bordering vpon them; but especially vnder the Kings of *France*, of whom they entertaine sometimes more, & sometimes lesse.

thence



thence the raigne of *Lewes* the 11. they haue bin in perpetuall league, and in their pension, to whom they giue yearly 40000. florens, twenty to the citties, and twenty to other particuler persons. They againe are diuided into thirteen Cantons, eight whereof are Catholike, the residue of their religion. But those of the religion are much greater; and out of these it is, that the kings of *France* are suplied: the residue are in pension with the king of *Spaine*.

When the French king demaundeth any forces out of their Cantons, they call a Diet, the charge whereof, as likewise the soldiors wages the king defraieeth. These forren bands more or lesse, to whom he alwaies committeth the battaile, & the gard of his Cannon, (as for entring of breaches & giuing assaultes, they do expresly capitulate to be exempt) with the fiue Regiments before spoken of in the discourse of *France*, are his main morderne forces on foot: but when he wold haue greater numbers, he giueth his captaines commissions to take vp souldiers through the whole Realme, (not by presse, as with vs,) but by striking vp the drum, when if any come voluntarily, and take pay, they are inrolled, and inioyned to serue, otherwise not.

The gouernment of these thirteene Cities with their dependances (which they terme Cantons) is meere populer. For though the members seem to be separated, yet liue they as one body firmly knit and vnited, hauing a cheefe Magistrat: ouer euery territory chosen by the comminalty of euery particular citty, and euery citty hath his particuler counsell and place of assembly, saue onely when they are to sit ypon matters of importance, and such as concerne the generall estate; then they appoint a generall Diet, and that to be held in some one of the cities, which they thinke most conuenient: whereunto foure or fiue of the most principal of euery citry are bound to resort. In all their consultations for the most part, they are confirmable one to another, and because one citty is as free as another hauing no one chiefe Gouvernour superior to any other, in case the cause (be it peace or warre) concerne the vniuersal state of all the Cantons, looke how the maior part of voices shal sway in the Senat, so it preuaileth, and that which the greater num-



ber resolute vpon is without more ado put in execution. The benefit which they gaine by a common war, is diuided in common: but if sometimes two or three vnited Cantons purchase any booty by their peculiar armes, of that purchase the residue can claime no share. Yet hath it hapned, that the residue thinking themselues iniured in not participating in general of like prayes and booties haue raised diuers controuersies, & because (as aforesaid) they are equally free, and as great is the soueraigne authority of one citty, as of another, both parties haue appealed vnto the French king; who vpon hearing of the cause in question, gaue iudgement, *That a particular gaine, appertaineth to particular persons.*

Therefore when they are either occasioned or determined to make any particular warre, the vnited Cantons erect lights & make bonfires: but when they are to raise forces in general (as suppose they should for the French king of 2,500. foote) first they strike vp their drum, then all the citties present as manie persons as they thinke good: which may be to the number of fūe and thirty or forty thousand, of whom after the captaines haue culd out their limited proportions, the residue are licenced to depart to their owne homes. Euery citty hath his principall standard, with their peculiar armes and deuises beaten therein, to distinguish one people from another. And because no politicke body can stande without a head (although in no case they wil tolerate one absolute gouernor ouer the whole) yet are they contented to submit themselues to the gouernement of one particular Magistrat in euery particular city: him they terme *Unama*. The election of which officer is on this manner. On the first sūday in May, the principal of al the houses & families through euery Canton of al sorts and qualities, assemble themselues, either in sowe meadow, or else in the chiefest streets of their city: where al of them taking their places in order, the *Unama*, whose time of office is now expired, seating himselfe in a place somewhat aboue the rest, after some stay, riseth vp and maketh a speech to the people, excusing himself in good tearmes of his insufficiency to discharge the weyght of the office committed vnto his charge, and craueth pardon of  
that



that which he hath through ignorance or negligence committed to the prejudice of the common good, and therewithal offereth to resigne his determined office into the handes of the people. Immediately vpon this resignation, with a loud voice he nominateth the party, whom in his iudgement he thinketh worthy to succeed in his place. He that is nominated cometh forth before the multitude, & presenting himselfe before them after some speeches, nominateth a second; & the second, with like ceremony, a third. The nomination being ended, the chief of the companies demand of the people which of these three thus nominated, they are willing to elect. So naming them a new, one by one, the multitude lift vp their hãds at the naming of him, whom they desire to be their Gouvernor. And oft times it falleth out, that he that hath bene once *Vnama*, in desert of his iustice and good carriage towards them, hath bene chosen again the second time. This election finished, they proceed to the choise of others officers.

This officer continueth in his place three years, and although he be the chiefest amongst them, yet goeth he but little better attired then the meanest, onely attended with five or six persons. Hee dwelleth in his owne house, because they imploy the publique places for the holding of the Diets, the keeping of their munition and artillery, and other furniture belonging to the warres. In criminall causes he can do nothing without the counsell of the fiftene, but in ciuill matters, hee hath larger limitation.

Next the *Vnama* is that officer of iustice, who is as it were the Chancellor, and the second person in that state. After him are certaine counsellors, men well experienced in affaires of Princes, and occurance of prouinces. Then the Chamberlaine, and his is the charge of the munition and publick treasure. Next to him are the foure Deputies, in authority greater then the counsellors, and may do many things in absence of the *Vnama*, so as the Chanfellow be present. These with the *Vnama* make the 15 which gouerne the state as wel in peace as in warre, and are euer present at the hearing and deciding of all occurances arising within the territory of their owne Canton.

These.



These in effect mannage all matters in the common-wealth and are from yeare to year confirmed by the people, although (as doth the *Vnama*) they continue their office for 3. yeares. These send gouernous to the Castles on the frontiers, and (to decide inferiour matters) they allow ten persons chosen out of the meaner sort, but the parties in controuersie may apeale to these fiftene: other iudges, or further appeales (as in the Ciuill law) they haue not to flie vnto. For their cheefest care is their tillage and warfare, coueting to liue simply and plainly, and not to intrap one another in quarrels, and suits of law. The party euicted is seuerely punished. Neither will they suffer any of their people to appeale out of their owne countries, and if any offend therein, he is greuously chastened.

Through the whole world lawes are not obserued with lesse partiality, for they are neuer altered according to the humors of the inconstant multitude, nor violated without due penalty inflicted; for as of those five sortes of popular gouernement, which *Aristotle* discourseth of, there is none more dangerous then that wherein the will of the people beareth sway, aboue reason, and standeth for Law, as *Zenophon* writeth of the *Athenians*; so no forme of gouernment can be compared to that wherein the comminalty without distinction liue subiect to the censure of the law: in regard of which policy we ought not to meruaile, if this weale haue flourished now these 250. yeares in great reputation of valor. For by two means hath this populer estate bin kept (viz: ) by vnpartiall administratiou of Iustice; and frequency of neighborly feastings. Whereas the scornfull ambition of great men hath heeretofore ruinated the popular estates of the *Megarians*, the *Remans*, the *Florentines*, the *Syennois*, and the *Genoioise*; of which sort the *Swizzers* haue none at all; or if there be any (as there is but fewe which escaped the generall massacre) yet are they contented (without laying any claime to their ancient gentility) to range themselues with the residue of the basest comminalty, and can but seldome bee admitted to the cheefest magistracies, being commonly bestowed vpon Butchers, and Mechanicall artificers.



**I**Taly, (according to *Pliny*) the most beautifull and goodliest region vnder the Sun, the darling of Nature, & the mother of hardy men, braue captains and valiant souldiers: flourishing in all Arts, and abounding with noble wits and men of singular spirits, scituate vnder a climat most holosome and temprate, commodious for traffick, and most fertil for corne & herbage; containeth in length from *Augusta Pretoria*, vnto *Otranto*, one thousand and twenty miles, and in bredth from the riuer *Varo* in *Province*, to the riuer *Arsia* in *Friuli* (where it is the brodest) foure hundred and ten miles: and in the narrow places, as frō the mouth of *Pescara*, to the mouth of *Tiber*, 126. miles. So that to compasse it by Sea, from *Vara* to *Arsia*, are 3038. mi. which with the 410. by land, maketh the whole circuit 3448. miles.

2 Thus it appeares to be almost an Iland, bounded on the East with the *Adriatique* sea, on the south and west, with the *Tirrhene*, and on the North with the *Alpes*: the which bicause it is described by others, we will but point therat, and so much the rather, because there is no Countrey in the world better knowne and more frequented by strangers.

3 Inheritances there, descend to the children, as lands holden by *Gavelkind* with vs in some parts of *England*, so that one brother hath as good a share as another, & if the elder be born to the title of a *Conte*, so is the yonger, & so called; yea if there be twenty brethren, except it be in the estates of pryncedomes, as *Mantua*, *Ferrara*, *Vrbis*, and such like, which euermore descend to the eldest entirely. By this meanes it commeth to pas, that oftentimes you shall see Earles and Marqueesses without landes or goods, yet most strictly standing vpon the reputation of their discents, and the glory of their names for thēselues and their issues for euer. But the Gentlemen which haue wherof to liue, are reported to surpassse the gentry of any other Nation in good carriage and behauior, and for the most part professe armes, and follow seruice. And to be discerned from the vulgar, they al in generall speake the courtisan, which is an excellent commendation, considring the diuersity of dialectes amongst them. For leauing the difference betweene the *Floren-*



*tine* and the *Venetian*, the *Milanois* and the *Roman*, the *Neapolitan* and the *Genois*, (which may well be likened to the difference betweene a *Londoner* and a Northern man) yet by the tong you shall not lightly discern of what part of the country any Gentleman is of. No more different are they in manners and behavior: honorable curteous, prudent, and graue withall, that it should seeme each one to haue had a prince-like education; to their superiors obedient; to equals respectiue, to inferiors curteous, to strangers affable, and desirous by kind offices to win their loue. Of expence and lone of his money very wary, and will be assured to be at no more cost, then he is sure eyther to faue by, or to haue thanke for. In apparel modest, in furniture of household sumptuous, at their table neat, sober of speech, enemies of ill report, and so ieaalous of their reputations, that whosoever speaketh ill of one of them, if the party flandered may know it, and finde oportunitie to perform it, the party offending shall surely die for it.

4 The Merchants likewise for the most part are Gentlemen. For when of one house there be three or foure brethren, lightly one or two of them giue themselues to traffique. And sometimes, if they chance not to deuide their fathers substance and patrimony (as many times they doe not) then doe they which professe themselues Merchants, trauell for the welfare of their brethren, iointly participating of losse and profit. But in outward shew these carry not like reputation to the gentlemen afore spoken of: for they professe not armes, but desire to liue in peace, and how to vent their wares, and haue new Traffique into strange countries: yet haue they no lesse reputation of nobility for their trade of merchandize, but by reason they stay at home, and vse the richest farmes, & follow husbandry by their bailifs and Factors, they become the best and wealthiest Merchants in all Christendome.

5 Their Artificers are thought the best workmen of the world, and are so wel paid, that many liue by their labors aswel as many doe by their reuenues; yea, and grow very rich, and within two or three descents to the reputation of Gentry.

6 The poorer sort are the Husbandmen, for they are oppressed.



fed on all hands, and in the countrey liueth no man of wealth. The gentry and wealthier sort dwell in Townes and walled cities, leauing the villages, fields and pastures to their tenants, not at a rent certaine, as we doe in England, but to halfes, or to the thirds of all graine, fruit, and profits arising of the ground, according as it shall be, either barren or fertile. And this the poore tennant must tyll and manure at his owne charge, so that the Lords part commeth cleere without disbursing one peny; yet shall you see many faire houses in the villages, but they are onely for the owners pastime in summer. For then they leaue the citties for a month or two, where vnder the fragrant hedges and bowers, they solace themselves in as much pleasure as may be imagined. And for the most part euery man hath his mistresse, with instruments of musicke, and such like pleasures, as may serue for recreation and delight. Thus much of the manners and nature of the Inhabitants, now will we speake of the estates of the countrey.

7 The king of Spaine hath the greatest part for his share, as *Naples*, and the Dutchy of *Milaine*.

8 The Pope hath the city of *Rome*, *Campagnia*, part of *Maremma*, part of *Tuscan*, the Dutchy of *Spolet*, *Marca d' Ancona*, *Romagnia*, and the city of *Bononia*.

9 The *Venetians* haue for their part, the city of *Venice*, with the townes in and about their marish, called *La contrada di Venetia*, *La marka Triuigiana*, a great part of *Lombardy*, and part of *Istria*. They likewise are, and haue bin, Lords of certain Ilands, some whereof the Turke hath woon from them.

10 The common-weale of *Genua*, hath the territory about them, called at this day, *U Genouosato*, and antiently *Lyguria*.

11 *Tuscan* once *Hebruria*, is deuided into diuers Signiories, whereof the Bishop of *Rome* holdeth a small part, but the greatest is vnder the Iurisdiction of *Florence*.

12 Then are the common wealths of *Siena* and *Lucca*, whose territories are not great. 13 The D. of *Ferara* hath part of *Romagnia*, and part of *Lombardy*. 14 The dutchy of *Mantua* lieth wholly in *Lumbardy*, and the dutchy of *Urbino* betweene *Marca d' Ancona* and *Tuscan*. 15 The dutchies of *Parma* & *Placentia*, are in *Lumbardy*, and holden of the Church. S 2 OF



Of these Princes and Common-wealths, euery one holdeth himselfe in his owne territory absolute prince and gouernour, and maintaineth his estate vpon the custome, taxes and impositions of the people. For lightly they haue little or no landes of their owne.

*The Byshop of Rome.*

16 **T**He estate of the Pope is of two sorts: the one consisteth in temporall dominion, the other in spirituall iurisdiction. His temporall dominion is likewise diuided into two kinds; the one profitable, and as a man may tearme it, immediate and hereditary patrimony: the other mediate, & holden in fee of the Church. As touching his temporal dominion immediate, he is lord of a great part of Italy, as of all that lyeth between the Riuer *Fiore* & *Caietta*, between *Prenest* & the *Truentian* streights (except the Dutchy of *Urbino*.) In that compasse are incircled the prouinces of *Bonnonia* and *Romandiola*, *Marchia*, *Vmbria*, the Dutchy of *Spolet*, *S. Peters* patrimony & *Tuscan*. It is seated in the hart of Italy, stretching from the *Adriatique* to the *tirrhene* sea; and in regard of scituation, as also in plenty of prouision, as corne, wine and oyle, it is comparable to any state of Italy: For *Romandiola* imparteth great store vnto their neighbors the *Venetians* and *Sclauonians*, and yet haue the Inhabitants sufficient for their owne prouision.

17 *Marchia* reacheth from *Tronto* to *Foglia*, between the *Apennine* and the Sea; It is deuided into little hills and plains. It is rich of wine, oyle and corne, hauing diuers great townes and Castles therein. The citty of greatest trading is *Ancona*, by reason of the hauen, to which many eastern marchants do repaire. The fairest is *Ascoli*, the most powerful *Fermo*, because of many fortresses subiect vnto it. *Macerata* is a new citty, and because it lyeth in the midst of the prouince, it is the Gouernors seate. In some years it hath supplied the *Venetians* wantes, with many thousand measures of corne, and oyle. And although *Vmbria* is not so plentifull of graine, as to spare for their neighbors, yet is it able to maintaine it selfe without buying of others, and in stead therof, it is abundantly stored with wines, cattle, & some saffron.



saffron. S. P. patrimony and *Tuscane* often releued *Genes*, and at some seasons, *Naples*. This territory bringeth forth fierce and warlike souldiers; and herein it is reported to excell al the residue of the *Italian* Prouinces. *Bonnonia*, *Romania* and *Marchia*, are able to leuy twenty thousand footmen, and the other Prouinces as many. In the time of Pope *Clement*, *Marchia* alone aided him with 1000. souldiors. The chiefe seat is *Rome*, once the Lady of the worlde, and at this day inhabited with 2000. soules, but two parts thereof consisting of Churchmen & *Curtians*. The defenceable places are the Castle and Borough of *Rome*, *Ouietta*, *Teracine*, &c. It is a great credite and commendation to this state, to haue many Noble-men therein so excellent in Negociation of peace and Warre, that the residew of the States and Princes, doe most commonly choose their Leaders and Lieutenautes out of these prouinces. If the Prince heereof were secular, both for people and power, hee might very well bee compared with any state of Italy.

18 Besides these Dominions, the Pope hath the territory of *Auignon* in *France*, wherein are foure citties and fore score walled townes. In *Naples* he hath *Beneuent*.

19 *Romagna* extendeth from *Foglia* to *Panoro*, and from the *Apenine* to the riuer *Po*. For temperature and fertility it is like to *Marchia*, but hath generally more famous cities, as *Rimini*, *Cesana*, *Faensa*, *Rauenna*, *Turly*, *Imola*, *Sarsina*, *Cerua*, *Bertinoro*, once a Bishops seat, but nowe translated to *Forlimpoli*. The Noblest of all these is *Rauenna*, where some Emperours haue kept their courts, and after them their *Exarches* or lieutenants. When *Pipin* hauing expelled *Astolpho*, put the church in possession thereof, this territory comprehended *Bologna*, *Regio*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Piacenza*, *Rauenna*, *Sarsina*, *Classe*, *Forli*, *Forlimpoli*, and made one estate called *Pentapoli*, which indured 183. yeares, euen to the yeare of our Lord 741. in which yeare it ended by the taking of *Rauenna* by *Astolpho* king of *Lombards*. So that first the Roman Emperours, especially *Honorius*, and after him the kings of the *Gothes*, and then *Exarkes*, amongst all the cities of *Italy*, choose this for the seat of their courts, which frō amongst other respects, I suppose to proceed by reason of the plentiful



plentifull territory (now couered with water) and the conueniency of the hauen, which at this day is likewise choaked. This prouince was first called *Flaminia*, but *Charles* the great to rase out the remembrance of these Exarkes, and to make the people willing to obey the Roman prelates, called it *Romagnia*.

20 As touching his mediate soueraignty, he is the Lord paramount of the kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*, and the Duchies of *Urbino*, *Ferrara*, *Parma*, *Placencia*, and many others.

21 Where his authority is maintained, he hath supreme gouernment of all religious orders, and bestoweth the ecclesiasticall benefices at his dispose. Having thus many stringes to his bow, he hath so many means to raise money, that *Xistus* the 4. was wont to say, that the Popes shoulde neuer want coine, as long as their hands were able to hold a penny. *Paule* the 3. in the league between him, the Em. and the *Venetians*, against the *Turke*, bare the sixt part of the charges of that war. Against the Protestants, & in ayd of *Charles* 5. he sent 12000. footmen, and 500. horsemen, bearing their charges during the war: this was he that aduanced his house to that honor, wherein it continueth to this day in *Florence*. *Pius* 5. aided *Charles* the 9. king of France with 4000. footmen, and 1000. horse. *Xistus* the first in five yeares and a halfe of his Pötificy, raked together five millions of crownes, and spent bountifully notwithstanding in bringing conduits and waterpipes into the citty, and in building *Pyramids*, pallaces and churches.

*Tuscan.*

22 I lyeth betweene the *Apenine* and the sea: & containeth frō *Magra* to *Tenere* aboue 200. threescore & ten miles. It hath larger champions then *Lyguria*, because the *Apenine* stretcheth not so neare the sea, and so enlargeth the plain. In it are many large valleys, populous, & rich in commodities. But to speak of particulars: when we are past *Magra*, *Sarazana* offereth it self to our view, a city holden by the *Genoise* with great ielousie, by reason of the neighborhood of the great D. and a little higher lieth *Pentrimoli*, a castle belonging to the K. of Spaine, of great account, and scituated not far from the sea; then *Massa* & *Carrara* places famous for their quarries of white Marble.



marble. *Lucca* standeth on the riuer *Serichi*, *Pisa* on *Arnoy* and beyond the city of *Florence*. To the state wherof belongeth *Pistoia*, *Volterra*, *Montepulcino*, *Arezzo*, *Cortona*. 23. Those of *Lucca* do stand vpon their guaid for maintenance of their liberties. The city is 3. miles in compasse, strong in scituation & wals, & well stored with artillery and munition. On the North it con- fineth *Carfagnana*, a fruitfull valley and wel inhabited with ser- uiceable people, on the other partes it is incompassed with the territories apertaining to the great Duke. *Pisa* was once of such wealth, that at one instant the citizens therof held war against the *Venetians* & the *Genoois*. They grew great by the ouerthrow which the *Saracens* gaue to the *Genoois* in the yea. 1533. the re- mainder of which defeature were receiued into the protection of their city; and declined by the slaughter of their people, & also of their nauy giuen them by the *Genoois* neer to the *Ile Gi- glio*. For thereby they became so weake, that not able to sustain their wonted reputation, they were forced to submit the selues vnder the protection of the *Florentines*, against whom (when *Charles* the 8. inuaded *Italy*) they rebelled. But being again re- duced to their former obedience, the city notwithstanding was in a maner left desolate, because the citizens (impatience the *Florentines* gouernment) passed into *Sardinia*, *Sicil*, and other pla- ces to inhabite. So that the place wanting inhabitants, and the country people to manure it, the scituation thereof being low and moorish, by reason of fennes and marishes it became in- fectious. *Cosmo* the great D. vnderooke to repeople it againe, and to further his intention he builded ther a stately house for the receit of the knightes of S. *Stephen*, graceing it with many priuiledges, which yet to this day remaine vnaltered.

25 *Florence* is the fairest city in *Italy*. It is in compasse 6. mile. It is deuided into 44. parishes, and into 21. Companies. It hath in it 66. monasteries, & 37. hospitals. The citizens bought their freedome of the Emperor *Rodolfe* for 6000. crowns, as they of *Lucca* theirs, for 10000. In whose time, and euer since it hath flourishd in great prosperity. For vpon occasion the city is able to arme 30000. men, & the contry 60000. It is strongly wald, the scituation therof being low, especially on the North side:

but



but on the other parts is somewhat subiect to the command of certaine hills, which ouerlooke it, the inconuenience whereof they haue preuented by fortifications. It hath a Citadel built by D. *Alexander*, and after enlarged by *Cosmo*. The streets thereof are straight, large, and very cleane kept. There are to be seen the most artificiall buildings of all Europe, both publicke and priuate. *Charles* Arch-duke of *Austrich* was wont to say, that it was a citty not to be shewne but on holydaies. No soyle is tilled with more art, dilligence and curiosity: for you shall see one little peece of ground to bring forth Wine, Oyle, Corne, Pulse and fruits. Notwithstanding it will not afford sufficient victuals for a third part of the yeare; wherfore it was not without good reason that they spent two millions of Crownes for the recouery of *Pisa*.

26 The qualities of the *Tuscans* appeare by the excellency of the *Florentines*, whom Nature aboue all the prouinces of *Italy* hath adorned with sharpnes of wit, frugality, prouidence, industry, & special insight into the negotiations of peace & war; yea their continuall dissentions and hazards, wherin they haue almost liued from the first foundation of their citty, I doe, to nothing but such attribute, as to the sharpenesse of their wits. So the ciuill discordes of the *Pistorians*, did not onely ruinate their owne estate, but therein likewise ingaged *Florence*, yea & as a man may say, drew al *Tuscane* after it, by the faction of the *Neri* and *Bianchi*, for thus it hapned: Two young men descended of Noble families falling out, the one of them chaunced to bee lightly hurt: the father of the other to extinguish all sparkes of malice, and that no further inconueniency should arise vpon that quarrell, sent his sonne to aske forgiuenes of him that was hurt, but the effect ensued contrary to his expectation: for the father of the wounded Gent. caused his seruants to lay hold on him, and cut off his hands, and so sending him back againe, willed him to tell his father, that wounds were not cured with words, but with weapons. Hereupon grew betweene those two families a mortal and cruel war, which drew the rest of the citties into the quarrell, and was the cause of great effusion of bloud: yea the *Florentines* in stead of executing due punishment



nishment vpon the principall authors of the faction, receiued the banished on both sides into their citty: where the *Denati* vndertaking the protection of the *Neri*, and the *Cherfi* of the *Bianchi*, all the city became to be diuided into *Neri & Bianchi*, this sedition was not of long time after pacified.

27. *Arezzo* being by long dissention amongst themselves almost brought to wracke (as the other citties of *Tuscane* likewise were) was solde to the *Florentines* by *Lewes* of *Anoy* for forty thousand florens of gold; and not many years after, *Corona*, by king *Ladislaus*.

28 with the state of Florence doth confine that of *Siena*, a citty builded by the *Senon*, and of late time become subiect to the house of *Medici*. It is 5. miles in compasse, strong by scituation & whereunto *Cosmo* the great Duke adioyned a Citadel. From Florence it is not aboue 33. miles distant, but the people thereof are much deffering in maners and also disposition; they sparing, slow, and vnsociable towards strangers, these bountiful, of kind entertainment: they loth to part with money and prouident; these liberall, and onely caring for the present, they graue, melancholy, and alwaies expecting their profit, these plaine, and of cheerfull countenance; the one inclined to traffick and gaine the other content with their reuenues, and the fruits of their farmes. *Siena* hath a large and fruitfull Territory, wherein are contained in the cities of *Pienza*, *Montalcino*, *Chiusi*, *Soana*, and in *Maremma*, *Massa* and *Crosseto*, the portes of *Orbetello*, *Portercole* with 26. other walled townes. The coast beginneth at *Capiglia*, and extendeth to the little riuer of *Fiore*, being all good soyle for corn, but the ayre is so infectious, that none liue long therein. The ports do all belong to the king of Spaine, together with the hill *Agentano*, a place famous by the discourse which *Claudius Ptolomeus* made thereof, for the excellency of the scituation fit for the building of a royall citty. In this prouince beginneth the patrimony of *S. Peter*, bequeathed to the church by the Countesse *Matilda*.

*Campagna.*

29 **T**He chiefe place heereof in ancient time was *Capua*, the pleasant scituation whereof was the ouerthrow  
 T of



of Hanniball and his army. *Cicero* writeth that the Romaines were Lords of three imperiall cities, *Carthage*, *Corinth* and *Capua*. The two first being farre off, they vtterly ruinated; of *Capua* they long consulted: in the end they concluded that it were extreme tyranny to spoile so noble a city of Italy. But for their better security, they confiscated the territories thereof, and depriued it of all form and maiesty of a commonwealth. They let the buildings stand to serue for receipt of those which shoulde till the ground. *Naples* is now the chiefe seat, not only of *Campania*, but of the whole kingdome, and is indeede a princely city: It is compasse 7. miles, but narrowe: of late times it is much augmented and would increase continually, if the King of Spaine had not forbidden a further increase by building; whereunto he was moued, partly by the complaints of the *Barons* (whose tenants to inioy the liberties granted to the *Neopolitans*, did forsake their own dwelling to seat themselues there) partly by the danger of rebellion, which in so mighty a city cannot easily be repressed. It is strongly wald and hath in it three castles, the chiefe wherof is castle *Nouo*, builded by *Charles* of *Angeom*. The haue is not large nor safe, but that inconueniēce is somewhat eased by an artificiall key. It hath likewise an Arsenall wherein all instruments of war are forged. Amongst other religious places (of which sort there are many, and those well maintained) there is the house of piety, called *il monte della pietra*, which by ordinary reuenues and gifts, may dispend yearely 60000. crowns, wherewith (amongst other charitable works,) it maintaineth through the kingdom 2000 infants.

30 It is one of the regions belonging to the kingdom of *Naples*; it is bounded with the riuer *Iano* and the *Terrhen* and *Ionian* seas; it is in compasse about 500. miles, and is diuided into two prouinces; the one lieth on the *Terrhene* sea, where in ancient times the *Brutians* did inhabite, and that part is properly called *Calabria*; the other lyeth on the *Ionian*, & called *Magna Gracia*. It is diuided into the higher and lower. Of the higher the chiefe seat is *Cosenza*, of the lower, *Catanzara*. *Cosenza* is a large city, *Catanzara*, a strong. Between the cape of the *Pillars*, & the cape *Alice*, is *Corone*, a place of very holosome aire. Vpon this



this territory *anno. 1551.* the nauie of the great Turke landed & made some stay; which was the cause that moued Charles the fift to fortifie this city. It is a thing worthy to be noted, howe much the inhabitants of this country in former age, exceeded the numbers of this present: for in those dayes this citty sent more men against the *Locrians* then the whol kingdom of *Naples* is now able to afford, being numbred to 130000. A little aboue that do inhabite the *Sabarits*, who were alwaies able to arme 30000.

31 At *Tarent* beginneth the country of *Otranto*, in auncient times called *Iapigia*. It containeth all that corner of land almost enuironed with the sea, which lyeth between *Tarent* & *Brundisium*. In it (as *Strabo* writeth) were once thirteen great cities, but in his time onely two, *Tarent* and *Brundise*. The ayre is verry healthfull, and though the superficies of the soile seem rough and barren, being broken with the plough it is found to be excellent good mold. It is scarce of water, neuerthelesse it yeeldeth good pasture, and is apt for Wheate, Barly, Oats, Oliues, Cedars, excellent Melons, Oxen, Asses, and Mules of great estimation. The people are in their manners more plaine then their neighbors. In this countrey is bred the *Tarantola*, whose venom is expelled with fire and musick, as *Gellius* reporteth out of *Theophrast* his History of liuing creatures. There are likewise bred the *Chersidi*, serpents liuing both on the land and in the sea: yea there is no part of Italy more cumbred with Grashoppers, which leaue nothing where they come, but would vtterly consume in one night whole fields full of ripe corne, if nature by sending the birds called *Gaine* into those quarters, had not provided a remedy against this misery. The place at al times of the yeare indureth much damage by haile: thunder is as vsuall in winter as in summer.

32 The prouince is scituated betweene two seas: the city is seated in an Iland like vnto a ship, & ioyned to the Continent *Tarent.* with bridges, wher the tide setteth violently: on the other side the two seas ioyned together by meanes of a trench cut out by mans hand, & is of largenes sufficient to receiue a gally. Where the city now standeth, was before a rock, & is holden to be the



Strongest fortres of the kingdom. From thence along the shore lieth *Casaria*, now ruined by them of *Gallipoli*. *Gallipolis* is seated on a ridge of lande, running into the sea like a tongue, on the furthest point whereof standeth the city, and is of great strength by reason of the scituation, beeing fenced with vnaccessable rockes, well walled, and secured by a castle; with which Motiues of incoragement in the wars between the French and the Arragons, the citizens thereof to their great honor, continued euer faithfull to the fortunes of the *Arragons*.

*Brundis.*

33 It hath bin counted one of the chiefest citties of *Italy*; it is now by their ciuill dissentions almost desolated, the cause, as I take it, wherfore the aire therabouts is become so vnhealthfull: an influence incident to all great citties. For as nothing doth better temper the aire, then the frequency of inhabitants (because by husbandry and industry they dry vp fenny and vnholosome places, prime such woods as grow too thicke and obscure; with their fires purge noysome exhalations, and with their high buildings extenuat grosse vapors. So on the contrary, there is nothing apter to breed infection, then the desolation of spacious cities: for so the places are not onely deprived of the aforesaid helps, but euen the houses and their ruines are receptacles of infection, and matter of corruption. Which appeareth to be true by the ruins of *Aquillea*, *Rome*, *Rauenna*, and *Alexandria* in *Egypt*. For which inconuenience the Græcians neuer built huge citties; *Plato* would not that his shoulde exceed 500. families, & *Aristotle* wished that all his people might at one time heare the voice of one cryer.

*Puglia.*

34 This prouince extendeth from the confines of *Brunduse* to the riuer *Fortore*. It is diuided into two territories: the one at this day called *Bari*, and by the Latines *Peucetia*, the other *Puglia*, and by them, *Dawnia*, diuided each from other by the riuer *Lofanto*.

*Monfredonia.*

35 In the second part is cōprehended *Capitanato*, containing in it many great cities, places of trade, and fortresses of good account. Amongst the number wherof is *Monfredonia*, built by *k. Monfredi* in a high place, and heathfull, with a conuenient and safe harbor. It lieth vnder the hill *Gargano*, at this day called *S. Angelo*,



*Angelo*, because of the appearing of Saint *Michael*, who is honored there with great deuotion. It should seeme, that in this hill al the riches of *Puglia* are heaped together: it hath plentie of water, an element rare in this prouince. The *Saracens* finding the opportunity of the scituation thereof, did there fortifie, & therein maintained themselues a long time: for in truth there is no place better to molest the kingdome, and to commaunde the Adriatique sea.

36 It is another prouince of this kingdome: it is bounded with the riuer *Fortorie*, and the riuer *Tronto*: in which circuit are contained many people. Towards the sea it is a fruitfull contry, in the midst rough and mountainous, and the coldest region in the kingdom. The wealth therof consisteth in cattle & saffron. The country of *Malisi* is diuided with the riuer *Pescara*, the gouernor therof resideth in *San-Seuoro*. This prouince hath no famous place vpon the sea coast, but in the Inland. *Beneuento* was giuen to the church by Henry the 4. in recōpence of a tribute which *Leo* the 9. did release to the church of *Bamburgh*, which in those dayes being by diuers casualties often vsurped, was at last restored again to the church by the armes of the Normans.

37 It was the habitation of the *Lucans*, extending from the riuer *Sarno* to *Lano*: it is a territory rough and mountainous. Towards the sea-coast are *Nico*, *Sorento*, *Massa*, *Amalfi*, and *Salerne*, the aire whereof is very temperate; in the vpland are *Canua*, *Nocera*, *Sanseuerino*, and more neere the sea, *Peste*, where Roses blow twice a yeere; *Agropoli*, *Possidoni*, now *Licosa*, *Policaster*, *Capace Noni*, *Venosa*, *Accella*, and *Melfi*, holden second to *Naples*.

#### Liguria.

38 THE places of most note therein are *Nizza*, hauing a castle of great account, *Villafranca* a haven of great receit, but dangerous; *Monace*, a notable fort, *Ventimilia*, a good city. The champion of *Arbenga* is fertill, but the ayre infectious. *Finale* is a famous Lordship, *Noly* hath a conuenient harbor for shipping, but *Saouona* had a better, if the icalous *Genoos* had not choked it.

39 The people are witty, actiue, high minded, tal of stature



and of comely personage. They build stately, at home they liue sparingly, abroad magnificently.

40 *Genoa* is nowe the metropolitan city of the prouince, & by reason of scituation was holden to bee one of the keyes of Italy. The people thereof were once very famous for their manifold victories, and great commaunde by sea, insomuch that wrastring with the Venetians they had almost bereaued them of their estate and taken their citty: But (fortune fauoring the *Venetians*, and crossing the *Genoise* euen to their vtter vndoing) euer since this city hath declined, and that not onely in regard of their former defeature, and their continuall and ciuill discords, but also for that they haue giuen ouer their tafficke and care of their publicke good, and haue betaken themselues to liue by vsury, retaile, and mechanicall trades, altogether regarding their priuate benefite; whereupon not being of puissance, as in former ages, to make good their actions, they were forced to put themselues vnder the protection sometimes of the kings of France, and sometimes of the Duke of *Millaine*.

*Venice.*

41 **I**T is a citty seated at the bottom of the *Adritique* sea, 4. mi. from the neereft continent, and in such a marish, that at euery ebbe the water leaueh the muddy ground vncovered, and at euery full sea drowneth it againe cleane ouer. Insomuch that if nature had not of purpose made that admirable artifice two or three miles off, between it & the sea, it were impossible to be inhabited. This banke beginneth at *Chiozza*, & from thence stretching towards the citty of *Concordia*, by the space of 60. mi. encloseth the lakes within, in the midst whereof was this city builded, at such times as the Huns, vnder the cōduct of *Attyla*, wasted the Italian prouinces. Throgh euerie street (as we tearme them) runneth a channell full of water, so that you may row through all parts of the city, if you list not to walke by land. But the streets for the most part are very narrow, and the buildings fairer towards the water then towards the land. The banke is broken in 7. places, throgh the which no ship of burden can passe to the city, sauing at the port of *Malamoco*, or at the castles of *Lio*. The entry whereof is so dangerous



rous (by reason of the shifting of sands and shelves) that when any ship commeth in, it must of necessity be brought ouer by a *Venetian* Pilot.

42 It was not without good reason that *Conterin* deemed this city to excell all other. For if a man do but looke on their forme of gouernment, he shal see a Prince of great Maiesty sitting as the helme of the common wealth, yet both he and his authority subiected to the lawes, and therein an Idea of most excellent monarchy. If he would behold the patterne of a well ordered Aristocracy, then let him cast his eies on the counsell of the *Pregati*: or if he desire to see a president of a popular estate, let him set before his view their great counsell, consisting at the least of 3000. Gentlemen. By the vertue of their iustice, and the admirable policy of these courses, they haue not onely builded them a city, for scituation, palaces, monasteries, temples & towers, more admirable then the world hath brought forth any maruelous thing, but also (as a man may say) in their gownes for the space of 1300. yeares, they haue beautified it more and more, and preserued it as an vntouched virgin from the violence of any forraine inforcement. At which neither can I greatly maruaile, considering their continuall care of warre & warlike prouisions in the securest time of peace. For in their Arsenall they continually maintaine 200. gallies, and such a staple of timber, that for euery day in the year, they are able to build a new galley: & therein (besides mastes, cables, Ankers, & Oares) harnessse, artillery, powder, and weapons sufficient to arme 100000. men. The Marquesse of *Guaſto* reported that he had rather haue bin Lord of that castle, then of the best city in Italy. 43. About the works of this Nauy, be it peace or war, their ordinary retinue of workmen is neuer lesse then 600. daily: and for Marriners they neede to goe no further then their owne channels, wherein, as reporte goeth, there are 12000. boats daily seruing, euery one guided by a sufficient mariner. A consideratron of great importance in seafaring matters, wherein the people & the commanders, being of diffrent countries, and of diuers languages, cannot giue any assured hope of prosperous successe, be the commaunds of the one, neuer so honorable



nourable, and the experience of the other neuer so sufficient: the contrary wherof was an aduantage not of least moment to the victory of the English, 1588. lying as then in the hauen of *Plimmouth*, some-what fearlesse of the Spanish inuasion, from whence the wind blowing at that instant at south and by west, and the ships so many, they could hardly haue bin warped out acording to the art military of the sea, & sudennes of the occasion, had not the people (touched with equal honor & hatred) bin both of one nation, and one language, together with long & certaine skil of the English masters in the marine discipline.

44 It hath bin the opinion of many, that if they had bin giuen to land seruice, as they are to nauigation and the sea, they might haue bin comparable to the ancient Romans. But their gouernment hath rather deserued the comendation of warines then valor. For sithence *Constantinople* was won by the Turkes, their reputation hath decreased; some say by reason they had rather practise with mony, then by blows; contenting themselves rather with the titles of marchants, then men of war. Of which blame they seeme not to be altogether inexcusable, for that in the year, 1508. after their ouerthrow at *Uaila*, they yeelded to the Pope his townes and countrey, to the K. of *Spain*, his ports & hauens, and to the Emp. his demands, declaring themselves his tributaries, offering to pay 50000. duckets yearly to his maiesty. But whether this practising may be deemed pusillanimity or wisdom, let them censure to whom it is not vnkown, that at the same time, *Iulius* the 2. the Emp. the kings of *France* and *Spaine*, with other petty princes, were coniuered by the treaty of *Cambrey*, al, and euery one a part, at one instant to make war against them. Sure I am, that though they were not so valorous, as to resist the first assault, they found neuerthelesse the meanes to temporize, vntill they might bee able to disvnite the other princes from the king of *France*, against whom was their principall quarrell, and vpon whom to be reuenged, they gaue in charge to *Anthony Iustinian* their Embassador with the Emp. to conclude a peace vpon what condition soeuer.

45 Besides those habitations which are in the marishes, and on that long bank between them & the sea, as *Murano*, *Maz-*  
*zorbo*,



*Zorbo, Torcello, Malamoco, Chiozza*, and others: they haue on the continent *Friuli, Treviso, Padoa, Vicenza, Verona, Bressa, Bergamo* and *Crema*, with their territories. In *Istrio* and vpon the coasts of *Slauonia*, they haue *Zaro* and *Zebenica*; in the mouth of the *Adriatique*, the Ile of *Corfu*, and in the *Leuant Candy*.

46 It is reported that they leuy four Millions of gold by the yeare, which after our reckoning, amounteth to ten hundred thousand pound sterling. A report rather to be wondred at, than belceued, considering they raise it not vpon lands, but customs, and those extreamey exacted. For there is not a grain of corne, a spoonful of wine, salt, eggs, birds, beasts, fowl or fish, bought or sold, that payeth not a certaine custome. Vpon occasions the labourers and craftsmen throughout all their dominiõ pay a rate by pole monthly. They also receiue incredible gaine by vsury of the Iewes. For in euery citty they keep open shops of interest, taking pawnes after fifteene in the hundred, and if at the yeares end it be not redeemed, it is forfeited, or at the least sold to extreame losse. Notwithstanding considering their ostẽ wars, the fees of the Senators and officers, the number of captaines and strangers which they entertaine for tearme of life, the castles & fortresses which they maintaine, their costly buildings, and the vnreasonable charges of their *Arsnall* & Gallies at sea, it is thought they can lay vp but little at the yeares end.

47 By sea, they choose Generals out of their own common wealth: by land, strangers: both Generall, Captaines, and all other men of warre. For by land (fearing *Cæsars* example) their law permitteth not any *Venetian* borne to be captaine ouer the Army; but with the army they send diuers of their Gentlemen as Legats or prouiditors, who neuer stirre from the side of the captaine Generall, by whom in a manner all thinges are done. The war being ended, either magistrat returneth home, giuing vp his authority, and putting himselfe into order; And this is wholly the maner of the *Venetians* warfare by land.

48 By Sea, euery galley hath one gentleman *Venetian* for captaine, tearmed *Soprocomite*, who hath power ouer all that are in the galley, matters of life and death excepted. And ouer the whole Nauy and euery particular captaine, one legat (as it wer



an admirall) that may hang and punish at his pleasure; & direct the Navy at his pleasure. They faile not euery yeare, be the peace neuer so sure, to arme forth certaine gallies, against Pyrats and sea-rouers. But if they happen to haue any dangerous warre, they create ouer the whole Navy a captain general with high and foueraigne authority, not only ouer the same, but also ouer maritim prouinces, in maner as great, as was that of the Roman dictator, saue onely that this in all things obeyeth the authority of the senate, and the decrees of the common-weal. There is not amongst them a magistrat of higher power: for during his authority, the captains of the Ilandes, Legats, Leaders and lieutenants, are vnder him, and when he coms to any City, the cleargy do meet him in all solemnity, and the keyes of gates and Castles are deliuered him; yea the authority of all other gouernors for that time ceaseth: and whosoeuer in what soeuer cause, may appeale from any other magistrat to the captaine generall, who only (if he please) may administer Iustice, dispose of the publike money, and alone himselfe exercise the office of all the rest. Therefore he is not rashly created, but vpon most weighty considerations, and that but sildome, like the Roman Dictator, vpon most vrgent occasion.

49 Howbeit the war being finished, it is ordained by law, that no Generall, legator captaine may enter the citty with his armed gallies, but presently vpon his arriual at *Aistria*, (a prouince C. miles distant from *Venice*) he is to deliuer to the Mariners their stipend and pay, and there to dismisse them. From whence the Gallies are brought to *Venice* by some fewe, and there to be laid vp in the *Arsenall*.

*Lumbardy.*

50 *Lumbardy* antiently called *Cisalpinia*, extendeth from *Panazzo* vnto *Sesia*, lying betweene the *Apenine* and the *Alps*. *Marca Trinigiana*, sometime called *Venetia*, lieth between the *Menzo* and the *Po*. Most commonly both Prouinces passe vnder the name of *Lumbardy*, because there the kin. of the *Longobards* seated their dwellings, there ioyned in allyance, and there prospered better, then in any other place of *Italy*. Besides, the soyle, the ayre and the Inhabitants, hold such correspondency, that they



they ought not to be distinguished. This is the richest & ciuil-  
 left prouince of *Italy*, for such another piece of ground for beu-  
 tifull citties, goodly riuers, fields, and pastures; for plenty of  
 foule, fish, graine, wine, and fruites, is not to be found againe  
 in all our westerne world: arising partly by the ease of nauiga-  
 ble riuers; as *Tesino*, *Adda*, *Oglio*, *Menzo*, *Adige*, and *Po*: part-  
 ly by channels cut out of those riuers, and partly by the great  
 lakes of *Verbano*, *Lario*, and *Benaco*. No lesse commodity ari-  
 seth by the plaines passable for carts, mules, and other cariage.  
 The greatnesse likewise of the Lords of *Lumbardie*, hath bin a  
 great furtherance thereto. For while the *Visconti* raigned, this  
 state maintained wars of great importace against most puissant  
 princes. And for the Empery hereof, happened those notable  
 wars of our daies, betweene the Emp. and the *French* K. And  
 no maruell that two such puissant potentates contended with  
 so great effusion of bloud for this dukedom: for though to ma-  
 ny it should not seeme great, yet in very truth for the wealth of  
 the countrey and the quantity, it hath bin of as great reputati-  
 on, as some realmes of *Europe*. Some Dukes wherof haue pos-  
 sessed greater territory, enioyed wealthier reuenues, and haue  
 beene more puissant in wars, & more honorable in peace, then  
 diuers princes, graced with kingly titles.

51 Amongst the citties of these prouinces (accounting *Ve-*  
*nice* among the Islands) *Millan* without controuersy holdeth  
 the precedency. It is able to leuy neere 200000. persons, and  
 hath a large and populous territory. A citty (sayth *Guicciardin*)  
 most populous and rich in citizens, plentiful in marchants &  
 artificers, proud in pomps, and sumptuous in ornamentes for  
 men and women; naturally addicted to feasting and pleasure,  
 and not onely full of reioycing and solace, but also most happy  
 in all other nature of contentment for the life of man.

52 The 2. citty of *Lumbardy* is *Brescia*, not for compasse, or  
 multitude of people, for it is not able to make 50000. men, but  
 by reason of the large iurisdiction therof, comprehending ther  
 in many large townes, & populous champains, therefore censu-  
 red to be able to leuy 350000. men. Among the towns subiect  
 thereto, *Asolo* & *Salo* haue the preheminnence: amongst the Val-



lies, *Valcamonia*, being fifty miles in length, and therewith populous and full of Iron mines. *Bologna* (if it please you to acout it in *Lumbardy*) and *Verona* are alike populous: *Verona* is larger and of more beauty: *Bologno* more rich and commodious: as well for that it hath a larger territory, as also for that there is no citty that doth more absolutely enjoy her owne commodities, and doth more freely pertake of others, by the great resort of courtiers, clergy-men and officers dispersed through all the ecclesiastick state. To which, three things are much available: the Vniuersity, where all professions are practised; their wealth, which is equally divided; and lastly, their inclination and patience to take paines and do seruice.

53 Betweene *Verona* and *Padoa* there is no great difference in respect of circuit; but *Verona* hath double the people. Wherof the *Venetians* to supply that defect, do as much as they may, grace their Vniuersity and the Schollers. As in this prouince the citties are great and beautifull, so are the fortresses many and impregnable. And wheras other prouinces haue their places of strength on their frontiers, in this, the neerer you approach the center, the stronger shall you see the countrey planted and fortified.

*Hungarland.*

**H***Vngary*, for the plenty wherewith it aboundeth of al things both for vse and pleasure, may be numbred amongst the most fertile kingdomes of Europe. In it are found fruits of as much variety and goodnes as in Italy: corn sufficient to sustain the inhabitants; wine to furnish their neighbors (*Poland, Silesia, Moravia, Bohemia*) fish in such plenty that strangers borrow of their abundance: frō them and out of *Valachia* (before the losse of *Agria* in 96.) were beeuies driuen into *Italy* and all parts of *Germany*, which now find a present want in their former prouision through the Turkes stopping that passage.

The *Hungarian* horse by nature are not improper for war, being couragious, strong, hardy, and swift, but for want of management they fit no seruice but trauayle; to which the Italian Hackney-men, and *Almain* Coachmen, find them excellent.

*Hungarland* is diuided by the riuier *Danubius* into two parts: the



the one mountainous, and therefore called the vpper *Hungerland*, abounding in golde, siluer, and copper earth; the other, nether *Hungerland* plaine, without hils, and called for the fertility thereof, the storehouse of *Italy* and *Germany*. The *Metropolitan* city of that part of *Hungerland* that obeyeth the Emperor is *Possonium*; little, and not very beautifull, no more then are *Strigonium*, *Cassovia*, *Nitria*, *Teruano*, or any other citties of *Hungerland*: a reason whereof may bee that the Gentlemen, haue their houses in the country, and the citizens are more studious to build for vse, then for pompe.

*Hungerland* confineth toward the North with *Poland* & *Mouinia*: on the East lieth *Transilvania* and *Valachia*; on the South *Bulgania*, *Serua*, *Bosnia*, *Sclauonia*, & *Croatia*: and towards the west, it is ioyned to *Stiria* and *Austria*; two thirds of, it is possessed by the Turk. The inhabitants be of stature & complexion not vnlike the English, but in habit e resembling the poore Irish; in war strong, valiant, and patient; couetous aboue measure, yet hauing rather desire then art to enrich themselus, permitting (of negligence) the Germans to inhabite in their citties, and to trafficke their merchandize; a cause why none of them rise by their own industry to any great wealth. They neuer combate amongst themselus, but reuenge iniuries with words, except the objection of cowardize, whereof the charged is neuer disburdned, vntil he haue proued nimselſe in single combate with a Turke. It hath bin an ancient custom amongst them, that none should weare a feather, but he who hath killed a Turk, to whom it was lawfull to shew the nūber of his slain enimies by the number of feathers in his cap. They punish adultery & fornication with death: the husband forcing his wife, the father his daughter, and the brother his sifter to the place of execution. The sons inherit equally after the death of their fathers, occupying for the most part the possessions left thē in common. The daughters haue the value of the part of the lāds in mony. They are desirous of wars aboue measure, they admit no vnprofitable man into their camp, but such as hold seruants, are serued with men. They march in tropes both horse & foote lodging apart, in not that good order, which is vsed by the



Germans, who distinguish both their companies & regiments into streets, placing their baggage at their backs, or flanks, according to the necessity of the city. They go no round, neither in their camps nor towns, but instead thereof, one sentinell who- peth to another, as in like case do the Turkes. The horsemen in battell range themselves in files after the German order, as do also their foot, placing all their shot on front. They giue a furious charge, & the enemy broken, fall presently to spoile, lea- uing to follow the execution for any small booty: but beeing broken, they fly euery man home without euer turning heade; lying in waight by the way for the *Almans*, whom they rob in their flight, counterfeiting for the more terrour the clamor of the Tartars, from whom they differ in the fashion of their caps. The gouernment of *Hungerland* was anciently spirituall, & secu- lar, the spirituality was gouerned by the Arch. of *Strigoniū* (who were chancellors of the land) and of *Colozza*. They had vnder them 12. Bishops, which are all now vnder the Turke, except *Stoigonum*, *Niteia*, *Iarnium* and *Vacia*. For the due administration of iustice vnder the secular, the ancient Lords diuided their lād into xx. countries, apointing to euery country a Baron for go- uernor, with xii. D. of law to be his assistants, reseruing euer to themselves an appeal for the redresse of iniustice & preuenting of extortion. Now since the princes of *Austria* got the crown, their tyranny so yoketh the pesants that nothing may be doone without the Lords leaue. Infomuch that these people, liuing in the true condition of slavery want nothing but the name ther- of. In the time of the ancient gouernment, whē the kings wold altar any thing in the administration of the commonweal, vn- dertake a forren warre, or conclude a peace, then assembled together at one place 3. degrees of subiects, barrons, bishops, and Gentlemen: with consent of the greater part wherof, the kings had authority to confirme, abrogate or institute lawes, to denounce warre, conclude peace, and charge their Lande with impositions fit for their necessities.

This assembly is still in vse, but the freedom thereof is altered, nothing being at this day propounded to the assembled by the Archduke *Mathias*, the Emperors viceroy, but a contribution  
of



of money, to which demand at a day giuen, the nobility giue their resolution which in the year 96. and 97. when the turkish Empe. threatned to descend himselfe in person, was, that the Nobility would put themselues in *Campania* with their forces & promised for their subiects (for so they term their pefants) that euery housholder should send a man and giue 2. dolars of money for entertainment of souldiors: but the Turkish Emperor not comming in person, the gentiles did not further bind themselves, then their subiects should pay euery house one dollour, with which mony wer to be waged 20000. horse and foot, the half of which neuer appeared in field, ther being not at any time in arms vnder 2. generals of *Tensebach* in vper *Hung.* of *Palfeis* vpon the border of *Danubias* and of *Zerius* in nether *Hungerlād* aboute 9000. men, and at the battell of *Keresture* in 96. where were assembled the greatest forces that could be made by the 3. confederates, *Germany, Hungary, & Transilvania*; the combatants amounted not to aboute 51000. viz: out of *Hungerland* arriued 6000. and 10000. foot: out of *Transilvania* 6000. horse, & 12000. foote, out of *Germany*, 9500. horse and 7000. foot. The *Germans* were so well appointed horse and foot, as for quantity of armes and goodnes of horse, nothing could be better deuised; of the foot the third part were pikes armed compleate, the rest were shot, wherof three parts were muskets: the horsemen were all armed, many of whose curases wer musket proof: some of them caried fise pistols, most four, al two. That which was indeed a want amongst them was, that three partes were seruants according to the Germane custome, many of whome tooke pay for eight horses. The *Hungarish & Transiluanian* foote were all naked, part of whom carried firelockes of two foot, & the residue pikes of nine foot long, either armes of small or no use either in offence or defence, whether in forts, streights or *Campania*. The horsemen caried hollow launces of 12. foot long which they brake by the help of a leather thong fastned to their saddles: for the rest they were armed according to their means, the rich with curases, the mean with shirts, the poor with sleeues of male, and all with casks, which kind of arming as it maketh them much defectiue in prooffe, so are they of lesse worth for their



their horses, which (for their manner of riding, bridles & saddles) are more forceable to do execution vpon victory, to make excursions and to discouer, then they bee either to giue or sustaine a charge.

Their forces by water (or to speake more properly the Emperors) were much impaired by the losse of *Iaurinū* in 94. wher of 13. gallies, the Turks tooke ten; that losse is not yet repaired, the Emp. not hauing at this time aboue 5. gallies: which at the sieg of *Strigonium* durst not make head against three of the Turkes which came to releue the towne. There be moreover ordinarily vpon the Danuby 16. small barkes, 12. foote broad and 50. foot long, these carry in the prow two peeces, a croque loeg 3. foot and one pound ball; they are rowed by souldiers with twenty Oares on a side, hauing their halfe pikes standing by them, and their peeces hanging at their backs.

The captaine gouerneth the rudder, and the lieutenant attendeth on the peeces. These barkes (for that which I haue scene) are fitter for the skout and gard of the camp when it marcheth or lodgeth by the water side, then commodious for fight.

The Hūgarians presuming (more then reason) on their valor in *Campania*, haue euer neglected to fortifie their frontiers: the last and best inuented meanes, whereby small states preferue themselves from being ouerrun by the great; which error being better lookt to by the princes of *Austria* (who about fiftie yeares since obtained that kingdom) haue vsed some diligēce in this kind, yet with so small iudgement, as that no fortresse in the land, can iustly be said to be strong (except *Rab* recouered the 18. of March) the rest being either onely strong by scite as *Tockay*, *Villak*, *Strigonū*, *Comara*, *Altembnrgh*, *Papa*, *Canisio*, or by art, as *Castlenovo* and *Nonigrade*, or neither by art nor scite, as *Gvents*, and *Edenburgh* (passages of importance in nether *Hūgerland*) with almost infinit others. *Tocay*, *Altemburg*, *Papa* and *Canisia* are gouerned by the Germans: *Nonigrade*, *Castlenovo*, *Strigonū* and *Comara*, haue *Hungarish* gouernors, but the greatest part of their Garrisons be Dutch, a deuice peradventure as well to secure the Emperor of *Hungerland*, as to defende those places against the Turkish inrodes, to which seruice the *Hūgarians*



*garians* are more proper if they were prouided of like armes. The foresaid fortresses were wel prouided of all sorts of munition, Artillery, powder, bals, fireworkes and victuals, but not so well foreseene with defendants, as were conuenient against so mighty an enemy as the Turke, there beeing in the last appointed fortresse not aboue 1500. men, and in some not 200.

How abundant this prouince is in victualles, I say no more then hath bene mentioned in the beginning of this discourse, that it is one of the most plentifullest lands in Europ, furnishing the campe with aboundance, without borrowing of any neighbor country, for as for the bread, wine and Oats which *Austria* ministreth, that is onely when the campe is lodged by the riuer *Danubius*, which merchants transport thither, rather for their gaine, then that the campe suffereth any want, in want thereof. Artilery is sent them from the Emperors Arsenal in *Vienna*, themselues neither finding great pceces, nor making small; which likewise they haue out of Germanie, as also Powder and balles, a note of their exceeding negligence, hauing excellent mettals for this purpose which they transport into *Germany*.

The greatest fruit which the Emperor reapeth by the crown of *Hungerland* ariseth by the benefit of Mines, which yeild him yearly one Millon and a half of gilders, which cometh clearly into his treasury (the presidary souldiors being al paid with the contribution mony, as is the Arch-duke *Mathias* 30000. dollars yearly for his prouision of Viceroy) the Empe. *Maximilian* the 2. tooke into his handes the liuing of the Cathedrall and Colligiat churches, giuing to the Bishops and Cannons small stipends; by which deuice he gained yearely halfe a million of gilders. The religious houses are almost all abandoned for the feare the Monkes and Fryers haue of the Turke, except those of the gray fryers, to which order he is very fauourable. The villages likewise are many in part, some wholly desolate, the pefants retyring themselues vnder the Turke, where they liue with lesse agreuance then vnder the Emperor, the liuings of both are confiscat, which hath much increased the yearely reuenue, of that kingdome.



Now *Hungerland* being not in better termes to support it selfe against the irresistable power of the Turke, then appeareth in the premises, it may be reasonably demanded, what hath bin the cause that the Turke in a hundred and fifty yeares space (about which time he inuaded that countrey) hath not made an absolute conquest thereof: for hauing in this time not conquered about two third partes thereof, it is manifest that he must be defectiue in the meanes wherewith Princes augment their greatnesse, (viz:) either in treasure, munition, men, armes, or (that which is principal) in iudgment to embrace or prosecute occasion. For answer to which, I say, that the Turkish Emp. hath not about 400. yeares bin superior to the kings of *Hungerland* in treasure and munition, but to any other Prince in the world: so is he likewise in number of his captaines and priuate souldiers; but borrowing a coniecture from the managing of his actions, it is manifest that his counsell of warre (schooled about in the barbarous seruice of *Persia*) hath euer bin inferior to that of Christendome, as it is at this present. The Emperor hauing serued himselfe in these last occasions of Count *Charles Maunsfelt*, the Marquesse *Germanico Sauegnano*, *Alexander Malaspina*, *Francesco de monte*, the Barron *Swarzenburg*, *Georgio Basta*, *Ferranto di Rossi*, &c. All which, either by their experience in their Nether-landish warres, or dilligence in hystory, or else paines in both, haue long sithence obtained the names of great souldiors, which prouidence at this present in the Emperor, & heretofore in other Princes, hath in part preuented the Turkes deseigns in this conquest. Another hindrance hath beene the euill arming of his men, the greatest numbers whereof are naked, and which is as great a defect, none of them carry weapons of much offence except the Ianizers, who serue with musketes of longer and bigger bore: to which number of Ianiz. which be 12000. tripled) if you adde 20000. pikes, they wold make an army of greater consequence for the conquest of *Hungary* (which is secured by passages) then doth the multitude of horses, in which the Turke putteth so great confidence.

Lastly, as I must confesse that the Turk in all his attempts against *Hungary* hath vsed irreprouable iudgment, making no in-  
rode.



rode into that country, but when he had peace with his neighbors, and the Christians at diuision amongst themselves, atchiuing by such prouidence infinit victory; so can it not be denyed, that if he had profecuted the least aduantage, with constancy and celerity, befitting the occasion, the conquest of *Hungerland* had bin finished many yeares since. But of all negligences in this kind, there hath bene none of greater note then that of Mahomet the third, superior in the battell of *Kereſtur* in 96. by which victory not *Hungary* alone, but all *Austria* stode in great daunger: for the Christian army being irrecoverably ouerthrowne, and all the towns disfurnished both of defendants and munition, there wanted nothing in mans iudgment to the gaining of that kingdome but the speedy profecution of that compleat victory.

## Poland.

THIS kingdome was neuer so spacious as at this day, the great Duke-domes of *Latuania* and *Liuania* being ioyned thereto. It stretcheth from the floodes, *Notes* and *Odra* (which diuide it from *Marchia*) and *Odera* (which seperateth it from *Silesia*) to *Beresaz* and *Boristhenes*, which two parteth it from *Mosconia*. It reacheth from the *Balticke* sea, to the riuer *Niester*, which deuides it from *Moldania*, and to the mountaines *Carpathie*, which seperate it from *Hungary*. By this limitation (from the borders of *Silesia* to the frontires of *Mosconia*, (betweene the west part and the East) it containeth 120. German miles, & from the vttermoſt bounds of *Liuania*, to the borders of *Hungary*, not much lesse. So allowing the forme thereof to be round, it is farre larger then a man would take it to be. It contayneth many and goodly large prouinces, as *Polonia* the great, and the lesse, *Massonia*, *Prussia*, *Russia*, *Volinia*, *Liuania* and *Liuania*. Among these prouinces *Poland* was the proper inhabitation of the *Polonians*: but *Pruse*, part of *Pomeran*, *Poaalia*, *Volonia*, *Massonia* and *Liuania* haue bin obtained and gained by armes. *Lithuania* & *Samotgathia* (prouinces of *Russia*) were the inheritace of the house of *Iagello*. For in the yeare 1380. *Iagello* then Duke of *Lithuania*, tooke vnto wife the Princeſſe *Hedunge* the last of the bloode royall of *Polonia*, and was then installed king on



three conditions: the first, that he should become a Christian; second, that he should cause his people to doe the like; the 3. that he should vnite his principalities to *Poland*. These covenants were accomplished in our age when the race of *Iagello* ended. For when the people were vnwilling by depriving the heyres (which had right to the Empire of their iust inheritance) to subiect it to election, they alwaies called vpon the performance of the conditions, hoping that the nobility & the people of *Lituania* wold not loofe their honor and dignity by this mixture: yet at last, on the one side, when they consider the issue of their princes to faile (for *Sigismund Augustus* was the last heire male) and on the other side, fearing the force of the *Moscouite*, they agreed to vnion and election. In times past *Linonia* was the seat of the Dutch knights, and they had therein their chiefe gouernor, whom they tearmed the great Master: But in the yeare 1558. being spoyled of the greatest part of their territory by the great Duke of *Moscouie*, they fled to *Sigismund* king of *Poland*, who tooke them into his protection, & vntill the raigne of king *Stephen* 1582, the prouince was neuer regained.

For the most part *Poland* is a plain country, and (but for certaine mountaines, (rather hills then mountains) scituated in the lesser *Poland*, and deuiding it from *Prusland*) all the residue of the country stretcheth it selfe into most ample plaines, wherein are very many woods, especially in *Lituania*. The greater & lesser *Poland* are better inhabited then any other prouince of the kingdome. The like may be almost spoken of *Russia*, for the nearenes of the sea, concourse to the hauens, & commodiounesse of the riuers. *Prussia* and *Linonia* haue fairer cities, goodlier buildings, and by trafficke and concourse of Marchantes, greater plenty of riches. For when the Dutch knightes were Lords of the countrey, they builded cities like those of *Germany*, and all along the sea coast for the space of fourescore miles, many Castles and peeces of good esteeme. They haue many faire hauens of good worth, and are Lords of all the trafficke betweene *Poland* and the *Balticke* sea: which is a thing of great value and consequence. For the riuier *Vistula* arising in the extreamest



treamest bounds of *Silesia*, watereth all Poland the lesse, and part of the greater, *Mazonia* and *Prussia*, and then it falleth in to the *Balticke* sea below *Danske*, whether it transporteth the greatest quantity of Rie, Corne, Hony, and Wax of the whole kingdome, a iourney of foure hundered miles. From another coast the most famous riuer *Duna* arising out of the lake *Rutbenigo*, and parting *Linonia* into equall portions, falleth into the sea about *Riga*, a city of great concourse. There are in *Prussia* and *Linonia* many lakes, amongst which one is called the newe sea, one hundered miles long: in *Linonia* is a Lake called *Berbas*, more then foure hundred miles long: from thence spring the riuers, which running by *Pernonia* and *Narue*, make two notable hauens for Trafficke. Betweene these two cities stands *Ruualia*, giuing place to neither in beauty. *Samogithia* is more rude and barbarous then the other prouinces, and *Podalia* more barren: which is not to be attributed to the nature of the soile (for it is plentifull of those commodities, which the climate vnder which it lyeth can affoord) but to the cruelty of the *Tartars*, which so vex it with continuall inrodes, that the inhabitants are driuen either to flie for feare, or to be led away Captiues by these barbourous people.

The riches of Poland, are the aboundance of corne, and all sorts of graine, which growe there in so plentifull sort, that in the yeare 1590. and 1591. it releued not onely the bordering Nations, oppressed with famine and scarcity, but also yeelded some portion of releefe to the wants of the *Genouaies*, *Tuscane*, and *Rome*. It floweth with Honey and Waxe: And whereas in all these Notherly Nations of *Poland*, *Lithuania*, *Russia*, *Muscovia*, there are no Wines growing, instead thereof, Nature hath bestowed vppon them incredible quantities of honey, whereof these people do brew an excellent kind of Beuerage. The Bees make Honey either in woodes where they finde the trees made hollow by rottenesse or mans industry, or in hiues set in open field by the contry people, or in holes of the earth, or in any place where they can find neuer so small a liking.

It aboundeth with flax, hempe, with sheepe, with cattle and with horses. Amongst the beasts of the wood are found wilde



Oxen, wild horses, and the buffle, which cannot live out of the wood of *Nazonia*, the riches of the land consist in the salt-pits of *Bozema* and *Velisca*, in the territory of *Craconia*.

The revenues of the kingdom for the most part are equally divided between the Noblemen and the Gentlemen: for no man is left so rich by inheritance, that hee may exceede others above measure; and the greatest revenue of all exceedeth not five and twenty thousand Duckets. Onely the Dukes of *Curland* and *Regimount* exceede this meane. For although they are feudaries of the kingdom, and acknowledge the King as their superiour, yet are they not as liuely members of the state: they come not to the diets of the kingdom, they haue not their voices in the election of the prince, neither are they accounted as naturall Lordes of the kingdom, but for straungers, (as in truth they are:) the Duke of *Curland* being of the house of *Ketleri*, and the Duke of *Regimount*, of the family of *Brandenburge*.

All *Prussia* did belong to the Dutch Knights, who had their Great Maister resident there, who when hee was not able to withstand the force of the *Polonians*, yeelded himselfe feodary to King *Cassimere*: Afterwardes, when *Albert* of *Brandenburge* their Great Maister became a Protestant, hee was created Duke of *Prussia*; and the Countrey was divided into two partes; the one Regall, immediately holden of the Crowne, the other Ducall, allotted to *Albert* and his successours to holde by fealty. In the Kinges partition stande *Marieburge*, *Toronia*, *Culma*, *Varnia*, and *Danske*: in the Dutchy which yeilded 120. thousand Ducats yearely) the chiefe towne in *Regimont*: the Germanes call it *Conningsburgh*, and there the Duke keepeth his court.

The government of *Polonia* representeth rather an Aristocracie then a kingdom, because the nobility (who haue great authority in the diets of the kingdom) choose the King, and at their pleasure limite him his authority. They haue neyther law nor statute, nor forme of government written, but (by custom from the death of one prince to the election of another) the supreme authority resteth in the Archbishop of *Gesna*, who  
is



is president of the counsell, apointeth the diets, ruleth the Senate, and proclaimeth the new elected King. Before king *Stephen* erected new Bishops Palatines, and Castellanes in *Livonia*, fewe other besides the Archbishop of *Leopolis*, and his 13. Suffragans, 28. Palatines, and thirty of the chiefest Castelans, were present at the election of the new king. They holde an assembly of the states euery yeare, especially for two causes, the one to administer iustice in soueraigne causes, vnto which are brought appeales, from all the Iudges of the countrey: the other, to prouide for the defence and safety of the countrey, against their next enemies the Tartars, who make often incursions vpon them.

In the time of their diets, these men assemble in a place neere vnto the Senate house, where they chose two marshals, by whom (but with a tribuelike authority) they signifie vnto the Counsell what their requests are. Not long since their Authority and reputation grew so mighty, that they nowe carrie themselues as heads and gouernors, rather then Officers and Ministers of the publique decrees of the estates. There was one of the Counsell, that after their manner of *Clodius*, refused his Senators place to become one of these Officers. When a k. is to be chosen, these men do more & more limit his authority, not suffering it to stretch one iot farther then accustomed. But although the crowne of *Poland* be at the disposition of the Nobility, yet was it neuer herd that they reiected or ouerslipped the Kings successor, or transferred the kingdome into any other line more then once, when deposing *Ladislaus* (whome notwithstanding they afterward restored) they elected *Wenceslaus* the *Bohemian*. Likewise, they haue alwaies a regarde to the kings daughters, as of *Hedinge*, married by them to *Iagella*, and in our times of *Anne* giuen in marriage to king *Stephen*. It was no small cause of the aduancement of *Sigismund* the 3. to the crowne of *Polonia*, that he was the son of *Katherin* sister to *Sigismund* the Emperor, and of the foresaid *Anne*. And although the kingly Authoritie bee electiue, yet after hee is chosen, his power is absolut in many things, as to call the diets, appoint the times and place at his owne pleasure, to chose lay counsellors,



fellors, and nominate the Bishops, and whom he will haue to be of the priuy counfel: he is absolute disposer of the reuenue of the crowne, and Lord of those which hold of him immediately, but ouer the Tenants of the Nobility he hath no iurisdiction; he is absolute establissher of the decrees of the diets, and soueraign iudge of the Nobles in criminall causes; it is his power to reward and aduance who pleaseth him; to speake in a word, such is his valor, dexterity, and wisdom, such is his power, authority, and gouernment. As the *Polanders* say, the decrees of the King indure but three daies, and they conuerse not with him as Cozens, as in *France*, but as Brethren. And as the King hath absolute Authority ouer them, which immediately hold of him, so the nobility dispose absolutely of their vassals, on euery of whom they exercise more then kingly Authority, in maner as vpon slaues. In establishing their kingdom, they haue done one thing woorthy the noting, which is, that as the *Romaines* increased their name and Dominion, by communicating the lawes and honors of *Italy*, and the City of *Rome* to other cities, yea whole prouinces: so the Kinges of *Polonia*, haue enlarged, vnited, and strengthened their estate, by participating the priuiledges of the *Polish* nobility to those prouinces, which eyther they haue conquered by armes, or otherwise purchased, gracing the Nobles thereof with fauours equall to any bestowed on the *Polish* Nation. By this equallizing, king *Lawdislaus* strongly vnited *Russia* and *Podalia* to *Poland*; *Sigismound Augustus*, *Lituania*: *Stephen* *Liuonia*: for equallity in offices and promotions knitteth affection in peace and warre.

The force of this kingdom (as of others) consisteth in grain, Coine, Foot-men, Horffe-men, Armor & Munition. Of grain we haue spoken of already. In coine it is not very rich: for excepting *Danske*, they haue neuer a Mart-town worthy estimation; and the wares that are brought from *Prussia* and *Liuonia*, do not enrich the kingdome with ready money; yea they doe hardly suffice to barter with the *English* and *Flemish* for cloth, Silkes, or Woolles, or with the *Spanish*, *Portuguize* and other Marchants, for Sugars, spices, fruites, and Malueseies. For when the country is not giuen to Trafficke, nor the citties to buy



buy and sell, nor the people to labour, and the nobility is very gallant, prodigall in expences, spending more then their reuenues in diet and apparel, and the seasoning of their meates (for the *Polanders* vse more spices than any other Nation :) & theyr wine, their silke, and the greatest part of their wollen cloth is brought from forren nations, how can the kingdome be rich in siluer? For in transporting of much ware, and returning of little, consisteth the wealth of euery dominion; gathering together (by venting home-bred commodities) the coine of forren nations, and keeping it once brought in, from passing abroad againe. In this practise consisteth the wealth of *Naples* & *Mil-lain*: for *Naples* sendeth to sea great store of corne, wine, oyle, silke, woad, horses, fruits, and such like commodities, which bring in huge masses of forren come: *Mil-lain* supplyeth the want of other Prouinces, with corne, Rice, cloths, ironworks, wares of all sorts; and returneth little againe. If the kingdom of *Naples* and *Sicill* were as well stored with artificiall workmanship, as they are prouided with corne and wealth, no other kingdome could compare with them.

To returne to *Poland*, notwithstanding their riches are nor so small as some think they are; for the reuenues of the crowne raised of the mines of salt and siluer, amount yeerly to six hundred thousand ducats. True it is, that *Sigismund Augustus* pawned part of his reuenues, and *K. Henry* a month before his fight (to bind some part of the Nobility vnto him) solde vnto them more then three hundred thousand ducats of yeerly rent. It is lawfull for the king by sales of escheats falling to the crown, to purchase livings for himselfe, and of the said reuenues to retain great portions to his proper vse, and spare his owne expences: for when the king with his court abideth in *Lithuania*, the *Lithuanians* defray the charges: the like is done in most places of *Poland*. He that weigheth with himselfe that the reuenues of *Scotland*, *Narue*, and *Sardinia*, exceed not yeerly one hundred thousand Duckets, nor the kingdom of *Aragon*, to yeeld aboue one hundred thousand Crownes euery three yeares; cannot lightly esteeme of the reuenues of this kingdome; yet the king might raise his reuenues to a higher rate and reckoning, if hee



were lesse bountifull to his Palatines and Castellanes: for most commonly he bestoweth on them two parts, and three parts, yea now and then the whole profits arising in their gouernements; but in the time of war (yet by the decree of the assemblies of the kingdome) the king doth lay grieuous impositiōs and taxes on the people, which are eyther leuyed of the provinces, or of the excise of victuall: and these tillages haue amounted to such a reckoning, that therewith K. *Stephen* sustained the burden of a most heavy three yeares warre against the great Duke of *Moscouy*: yea the gentlemen for defence of the kingdome, are bound to serue at their owne charges. These serue on horse, som armed as our own men at armes, som more light, some like the *Tartars*, and those they tearme *Cossaches* or aduenturers, trained vp to steale, to depopulate, wast, or turne things vpside downe. These gentlemen serue in the field gallantly furnished, attired in cassocks and hose shining with gold and siluer, and a thousand other colours: they adorne themselves with plumes and feathers of Egles, with the skins of Leopards and Beares, and with many banners and party-colourd ensignes. These and such like furnitures, do cause them to be discerned of their fellowes, make them seeme terrible to their enemies, and doth encourage their minds to fiercenesse & prowesse: Their horse are but smal, yet very nimble, and far more couragious then the Dutch. It is thought that vpon necessitie *Poland* is able to raise 100000. horse, and *Lithunia* seuentie thousand, but far inferiour in goodnes to the *Polish*. They haue so great trust in the great number of their horse, that nothing fearing the power of any enemies, they regard not the building of fortresses, but resolue that they are able to defend their countrey, their wiues and children, their liberty and goods, in the open field against any prince whatsoever; boasting that in eyther chance of war, they neuer turned their backes to their enemies. *Sigismund Augustus* laboured, that in the diets of the kingdome, order might be taken for the fortifying of *Cracovia*, because of the neighborhood of the Emperor: but he coulde neuer effect it, partly because it should not giue their kings opportunity of absolute authority, and tyranicall Empery, partly because



Because they think themselves by noble corage sufficiently able to defend the kingdom. They haue no infantry; for al the people of the kingdome is deuided either into marchants and artificers (which inhabit the cities) or labourers which liue in the countrey, in such subiection as we spake of before: & this is the reason that the gentlemen onely go to the war, and will not in any case serue on foot; but alwaies when occasion serueth, they do giue wages vnto the *German* and *Hungarie* footmen; and of these, king *Stephen* in his iourny into *Linonia*, entertained vnder his colours little lesse thē 16000. to conuey their great ordinance: For pioners they vse the Tartars, and their owne vplandish people. The kingdom is sufficiently stored with great ordinance and all furniture belonging thereto, of which it can suffer no manner of scarcitie: first, because the gentlemen and noblemen keepe many in their castles; Next for the neighborhood of Germany, which is exceeding rich in mettall to cast great ordinance; and plentifulfull of Artificers to forge any thing belonging to the vse of warre. And though it is not vsual to see many castles in *Polonia*, yet the fortresses of *Leopolis* and *Camentzie* in *Russia*, the Castle of *Cracovia* in the lesse *Poland*, *Polecensis* in the frontiers of *Mesconia*, *Mariēbourge* and some other townes in *Linonia*, are pieces of great strength. These forces of *Polonia* (which we haue spoken of) are such in quantity and qualitie, that few Nations in Europe can equall them; none surpasse them: one thinge they want, and that is celerity: for to the sure strengthning of euery kingdom, foure things are required: that is to say, that their force be of their owne subiects, that it be populous, valiant, and quicke: their own, because it is dangerous trusting a stranger; populous because of reenforcements after checks or ouerthrows; valiant, because number without courage litle auaile; yea it bringeth forth confusion; quicke, that they lightly moue, and speedily be drawne whethet necessity enforceth. The last of these four vertues the *Polacks* want; that is, celerity: which commeth 2. waies, one by the authority of the prince, the other by readie mony. The king hath no power to determine any thinge; to denounce warre, to impose taxes, or to gather trefure without



the consent of the parliament, and this parliament (where it is necessary that many be present) is like an engine made of many peeces, which without losse of time can neuer readily be ioyned together, or moued forward. For in warlike affayres those Princes make best speed, which are best able to cōmand and haue most mony in readines: otherwise in appointing and ordering the diets, & deuising that the actions may answer the counsels; then in executing, and lastly in prouiding of money there hapneth such losse of time, that litle is left for the beginning of the iourny, much lesse to accōplish. Besides the Barons & Nobles are at such charges, and tarry so long when they are there, that at their departure they haue little left to maintaine war. It may be that for the defence of the state, quicker & readier resolution would be taken, because of the imminent danger fatall in generall. But for the conquest of any forren place, I belecue they wold proceed with like slownes & irresolution, for the hope of good doth not so much moue vs, as the fear of euil: yet hath our age seen (in the raigne of *Sigis. Augustus*) the *Moscouite* to haue conquered the prouinces of *Moloch* & *Smo- lock*, and that without resistaunce or reuenge, a cowardize ill be seeming so high a king, and so mighty a state: as likewise he inuaded *Liuonia* without impechment, which had shadowed it selfe vnder the protection of the said *Sigismund*. In the daies of *Henry of Aniew*, *Iohn* Prince of *Moldania* (euen he that with an vndanted spirit and famous victory) held war against the turk, was shamefully forsaken of them, contrary to the conenants of confederacy between him and this *Sigis.* concluded. Yet must we needs confesse that such as is the corage, valor, & reputatiō of the prince; such is the resolution, alacrity, and forces of the Polacks; of themselues populous, valiant, and coragious. *Stephen Bathor* hath good testimony hereof, in whose time *Polonia* not onely maintained the honor of a K. sufficient to defend it selfe from forren armes, but also to make conquestes of great matters from most potent enemies. And seeing we haue spokē of celerity, a vertue most necessary for euery state, it shal not be amiss to speake of the causes of celerity, which (as is aforesaid) are two, viz: the reputation of the Prince, which giueth it life,  
and



and store of coine, which pteserues it in action : for wee haue scene in most mightiest armies, the body by the slownes of the head, to haue spent the time most idely, and very famous victories for want of mony, to giue continuall motion to the army, to haue brought forth small or no effects. Besides, the disposition of a souldier is a great help hereunto : for no man can truely praise the *German* and *Bohemian* footemen for celerity ; but this cōmendation without doubt is proper to the Italian, Spaniard, and Frenchmen, not onely for that they are of better constitution of body, but for that (which in warre is al in all) they are better contented to liue with a litle : thogh they want coine they are not discouraged, neither wax sicke vvith fruits, if flesh be wanting ; and happen what may, they longer and better can indure hardnes and scarfity . Their riding light armed is of more execution then armed at all peeces, and their argolitires more seruiceable then lanciers : for which cause the French also in their late broiles haue giuen ouer their launces, wherein of old did consist the glory of their armes, and taken themselves to the pistol. But to what purpose they haue thus done, let another dispute, for I say not, that a light armed man is absolutly to be preferd before a man at armes in chances of war ; but onely affirme, that he is more actiue and more ready : yea the goodnes of the horse is of great consequence. For the *Flanders* horse far excelleth the *Frieslander* & *German*. The *Hungary* horse, the *Polonian*, the *Turkie* horse, the *Genet*: the *Barbary* horse is more speedy then the rest. Between both is the courser of *Naples*, who though he be not so swift as the *Spanish Genet*, yet he is better able to indure trauell, & to bear the weight of armor, not becomming ouerslow therewith. To speak truth, experience manifesteth the *German* horse, by reason of their slow pace to work smal effect, either to pursue the flying enemy, or swiftly flie from their executing aduersary : for if the *Wallachiã Hungarian*, *Polish*, *Turkish*, *Morish* or *Barbary* horsemē shuld break the *Germans*, they cannot escape, & if it hapen the *German* to ouerthrow them, they are as vnable speedily to pursue : for they charge sloly & retire heauily. So in fights at sea, ships of burdē are of smal seruice, because if wind want, they cānot be moued,



the *Galleasses* are somewhat better, yet performe little more, but the best of all is the galley for his swift sterage. And for prooffe heereof, wee haue seene the Nauy of the Christians consisting of great ships to haue spent the better part of Summer & warlike season in preparations only, and on the contrary, the Turkish fleetc soon furnished, and speedily put to sea; of such advantage is spare diet, and needfull prouision of the Turkish a-faires, and so discommodious is gluttony to the proceedinges of the Christians, for wine and other delicates onely are as troublesome to the Christians, as the whole prouision for a campe, to the Turkish armies. Therefore let no man maruaile if they march in all their iournies excellent wel furnished with ordinance, shot, gun-powder, and all necessaries; for at land they haue their carriages laden onely with prouision, at sea ships, and not with wine, pullets, and such needles vanities. At a word, they go to the war to fight, and not to fil their bellies

*The description of Affricke or Libia.*



That tract of the habitable worlde trending towards the South, which at this day we call *Aphrica*, and the Græcians *Libias*, containeth one of those three diuisions, which were knowne to the Ancient, and yet not fully discovered, partly in regard of vast desarts impossible to be trauelled by Land, and wholly couered with wind-driuing-sands in manner of a tempestious sea, and partly in regard of the long, tedious, and vncertaine Nauigation, vndertaken by fewe, discovered but litle, and knowne by none. The cheefest whereof were *Hanno* the *Carthagenian*, and *Eudoxius* a banished man vnder *Ptolomeus Latirus* king *Alexandria*. But in this latter age it hath bin wholly Nauigated by the *Portugals*, and sufficiently by them discouered, especially from the pillars of *Hercules*, almost to the verie entrance of the *Arabian* gulfe. And the first of them, that passed the *Cape* of good *Hope*, was *Rasco de Gama*, in the yeare of our Lord 1497. from whence continuing his course to *Calecut*, and so to the residue of the *East Indies*, to the vnspeakable honor



nor and inrichment of the *Portugall* Nation.

I wil not spend time in discourse, vpon the Originall of the name, *Quia pauca ciuitates*, nor *intoriginem*, but it is scituated, in manner of a *Penisule*, conioyned with a small notch of Land, lying betweenc the *Mediterranean* sea, and the *Arabian* gulfe. It exceedeth Europe at least by twice, but not halfe so well inhabited; and the reason is, for that it is not so temperate for inhabitation.

Many places lying wast, somewhere for want of water, somewhere for want of manurance, somewhere for abundance of light sande and sterile dust, and all subiect to the immoderate heat of the scorching sun. And the Nature of these sandes are such, that sometimes they lie as mountaines in one part of the desarts, and presently vpon the rising of any gale of wind, they are carried most furiously to another, in maner of a violent and terrible tempest. And last of al, the increase of venomous Serpentes and deuouring creatures, is so generall, that in some places no man will, in some places no man dare to manure or inhabite the adioyning countrey, although most fruitfull. By reason whereof the Region seemeth rather wast, then inhabited, but where it is manured, it is exceeding fruitfull, and full of inhabitation, especialy toward the North side, which looketh toward Europ, and alongst the seacoasts between the promontory of good *Hope* & *Cape Niger*, where the plaines, mountaines, and vallies are singular fruitfull and pleasant, as places inioying the benefit of a perpetuall spring-tide.

Our moderne *Cosmographers* vppon the Northside bounde it with the *Mediterranean* & *Herculean* seas, vppon the East with the *Arabian* Gulfe, and that *Isthmus* of *Asia* that lyeth between the said *Mediterranean* and *Arabian* seas: vpon the South, beat the Waues of that great Ocean, especialy towards the *Cape* of good *Hope*, who deriuing his denomination from the country adioyning, (viz:) *Ethiopia*, is termed the *Ethiopian* sea: vpon the West on this side the *Equinoctial* lyeth the *Atlantique* Ocean, and beyond that is termed the *Ethiopian*.

The celestiall scituation, with the description of the renowned mountaines, famous Riuers, and remarqueable *Capes*,  
all



all woorthy to bee registred, if for breuity so small a Volume did not perswade the contrary. I omit to bee read ouer in diuerse Authors by those, who desire to make deepest progressions in this kind of study.

The liuing creatures both tame and wild which this and no other climat affordeth, by the testimony of *Leo Affric.* are many. As first the Elephant, a docible & wild beast, found in many parts of the continent. The *Giraffa* most admirable fierce, & sildom seene. The Camel is a gentle beast and tame, wherein the wealth of the Arabians doth chiefly consist. The *Barbary* horse, and the wild horse, whereon many of the Arabians inhabiting the deserts; do feed. The *Dant* or *Iant* resembleth the Oxe, and of his hide are wrought impenetrable Bucklers. Here likewise liue the wild Oxe, and the wild Assie. The *Adimain* is like the Ram, but in stature resembling the Assie, with ears long & flagging. The tame Oxen that liue on the mountaines are smal bodies, but laborfome & strong. Their Rams differ onely in their tailes from ours, being most broad, & containing 20. p. in wait. Ther are a kind of Lyons which in many places dare to aduente vpon 200. horsmen. The Leopards are strong & cruel, yet sildom hurt they men. The beast which the Arabians term *Dabul*, and the Affricans *Iesef*, is a base and simple beast, in fashiõ and bignes resembling the wolfe, but in feet and thighs like a man. This beast wil dig mens carcasses out of their graues & deuoure them, towards al other creatures he is harmles. The sorts of Apes are very diuers. Here liueth the Mus-cat, and the wilde Cony. The strange fishes & other watery creatures found in *Nilus*, *Niger*, and other principal riuers are innumerable. The *Ambara* for his shape and hugenes is prodigious, as a creature containing 25. foot in length. The *Hippotame* a beast like an horse, and as big as an Assie, liueth aswell in waters, as on the land, & by his often striking of boates laden with Merchandize, with his sharpe prickels, sinketh them vnder water. The Sea-oxe differeth nothing from the Land-oxe saue in smalnes of stature. The Tortoyse liueth in desarts, and are found oftentimes as big as a barrel. The Crocodile resembleth the Lacerta, & is xii. cubits long in body, and as many in taile. Most huge Dragons & poysonfome are often seene.



Fiue feuerall Nations inhabit this part of the world, the *Casseres*, that is, people without law: the *Moors*, the *Abessines*, the *Egyptians*, the *Arabians*, and the *Affricans*, whereof some are white, and some black. In Religion some are likewise *Gentils*, and worship Idols, some Mahumetans, some Christians, & some Jewes. All which Nations some writers wil haue deriued from *Cham* the son of *Noe*, excepting some certaine *Arabians*, of the seed of *Sem*, which entred *Affricke* after the residue. And these *Arabians* are distinguished into many families, vse diuers and many habitations, and possesse as many regions, some dwelling by the sea-side (properly tearmed *Arabians*) some in the vpland, and they are called *Baduini*. Others in innumerable swarmes lead a rogissh life with their wiues and children in the wildernes, dwelling in tents instead of houses, altogether giuen to spoile, and alike infestious to neighbor and trauelor, which is the cause that the inhabitants dare not trauell alone, but stay the time of the *Carouan*, that is, the whole assembly of the Marchants, traelling vppon Camels and Asses all in one company at a set time of the yeare, for fear of the theeuish and rogissh *Arabians*.

As the nations are diuers, so is their languages: the cheefe they cal *Aquel amarig*, that is, the noble Language, and of the *Arabians* inhabiting *Affrica*, the *Barbarian* language. And this is the true and proper idiome of the *Affri*, vtterly different frō the residue, saue that it saureth of many arabique words. The *Gnabets*, *Zombati*, *Ghineans*, the *Mellids* and *Gagonti* vse the *Sungail* language. The *Guberits*, *Canontes*, *Chesone*, and the other Black-mores vse the *Guber* tongue. The *Abessines* haue their proper speech. Moreouer the *Chaldean*, *Egyptian*, and *Arabian* tongues, with another compounded of all three, is in vse in some places: & by the intercourse of marchants many are accustomed to speake the *Moorish*, *Turkish*, *Spanish*, and *Italian* languages. All the sea Townes from the *Mediterranean* to the mount *Atlas* speake the *Arabian* corruptly, except the kingdome and Citty of *Marocco*, which wholly speake the *Barbarian*.

The Noblest part at this day is called *Barbary*, and contey-



neeth all that sea tract that reacheth from *Egypt* to the *Gadi-*  
*ran* sea, inhabited by the Arabians, and including diuers pro-  
 uinces. At first it was vnder the Empire of the Greekes. Se-  
 condly vnder the *Vandals*, and lastly vnder the *Saracens* and  
*Arabians*, who left them their language. Some part thereof at  
 this day is subiect to the Turke, some to the Xeriffe, and some  
 to the king of Spaine.

Their manners are not much differing from those of the *A-*  
*rabians*, but that they are more ciuill, ambitious, light, subtile,  
 trecherous, wrathfull, boasters, suspitious, and exceeding iea-  
 lous. They are very actiue and ready horsemen, but not able to  
 indure labor.

*Babary* is diuided into foure kingdomes, *Marocco*, *Fez*, *Te-*  
*lessine* and *Tunes*. *Sannus* addeth a fift, viz. *Barca*. Into what  
 and how many shires or prouinces these portions are diuided,  
 let him read *Leo Afer*, that desire the particulars. *Numidia* is  
 the second part of Affricke, and is tearmed by *Leo Afer Bile-*  
*dulgerid*, that is, the Almond country. But it is of lesse estimati-  
 on then the residue, and therefore inioyeth not the Tytle of a  
 kingdome. It was once disinhabited, as was *Barbary*, & at this  
 day the Townes are but small, base, scattering, and very farre  
 distant one from another. Those places that they manure lye  
 beyonde *Atlas*, and are hot and dry, but beeing watered with  
 certaine streames discending from the mount, they yeelde Al-  
 monds in abundance, scarcety of corne, nor any fruitfull tree be-  
 sides, except the *Palma*. Those grounds that border vpon *Libia*  
 are inuironed with craggy mountaines destitute of water, and  
 all maner of trees, except some fruitles shrubs at the foot of the  
 hils. As for infinite store of Scorpions & serpents, it is so ouer-  
 layed, that many are daily found dead by their venemous by-  
 ting. In old time they were idolatrous, but at this day they are  
 irreligious, ignorant, base, trecherous, mankillers, and thees,  
 vtterly destitute of any ciuill knowledge, saue that some fewe  
 of them addict themselues to the study of the lawes. The Ara-  
 bians that liue amongst them, loue poësie, and are more ciuill,  
 but very poore. They liue long, but their teeth soone perrish  
 with eating of Almondes, and their sight faileth by the anoy-  
 ance



ance of the sands. They know not the French disease, yea if an infected person should but come into the country, it were phisicke inough to clear him. Their chief food is Barly, Almonds, and other most course food, as for bread they neuer tast it but on festiualls. And that corne which they haue, they exchange for Almonds. *Lybia*, the third part of *Affrick*, was once called *Sarra*, that is desart, and so it is, a desart, dry, and sandy country, vtterly bereaued of springs and riuers, vnfruitful, and those which they haue, they keepe in standing pooles, & those both but rare and salt. Therefore the Marchants which are to trauel ouer those countries, must prouide carriage for water, for otherwise man and beast might perish, as not possible to finde one drop in six or seuen daies iourney. By this region lyeth the way from *Fez* to *Tombut*, and from *Telensise* to *Agadas* a country of the Moores. Not past one hundred yeares since they that were to trauell from *Fez* to *Cair*, were accustomed to trauel by these desarts; but vpon the rising of the South winde, the wels (although intrenched with skins and bones of Camels) were so ouerwhelmed with sandes, that the Marchants not able to find neither signe nor token of way nor water, haue perrished in the iourney through extreame thirst.

Some Riuelets they haue descending out of *Atlas*, and standing in very many Lakes, as the Lakes of *Gir*, and *Ighidi Gheogan*, to the great comfort of the merchants, and preservation of the Inhabitants.

They liue without any forme of law, in manner of bruit beastes, leading a miserable life. What learning meaneth they know not, and vertue they absolutely desie. They are altogether addicted to hunting, notorious theeues, and most dangerous to merchants: Yet there liue amongst them many *Affricans*, and *Arabians*, ciuill and curteous, entertainers of straungers, and true of their words. In comparison of the other *Affricans* they liue but a short time, the strongest bodies not exceeding the yeares of sixty.

Yet they are very healthfull, slender and leane of body, ryding vpon camels, and feed very sparingly, as also very patient of thirst and hunger. Bread they know not, but liue most vpon



milke, Camels flesh, and Butter. Their clothing is a short rayment and rude, scarce covering their middle. Some of them cover their heads with a black cloth in fashion like a *Dulipant*. Their nobility goeth attyred in kind of a long garment like a shirt, made of blew Cotton wooll, with large sleeces. In stead of beds they vse the green bankes, or mats wrought of bulrushes. Their tents are wrought either of Chamblet, or a course kind of wooll, which they find amongst the date-trees.

This Region taketh his name either from the colour of the inhabitantes, or from the Riuer *Niger*. Some writers affirme that (excepting Egypt) this countrey was first inhabited, and yet at this day is scarcely knowne, although in latitude it containeth very neere 400. miles. By reason of the scituation nere the *Torrid zone*, it is extreame hot, yet not altogether uninhabited. Yea it is most full of inhabitants, and in some places alwaies spring-tide. On this side the Riuer *Canaga*, which is the boulder of these blacke people, it is most dry, sandie and desert, but beyonde for the most part most fruitfull, by reason of their continuall letting in of water from the riuer *Niger*, running through the middest of the Countrey. Whereby all the grounds, which lie neere thereunto, or such as participate of this water, are exceeding fruitfull, both in graine, Cattle, scarlet die, Cucumbers, Onions, and such like sawces. But they haue no trees, saue one which bringeth foorth fruit not much vnlike a Chest-nut, but somewhat bitterer. About the bankes of *Niger* there are no mountaines, nor valies, but many woods stored with Elephantes and other strange creatures, watered with many lakes and mists, compacted with the ouerflowings of *Niger*. Here raine neither profiteth, nor dannifieth, but in the ouerflowing of *Niger* consisteth their welfare, euen as it doth in Egypt by the inundation of *Nilus*. For euen as *Nilus*, so this 40. daies from the 25. of Iune increfeth, and in so many againe falleth, so that during those fourescore daies, they sayle ouer the whole land in Botes and Barges.

The inhabitants deriued their Originall from *Chus*, the son of *Cham*, the sonne of *Noe*, whom at the first they worshipped as Lord of heauen. Afterward they receiued the Iewish lawes,  
and



& persevered therein many years, until they receyued the Christian faith. But at such time as the Mahumetan superstition impoysond the whol confines of *Libia*, they also turnd, excepting some few prouinces, which to this day obserue the Christian rites. Towards the Ocean sea they are all Idolaters and Gentiles. Generally they all lead a brutish life, farre different from the instinct of reason, from imployment of wit, and niamrary sciences. They are exceeding luxurious, by reason wherof the country swarmeth with Whores. But they that inhabite the good townes are a great deale more neat and ciuill then these other Affricans; They liue not long, yet retaine their wonted vigor, and the soundnesse of their teeth to their last gaspe.

The countrey was once diuided into fiue and twenty kingdomes, now reduced to three; that is to say, the kingdome of *Tombut*, the kingdome of *Borneo*, and the kingdome of *Gaoga*. Besides *Gualata* hath its proper king.

*Gualata* is distant from the Ocean 100. miles, it is very small and containeth but three burroughes with some territorie of ground, hamlets, and date-bearing fields thereunto adiacent. The inhabitants are most black, louers of strangers, exceeding poore, without any gouernment, gentry, or Iudges.

*Tombut* taketh his name of a citty so called, and lyeth beyond the riuer *Canaga*. It is exceeding plentifull of Corne, Cattle, Milk, and Butter. Salt they haue none, but buy it at a deer rate at the hands of Merchants. Of horse they haue infinite store. The king thereof is very rich, as a Prince rainging ouer many other kingdomes, and is Lord of some Ingots which weygh 1300. pound weight.

He keepeth a royall court, garded with 3000. horsemen, and many more foot, armed with bowes and impoysoned arrowes. Hee is an vtter enemy to the Iewes, and doth not onely forbid them his kingdom, but likewise confiscateth those his subjects goods of whom he vnderstandeth, that they vse any trafficke with any of that Nation. He maintaineth a great number of learned men. The buildings of his imperial city are built of mud and thatch, except one faire Temple, and the Kings palace, which are wrought of stone and lime. Sweet springs are



euery where to be found in this countrey: And the people are curteous, and merry, spending the thirde part of their time in songs and dauncing. The people are very rich, especially the stranger. Infinit sorts of *Manuscripts* are brought hether from *Barbary*, which are here sold at very high rates.

*Gaga* is also the name of the chiefe citty, where the King resideth. It is very large, without walles, and distant 400. Miles from *Tombut*. The buildings are very base, except those which pertaine to the king and Nobility. Fresh water is heere very frequent, with plenty of Corne, Rice and flesh; but of fruites except the Melon and the Citron, great scarcety. The Marchants are rich, and their wares sumptuous and precious, but excessive deere.

*Bornū* is a large country, hath vpon the West *Guangara*, and towards the East it reacheth almost 500. miles. In some places it is plaine, in some mountainous. The plaine country is replenished with many Market Townes, from whence commeth great store of corne. The mountaines are inhabited with neat-headers, and Sheepe-headers, and bring forth mill, and other fruits to vs vnknowne. The inhabitantes are Infidels, liuing like beasts, neither knowing their proper wiues, nor their own children. They haue no names at all, but are distinguished by bodily accidents. The king is a mighty Prince, as maintaining three thousand horse, and infinite troopes of foote, but hath no other reuenuue, then what he taketh by force from his enemies.

*Gaoga*, lyeth betweene the kingdome of *Bornū*, and the deserts of *Nubia*, stretched out 500. miles in length, and bredth. The inhabitants are vnciuill, ignorant, and most rude, especially the mountaners. They go naked all saue their priuities. Their houses are builte of boughes and leaues, hauing great flocks of cattle, which they preserue with much care.

These are the chiefe, the residue are not worth the reading; for nothing can be spoken vnto, but their barrenesse or fertility, their pouerty or riches, blessinges and curses, peculier more or lesse to euery Nation.



Amongst all the potentates of *Affricke*, I do not think that there can any one be found to excell this Prince, either in wealth or power. His dominion containeth all that tract of *Mauritania*, which the Romaines called *Tingitana*, and stretcheth from the promontory *Bayadir* to *Tanger*, and from the *Atlantike* Ocean to the riuer *Mulim*. In which progresse is contained the best portion of all *Affricke*, the best inhabited, the pleasantest, the fruitfulest, and most ciuill. Herein amongst others are the famous kingdoms of *Fez* and *Marocho*, the one diuided into seuen prouinces, the other into eight. The countrey is deuided into plaines and mountaines. The mountaines are inhabited with a fierce people, rich in pastures and cattle, and possessing a great part of the lesse & bigger *Atlas*. Between the greater *Atlas* and the Ocean lieth the plaine country, and therein the royall city of *Marocho* distaunt fourteene Miles from *Atlas*, watered with many springs, brookes, and riuers. In times past this city contained one hundred thousand households, and was the chiefest of *Affricke*, but by little and little is decayed, and now lyeth more wast, then inhabited. In the kingdome of *Marocho* besides others is *Tedsi*, a town of 5000 households, and *Tagoast* of 8000. *Taradent* gineth place to none for noblenes, and trafficke, though for largenesse and circuit. It is scituated betweene *Atlas* and the Ocean in a plain, sixteen miles long, and little lesse broad, abounding with sugar and all kind of prouisiō. The good regard and continual abode which *Mahumet. Xeriffe* made in this place, did greatly augment and innoblissh this towne. Beeing past *Atlas*, you enter into most batle plaines, wherein how fruitfull the soile is of sugar, oliues, cattell and all good things, can hardly be spoken.

The kingdome of *Fez* likewise containeth diuers prouinces excellent well peopled. Amongst them is *Alga*, a territory of 80 miles long and sixty broad: *Elabut* is 100. miles long, and sixty broad. *Eriff* is a prouince wholly mountainous: therein are said to be three and twenty branches of the mount *Atlas*, inhabited for the most part with sauadge and barberous people. *Carat* is drie and rocky, more like *Lybia* then *Barbary*. Now because  
the



the glory and maiesty of this kingdome consisteth especially in the city of *Fez*, I thinke it not amisse to describe the scituation thereof. It is deuided in two parts, a litle distant one from another, the one is called the old towne, the other the newe. A little riuer likewise deuideth the old towne in two parts. The east part is called *Beleyda*, containing four thousand households the west part is commonly called old *Fez*, and hath fourescore thousand and vppward, stāding not far from the new *Fez*, which likewise hath 8. thousand. Olde *Fez* standeth partly vpon hills, partly on plaines, and hath in it fifty Mahumetan Temples of admirable largnesse. All of them haue their fountaines and pillars of Alablaster and Iasper: besides these, there are 600. of a lesse sort: amongst which, that which is commonly called *Carracen* is most beautifull, built in the hart of the Citty, and containing halfe a mile in compasse: In breadth it containeth seauenteene arches, in length 120. borne vppe by 2500. white Marble pillers: vnder the chiefest arch where the Tribunall is kept, hangeth a most huge lampe, encompassed with 110. lesser. Vnder the other arches hang very great Lamps, in each of which burn 150. lights. They say in *Fez* that all these Lampes were made of the bells which the *Arabians* brought out of *Spain* who not only made prey of bells, but of columns, pillers, brasse, marble, and whatsoeuer was rich, first erected by the *Romans*, and afterwards by the *Gothes*. Ther are in *Fez* aboue 200. scholes, 200. Innes, and 400. water-milles, euery one driuen with foure or fise wheeles. There are also diuers colledges, among which, that which is called *Madarac* is accounted for one of the most finest peeces of workmanship throughout all *Barbary*. There are likewise 600. conduits, from whence almost euery house is serued with water. It were a long labour to describe their *Burse* (they call it *Alcacer*) it is a place walled about, hauing 12. gates, and deuided into 15. walks, where merchantes meet to dispatch their busines vnder tents. Their delightfome gardens and pleasant Parkes, with the Rillets and waters running through them, I can hardly describe.

For the most part the king keepeth his court at *Fez*, wherein he hath a castle, pallaces and houses adorned with rare workmanship,



manship, rich and beautifull euen to his harts desire. He hath away vnder ground from the old towne to the new. For greatnes and statelines thereof by the grant of former kinges, it inioyeth this strange priuiledge, not indure any siege, vnlesse the citizens shall thinke their prince for strength and forces, able and equall to cope with his enemy: if not, without reproach of treason, they may yeeld their citty before their enemy approach within halfe a mile. This haue they done, that so goodly and so flourishing a citty shoulde not suffer foile vnder pretext of vnprofitable temporizing.

It is of no lesse moment for scituation, store of corne, oyle, flax, and eattle, then for pleasantnesse of territory, and plentie of water. The wals are very stiong, and defended with manie bulwarkes. The inhabitants are very thrifty, giuen to trafficke, and especially to the making of clothes of wooll, silk and cotton. The kings eldest sonne is called the prince of *Mequinez*. Though the kingdome haue no good hauens vpon the *Mediterranean* sea, yet great store of Englishmen and Frenchmen resort to *Alarach*, *Aguer*, and other ports in the Ocean, whereof some belong to the kingdome of *Fez*, and other to the kingdome of *Marocho*. They carry thether armor and other wares of Europ, which they barter for sugar and other commodities. Now how the kingdomes of *Fez* and *Marocho* (two seuerall principalities) with their dependances became subiect to one crown I thinke it worthy relation, because a more strange and memorable accident hath not hapned in our age. About the year 1508. a certain *Alfaique* born in *Tigumedet* in the prouince of *Dura*, began to grow in reputation, a man of reaching wit & no lesse ambitious then learnd in the Mathematicks. His name was *Mahumet Ben-Amet*, otherwise called *Xeriffe* by his owne commandement. This man deriuing his petegree fro *Mahumet* and imboldned by the ciuill warre of Affricke, & the differents of the states & common weales thereof (wherein in those daies the Portugals were of no small puissance) began to dreame on the conquest of *Mauritania Tingitan*. Which the better to effect, he first sent his three sonnes, Abdell, Abnet, & Mahumet on pilgrimage to *Meca* and *Medina*, to visit and worship the sepul-



sepulchre of their great Prophet *Mahomet*. The yong men returned from this pilgrimage with such opinion and estimation of holinesse and religion (if it be lawfull to vse these termes to so great impiety and foppery) that the inhabitants as they travelled could not be kept from kissing their garments, and adoring them as Saints.

They againe as men wrapt in deep contemplation, iournied through the prouinces sighing and sobbing, and crying with a high voice, *Ala, Ala*. They had no other sustenance but the almes of the people. Their father receiued them with great ioy and contentment, & perceiuing the fauour and opinion of the people not to be like a nine daies wonder, but to continue fresh and the same as at the first, resolved to make vse thereof, and therupon sent two of them *Abnet* and *Mahomet* to the court at *Fez*. The king receiued them kindly, and made one of them president of the famous colledge of *Amadorac*, and the yonger tutor of his children. In processe of time when they perceiued the king to grace them, and the people to fauour them, by the counsel of their father (taking occasiō of the grieuances which the Arabians and *Moors* seruing vnder the *Portugal* ensignes had done to the professors of their superstition) they desired leaue of the king to display a baner against the Christians, making him beleue that they woulde easily drawe the *Portugall Moors* to their party, and so secure the Prouinces of *Sus*, *Hea*, *Ducala* and *Marsch*. *Muly mazer* the kinges brother resisted this petition, alledging, that if once vnder the shew of holines, they grew to head, it would not afterwards lie in his power to suppress them vnder his obedience. For warre makes men awlesse, victories insolent, popularity ambitious and studious of innouation. But the king, in whose heart their hypocriticall sanctimony had taken a deepe impression, little regarding his brothers counsell, gaue them a banner, a drumme, and twenty horsmen to accompany them, with letters of credence to the Princes of Araby and citties of Barbary. In these beginnings, many things falling out to their honour and good liking, they began to make incurSIONS into *Deucala* and the county of *Safi*, ranging as farre as the promontory *Aguer*, then vnder the go-  
uern-



uernment of the Portugals : and perceiuing themselves to be fauoured, strong, and well followed, vrged the people (whoe for the most part in those daies liued in liberty) to ayde those which fought for their law and religion against the Christians, as likewise with willing mindes to giue God his tithes, which they obtained of the people of Dara. Then by little and little, they incroched vpon the territory of Taradant (of which they made their father gouernor) and inuaded *Sua, Hia, Dencala*, & the neighboring places. The first seated themselves in Tednett, and after in Tefarot. In their next iourny (but with the losse of their elder brother) they defeated Lopes Barriga, a great warrior, and captain generall of the Portugall army. By flattering speeches they entred Maroch, poisoned the king, and proclaimed Amet Xeriffe king of the countrey. After this, happened the warre of the *Arabians*, of *Dencala*, and *Xarqnia*, with the *Arabians* of *Garbi*, where while each party weakned other, and either promised to himselfe the fauour and assistance of the *Xeriffes* : they turning their armes vpon both factions, carried rich preyes from both Nations. Before this war they sent vnto the king the fift part of all their spoiles, but after this victory little regarding their soueraigne, they sent him only sixe horses and sixe Camels, and those very leane and ill shapen. Which the king disdainning, sent to demand his fifths, as also the Tribute which the kings of *Maroch* were accustomed to pay to him ; which if they denied, he vowed reuenge with fire and sword. In the meane time the king died, and Amet his sonne, once the pupile of the yonger *Xeriffe*, not only allowed, but also confirmed Amet in the kingdom of *Maroch*, vpon condition, that in some things he should acknowledge the K. of *Fez* to be his *L. paramount*. To this the *Xeriffs* (whose power and estimation daily increased) when the day of paiment of the tribute came, willed the messenger to say vnto his maister, that they were the lawfull successors of *Mahomet*, and therefore that they were bound to pay tribute to no man, yea that they had more right to *Affrick* than he had, but if he would reckon them in the number of his friends, no doubt but it wold turne to his good & honor, but if he diuerted them from the war of the Christians, they would not leaue him so much as a hart to defend himselfe.



The king taking this in ill part proclaimed war against them, and besieged *Maracho*, but for that time was constrained to dislodge. Afterward returning with 18. thousand horsemen & two thousand harquebusiers to renew the siege; as soone as he had past the riuer, he was overcome of the *Xeriffs*, who led an army of 7000. horse, and one thousand two hundred shot. In the pride of this victory they exacted tribute of this prouince, and passing *Atlas* they tooke the famous citty *Tafilet*, & partly by loue, and partly by force compelled diuers people of *Numidia* and the mountaines to beare the yoke of their subiection. In the yeere 1536. the yonger *Xeriffe* which called himselfe K. of *Sus*, gathering together a mighty army with great store of artillery, part wherof he took from the king of *Fez*, and part wherof were cast by certaine *renegado Frenchmen* made a iourney to *Cape Aguer*. This place is of great consequence, and possessed by the *Portugals*, who built it and fortified it, first at the expences of *Lopez Sequiera*, and then at the charges of K. *Emanuel*, after he vnderstood of the commodious scituation thereof. It was fiercely assailed, and as valiantly defended, vntil the fire began to take hold vpon the bulwark where their gunpowder was stowed, with which misfortune the companies appointed for the defence of that quarter, growing fearfull and faint-hearted, gaue way for the *Xeriffe* to enter the place, who made slaues of the greatest part of the defendants. After which victory they subdued almost all *Atlas*, the kingdome of *Maracho*, and the *Arabians* which were vassals to the crown of *Portugall*; the residue, as *Safi*, *Azamor*, *Arzil*, and *Alcazar* (places scituated vpon the sea coast of *Mauritania*) K. *John* the third perceiuing the profit not to equalize the charge, voluntarily resignd. These prosperous beginnings broght sower ends; for the brethren falling at discord, twice put their fortunes vpon the hazard of a battle, and twice the yonger overcame the elder, took him, and cast him in prison in the citty *Tafilet*. Then turned he his armes against the king of *Fez*, took him prisoner, and restored him to his liberty: but taking him again, for breach of covenants, deprived him and his son of life and kingdome. By the valor of his sons he tooke the Citty *Tremissen*. But *Sal Aries*  
Vice-



viceroy of Algier being iealous of these good fortunes, gathered a puissant host recouered *Tremissen*, put the *Xeriffe* to flight, tooke *Fez*; and bestowed it with the territory vpon the Lorde *Velez*, who afterward in a battell against the *Xeriffe* lost both life and kingdome. At last in his iourney to *Taradant* by the subornation of the vice-roy of Algier he was murdered in his tent by certaine Turkes, who with their Captaine *Assen* coming to *Taradant*, rifled the kings treasures but were all slaine (except siue) by the inhabitants in their iourney homewards. This came to passe in 1557. when Muley Abdala the *Xeriffes* son was proclaimed king. Let this suffice for the originall of the *Xeriffe*: now let vs see how these risings were like the fortunes of *Ismaell* king of *Persia*. Both of them in small time conquered many prouinces: both grew great by the ruine of their neighbors: both suffered crosses by the armes of the Turkes, and to them lost part of their Dominions. *Selim* tooke from *Ismael Caramit*, and diuers other cities of *Mesopotamia*, the vice roy of *Algier* droue the *Xeriffe* from *Tremissen* and the adiacent territory. *Silem* woon *Tauris* the chiefe seat of *Persia*, and then gaue it ouer; *Sal. Aries* tooke *Fez* the head citty of *Mauritania*, and left it when he had done.

This potentate is absolute Lord of the bodies and goodes of his subiects: whatsoeuer imposition hee layeth on them, they not repine thereat. For tribute he taketh the tenth, & the first fruits of their fruits and cattle: yet is it most true that for first fruits he taketh not aboue one in twenty: & though it exceede that number, euen to one hundred, yet he neuer taketh aboue two. Of euery acre of land he taketh a ducat and the first part, and so much of euery household, and of euery pole male and female aboue 15. yeares of age, yearly. If he want, hee taketh a great sum. To make the people more willing to pay what is imposed, he alwaies demandeth more then is paide, that so by paying their due, they may thinke they are well dealt withall, in seeming to be forgiuen somewhat of his full demand. The inhabitants of the mountaines, a sauadge people, for the difficult accesse vnto them, he cannot inforce to pay tribute, but those that manure the plaines, hee constraineth to giue the tenth of their haruest.

His manner  
of gouerning



Besides these reuenues, he taketh tole and custome of all kinds of Merchandize in cities : inward, of a citizen two in the hundred, of a stranger ten. His rent of mils is a great matter : for vpon euery asse-load of graine grinded in *Fez*, he taketh halfe a reall : in this town there are aboute 400. mils. The Church of *Carraxer* was indowed with 80000. ducats of yearely reuenuie the colleges and monasteries of *Fez* with much more ; which now are escheated into the kings coffers. Moreouer he is heire to al the Iudges (which they cal *Alcaids*) and hath the bestowing of all their offices. When they die he seizeth vpon all their horses, armor, apparrell, and all their other cattles. If the intestate leaue children behind him fit for the warre, he bestoweth his fathers annuity vpon them : if they be sons and young, hee nurseth them till they come to ful years : if daughters, he maintaineth them til they find husbands. To be fingring the wealth of the richer sort, hee hath some office or Lieutenantship with an annuity to sell them : but commonly to preuent those sales, they wil not be known of their abilities, remouing their abodes far from the court and the kings sight, which is the cause that the citty of *Fez* is much fallen from the ancient splendor.

He hath no castles or pieces well fortified, but onely *Aguer*, *Labace*, and *Tetuan* vpon the sea-side. His cheefest confidence is in the valor of his soldiers, especially his horsmen, like the turk and Persian. In this regarde he taketh no great care to furnish himselfe with ordinance, yet hath he great store thereof in *Fez*, *Marocho*, *Taradant*, and in the aforesaid hauen townes taken from the Portugals and others. As he seeth occasion he causeth new to be cast, for which seruice he can want no workemen out of Europe. In *Marocho* he hath an Arsenall, wherein he layeth vp monthly at least 46. quintals of gunpowder. Here he causeth his harquebushes and bowes likewise to be made. In the yea 1569. by fire which hapned among the gunpowder houses the greatest part of the citty was very much defaced.

His soldiery is of diuers sortes : the first consisteth of 2700. horsmen, & 2000. harquebushers, part lying in garison in *Fez*, and part in *Marocho*, where lieth the court. The second consisteth as a man may say of a royall troope of 6000. horse, al gentlemen



elementen pentioners and of great reputation. These ride vpon  
braue horses with rich caparisons, their arms and futniture shi-  
ning with gold, siluer, stones, and all things else, which for va-  
riety of colours, or rich deuises man delight the eye with a gal-  
lant shew, or feed the humor of the curious beholder. To these  
seruitors besides their allowance of corne, prouender, butter,  
and flesh for themselus, their wiues, children and seruants, they  
receiue yearly from seuentie to one hundred ounces of siluer.  
The third sort are a kind of *Tamarots*: for the *Xeriffe* doth alot a  
certaine portion of land and tennants to his sonnes, bretheren,  
and men of quality amongst the people of *Affricke* and *Arabia*,  
for the maintainance of their degrees. Those whom they terme  
*Alcaids*, looke to the manuring of the fieldes, gather the rents  
of corne, rice, oats, oyle, butter, flesh, poultry, and monye, and  
distribute it monthly amongst the souldiers, to euery man ac-  
cording to his place. They likewise giue them linnen, wollen,  
and silke for their garments: armour and horses for seruice. If  
their horses chance to be flaine, they giue them new: so did the  
Romans to those which serued on the horses of the state. The  
Commanders of these troopes are very carefull to see their sol-  
diers in hart and full of life, excellent well armed, and compe-  
tently attyred. They receiue betweene foure and twenty & 30.  
ounces of siluer yeerely. The fourth sort make the Arabians,  
who commonly liue in tents, deuided by 120. vnder their seue-  
n leaders, to be alwaies ready vpon all occasions. They serue  
on horsebacke, but more like theeues and outlawes, then sould-  
iers. The fift sort is like the presse of the Christian common-  
weales. These companies consist of citizens, villagois, & moun-  
taine people. Of these men the king maketh no reckoning, nei-  
ther doth he willingly arme them, for feare of sedition and in-  
uasion, vnlesse it be to warre vpon the Christians, wherein  
he cannot forbid them to serue. For vpon remembrance of the  
sught of the Moors by the Christians spokē of in their Ma-  
gical legend, the more Christians they slay, the easier they  
think shalbe their passage to heauen. Heere vpon you shall see  
thousands of people running to this war, desiring there to die vpon  
the hope of meriting saluation by the slaughter of our people. The



same fury (be it spoken to our shame) inrageth the Turkes: especially for the propagation of their heresies you shal see the more liker people running to the celebration of a marriage feast, then to a warre-journey, hardly induring to stay the limited time of the Randeou. They acount them Saints which die with their weapons in their hands, and those most vnhappy which depart this worlde amongst the teares of their children, and the mournings of their wiues.

By this it may sufficiently appeare what forces the *Xeriffe* is able to bring to the felde, but examples will make it more cleare. Muley Abdala belegered *Magazan* with two hundred thousand men. He filled the ditch with a mount made of earth, & with his ordinance beat the wall leuel with the ground. But by the prowesse of the Portugall, and fury of their miners, hee was enforced to raise his siege and depart. It is certaine, he is not able to hold any warre aboue three moneths, because the souldier liueth vpon his daily allowance of diet and apparrell: & when such like prouisions cannot be conueyed to the place of necessity, without great labor and hazzard, it commeth oftentimes to passe for want of prouision the army is constrained to breake and retire. *Molucco* king of *Fez*, who defeated *Sebastian*, had vnder his standarde forty thousand horsemen, and eight thousand hyred footmen; and with the Arabians and other common souldiers it is thought that he is able to leuy fuenty thousand horse, and a farre greater number of foot.

*The higher Ethiopia: or the Empire of Presbiter Iohan being the first part of Affricke.*



That great prince of the Abessines, who by vs of Europe is tearmed *Presbiter Iohannes*, by the Moores *Afclabassi*, and by his owne subiectes *Acegne*. i. Emperour, and *Neguz*, i. king, is Lord of all the higher or inward part of *Ethiopia*. He is worthily to be registred amongst the greatest princes of the world, for that the bounds of this Empire do touch both Tropiques the red sea, the *Ethiopian* Ocean, and containeth in circuit 672 leagues.

*Ioseph*



*Iosephus* affirmeth, that in ancient times they were cald *Chusai*, of *Chus*, the son of *Cham*, & at this day some hold that the *Portugals* terme them *Cussios*. But in the *Egyptian* tongue, they are stiled *Abessini*, by reason of their scattering inhabitation. The countrey, by report of late traellers, is most fertil. For admit it yeild wheat in scarcity, yet aboundeth it in Barly, Millet, pease, Beanes, and such like pulse, as we neither know, nor can name. Although the soueraignty of this prince be very magnificent, powerful and spacious: yet in truth doth it nothing answer the fame and report of the vulgar. *Horatius Malaguccius* in his discourse *De amplitudine dominorū huius temporis*, maintaineth it to be larger then the Empire of any other potentate, except that of the K. of *Spaine*. Truly I must needs say, that in elder age by the number of his titles, it may be coniectured, that his dominions did stretch farre: for he did intitule himselfe king of *Goiara*, (which is beyond *Nilus*) *Vangue* and *Damer*; places scituated beyond the riuer *Zair*, whereas at this day he hardly commeth neere the bankes of either riuer: yea *Iohn Baroz* writeth, that the *Abessines* by reason of their mountaines betweene them & *Nilus*, haue litle or no knowledge of that riuer. In the center of his kingdom is *Barcena*: Eastward it stretched from *Suaquen* to the entrance of the red sea, a tract of 122. leagues, and yet betweene him and that sea lie infinite mountaines inhabited by *Moores*, doing what outrages they list vpon that coast. Westward vpon the bankes of *Nilus* lie a ridge of mountaines, inhabited by *Gentiles*, who pay him tribute. Towards the North his bounds are to be limited by an imaginary line to be drawn from *Suaquen* to the head of the Iland *Meroe*, containing the space of 125. leagues, then making a semicircle like a bow, not too much bended towards the south, as far as the kingdome of *Adca* (in whose mountains the Riuer which *Ptolomy* caled *Ratro*, ariseth and falleth into the sea about *Melind*) for the space of 250. leagues, it stretcheth euen to the frontiers of the *Gentiles*: and from thence turning your imaginary line, and abutting the end in the principality of *Adel* (whose chiefe citty is *Acar* in the altitude of nine degrees) you shall finde this Empire to containe in compasse 672. leagues.



It is deuided into vast plains, fertile hillockes, and mountaines though wonderous high, yet fit for tillage, and full of habitati- on. It is not very well stored with wheat, but it bringeth forth barley, millet, a certaine other graine holson and indurable, *Indian* wheat, & al other kind of pulse (as wel known as vnknown to vs) in very plentiful maner. They haue vines, but make no wines, vnlesse it be in the kings court, or the patriarchs palace, instead wherof they brew a kind of sharpe beuerage made of the fruit of *Tamerind*. The Orange, Lemon, & Cedar tree grow wilde. They make oyle of a certaine fruit which they cal *Zana*, it is of a good colour but vnfauory. The Bees builde their hiues euen in their houses, wherupon ariseth a great quantity of wax and hony. Their garments are wouen of a cotton wooll. The richer sort are clothed in sheepe skins, the Gentlemen in cases of Lions, Tygres, and Linces. Their riches consist in heardes of oxen, goats, sheep, mules, asses & camels. Of horses their breed is small, but they haue great store of goodly coursers brought them from Arabia and Egipt. They leaue the foales with the mares not aboue three daies, but put them vnto kine to suck & reare vp. They haue Hens, geese, wilde swine, Harts, goats, and hares, but no conies, yea and such Beasts, of which we haue not the like, as panthers, Lyons, Elephants, and Linces. To speake in a word: there is no country vnder heauen fitter for increase of plants, and all liuing creatures, but none lesse helpt by art or industry, for the inhabitants are idle and vnthrifty. They haue flax, but make no cloth, they haue sugar-canes and yron mines, but know not the vse of either, and as for smiths, they fear them as fiends. They haue riuers and streames, yet will not they take paines in drouths to cut the banks to water their tilage or har- ren their grounds. Few giue themselues to hunting or fishing, which causeth their fields to swarme with foule and venison, & their riuers with fish. But it seemeth that the true ground of their idlenes ariseth from their cuill vsage; for the pore people perceiuing their Land-lords to pole and pill them, neuer sowe more then they needes must. They keepe no method in their speeches, and to write a letter, many men (and that many daies) must lay their wits together. At meales they neither vse cloth,



napkin, nor tables. They are vtterly ignorant in physicke. The gentlemen, Burgers, and Plebeians dwell apart, yet may anie man rise euen to honor by vertue and prowesse. The first borne is heir to al; euen to the vtmost farthing. Throgh the whol land there is not a towne containing aboue 1600. housholdes, and but few of that quantity: for, for the most part they dwell dispersed in small villages. They haue no castle or fortification, in imitation of the *Spartans*, maintaining that a country ought to be defended by the sword, & not by strength of earth or stone. They barter one thing for another, and to make recknings euē, they supply the want with corne and salt. For pepper, frankincence myrrh and salt they giue gold, and that by waight, as for siluer it is in little request. The greatest concourse of people is about the kings court, which neuer stayeth long in one place, but is euer in progresse, sometime in one place, sometime in another, and euer in the open fields vnder tents & pauilions. It is said to contain x. miles in circuit. His gouernment is tyranicall: for he intreateth his vassals, rich and poore more liker slaues then subiects: which to do with the greater safety, he carrieth himselfe amongst them with a holy and Saintlike adoration; for at his bare name they bow their bodies, and touch the erth with their hands. They reuerence his pauillion, yea though he be absent. In old time they were accustomed to shew themselues to the people but once in three years, but since they are grown lesse maiesticall, shewing themselues thrice in one year, to wit, on Christmas day, on Easter day, and on Holy Rood-day, yea & in these time, *Panusius* which now raigneth, is become more gracious. When any matier is committed in the Princes name to any man, he is to attend his commission starke naked to the middle. Being called to witnes a matter in controuersie, they hardly speake truth, vnlesse they sweare by the life of the king. He giueth and taketh to whom and from whome hee pleaseth, neyther dare hee from whome hee taketh, for his life make shew of a discontented countenance. Hee presenteth to holie orders, and disposeth at his good pleasure of the goods of the spiritualtie as well as of the laitie. In traouelling, he rideth shadowed with red Curtaines, high and deepe, incompassing him



round about. He weareth on his head a crowne, the one halfe wrought with gold and the other of siluer, in his hand he beareth a siluer crucifix. He couereth his face with a piece of watchet taffata, which more or lesse he listeth vp & putteth downe according as he is minded to grace him with whom he talketh. Sometime hee sheweth his whole legge, lifting it without the hangings, then may no man approach but by degrees, and after many curtesies and diuers messages passing to and fro. No man hath vassals but the king, to whome once a yeare they do homage, & protest obedience as subiects to their liege soueraign. He deriueth his petegree from *Milech* the son of *Salomon* and *Saba*. In the raigne of *Candaces* they receiued the christiã faith: and about that time one *Gasparis* became famous in *Ethiopia*; from whome after thirteene generations descended that *Iohn*, who first tooke vpon him the surname of *Sanctus*, and left it an hereditary title to his house and successors. This man hauing no issue of his body, about the time of *Constantine*, gaue the kingdom to the eldest sonne of his brother *Caius*, and inuested the younger (*Balthasar* and *Melchior*) the one with the kingdom of *Fatigar*, the other with the kingdom of *Goiam*, and so deuided the bloud royall into three families, the *Gospars*, *Balthasars*, and *Melchiors*. To auoid sedition and innouation, he made a Lawe that the sons, brethren, & neere kinred of the Emp. should be kept and shut vp in the castle of *Amara*, & that they should neither succeed in the Empire, nor inioy any honorable estate, for which cause the Emperors euer since haue sildom married. He manureth his owne fields with his owne slaues and cattle: who by reason they are suffered to marry, and their issues remaine in the same estate of villenage, as do their fathers; they increase to infinit multitudes. Euery man that hath any inheritãce, doth likewise pay tribute, some horses, some oxen, others gold, cottõ wooll, or such like. It is thought that he is lord of infinit, treasures, and to haue store of houses full of cloth, iewels, & gold. In his letters to the king of Portugall, vpon condition that hee would wage war against the Infidels, he offereth him a million of gold, & a milion of men, with prouision according. He is reported to lay vp yearly in the castle of *Amara* three millions of golde.



gold. And true it is, that before the daies of king Alexander he did hoord vp great store of gold in rude and vnwrought masses; but no such quantity, because they know not how to refine it. His reuenues are of 3. sorts, the first ariseth of his crowne land: the second of the taxes of his people, who pay euery mā by house somewhat, besides the tenth of all that is digged out of their mines: the third, he leuieth of the great Lords, & they giue him the reuenue of any one of their townes (which he wil choose) so he choose not that wherein themselues inhabit. And albeit the prince be very rich, yet the people are idle & beggerly: partly because they are intreated as slaues, which vsage taketh from any people that courage and alacrity of spirit, which should be in men professing armes and vndergoing dangers; & partly because in respect of that base bonde of ser vile fidelity, wherewith they are ouer-awed to his Maiesty, they perceiue their hands are fast bound, thorough feare whereof they haue no other weapon fit for seruice, then a rusty head peece, a scull or curasse which the Portugals haue brought thither: so that hauing neyther fortresse to flye vnto, nor weapons to repulse wrongs, the villages and substance lie alwaies open to the pray and spoile of whosoever wil inuade them. Their offensiue weapons are certaine darts and arrows without feathers. They obserue a Lent of fifty dayes, which by reason of their true (or rather superstitious) abstinence, doth bring their bodies so weake and lowe, that for many daies after they are not able to gather strength to moue theselus from one place to another. At which time the Moores watching oportunity, inuading their dominions, carry away men, women and wealth. *Francis Alvarez* writeth, that he is able to bring into the felde 100000. men: but experience hath manifested that euen in his extremities his numbers were far inferior to that reckoning. He hath knights of the Order dedicated to the protection of S. *Anthony*. Euery gentleman father of three sons (except the eldest) is bounde to giue one to the seruice of the king; out of these are chosen 12000. horsemen for the gard of his person, Their vow & oath is to defend the bounds of the Empire, and to fight against the enemies of the Christian faith.



He is fronted with three puissant neighbors: the K. of *Borno*, the great Turke, and the king of *Adell*. The king of *Borno* is Lord of that country, which from *Guangula* Eastward stretcheth about 500. miles between the deserts of *Seth* and *Barca*. In situation it is very vneuen, sometime mountainous, and sometime plaine, the people indifferent ciuil, the country reasonably well inhabited, and in regard of plentie of victual, somewhat resorted vnto by marchants. On the mountaines dwell neat-heards and shepheards, liuing for the most part vpon Milet, leading a bestial life, without religion, & accompanying with one anothers wiues. They know no other names then such as are giuen them for some note or marke of their body, as blind, lame, tall, bold &c. This king is very puissant in people, of whom hee exacteth no other tribute then the tenths of the increase of their liuelyhoods. For exercise and instead of occupations they giue themselves to steale, to slay their neighbors, and to take them prisoners, and then to barter them for horses with the Merchants of *Barbary*. He hath vnder him many kingdomes & nations, some white, some blacke. He is an heauy enemy to the *Abessines*, taking away their cattell, rifting their mines, and leading awaie the people in captiuitie. His horsemen ride after the Spanish manner, armed with lances (fleeled at both ends) darts and arrows: but their inrodes resemble rather robberies and garboiles, then wars managed by valiant souldiers.

The Turke likewise on the East, and the king of *Adel* on the southeast, do cruelly vex him; for they haue curtaide his large dominion, and brought his prouinces into great misery. In the yeare 15;8. the Turke harried the whole territory of *Bernagasso*, (but since expulsed) and tooke from *Prestor Iohn* whatsoever he was Lord of vpon that sea-coast, especially the hauen & city of *Suaquen* and *Erococo*, in which place the mountaines betweene *Abex* and the red sea, make a gate as it were for the traffick and carriages of the *Abessines* and *Arabians*. And since that, *Bernagasso* was forced to submit himselfe to the Turkish commaunds, to buy his peace, and in name of a tribute to pay 1000. Ounces of gold yearly.

The king of *Adel* is his no lesse infestious enemy: he bordereth



reth vpon the kingdom of *Fatigar*: and his *Seignorie* stretcheth along the red sea as farre as *Assum, Salir, Meth, Barbora, Pidar* and *Zeila*. Many ships come from *Aden* and *Cambaia* to *Barbora* with Merchandize, which they trucke for flesh, honey, wax, and vittell; these commodities are carried to *Aden*, gold *Iuoy*, and such wares are sent to *Cambaia*: the greatest part of victual, hony, wax, corne and fruits brought from *Zeila*, are caried into *Aden & Arabia*, also much cattell, especially sheep hauing tailes of 25. pound waight, with heads and neckes all black, the rest of their bodies all white. Of these cattle there are some altogether white, with turning crooked tailes, as long as a man arme, and lew-Paps like oxen. Some of their kine haue hornes with many branches like our Deere: other some haue one horn in their forehead growing backward a span & a halfe long. The chiefe city of this kingdom is *Arar* 38 leagues distant frō *Zeila* towards the south east. He professeth Mahumitisme, and since his conuersion he hath intituled himself with the surname of *Holy*, auowing continuall war against the *Abessine* Christians, and therefore he watcheth the time of the foresaid fast of fifty daies, when he entreth their territories, burneth their villages, taketh prisoners, and then committeth a thousand other mischiefes.

The *Abessine* slaues do often leaue their cuntry, and take vpon them great iournies, putting themselues in the seruice of great Lords, where many times by their industry and good charge they become high commanders in *Arabia, Cambaia, Bengala* and *Sumatra*. For the Mahumetan princes being al Tyrants & Lords of those contries, which they haue forced from the gentiles, to secure their estates do neuer trust their hom-bred subjects, but wage strangers and slaues, vnto whose fidelitie they commit their persons & the managing of al the affayrs of their kingdoms. And amongst al sorts of slaues, the *Abessine* is in greatest esteem for his faithfulness and towardly dispositiō. The King of *Adel* ouerlayeth *Egypt & Arabia* with their slaues, which he changeth with the *Turks* & princes, *Araby* of for armor, provision of warre and souldiers. In the yeare of our Lorde 1500. *Aud* King of *Abex* perceiuing himselfe inferiour vnto *Grāhmeda* king of *Adel* (for he had vexed his land with 14. yeares incur-



incursions) forsaking the frontiers, retyred himself into the inward parts of his kingdome, intreating for aide of *Stephen Gama* viceroy of *India* vnder *John* the third king of *Portugall*, who was then in the red sea with a warlike nauy. In compassion of his miseries and religion, he sent him foure hundred *Portugall* shot very well furnished vnder the conduct of *Christopher* his brother. By the ayd and vse of their artillery he ouerthrew his enemies in two battels: but the king of *Adel* obtaining of the gouernor of the city of *Zebit* one thousand harquebushers, and ten pieces of ordinance, in the third fight put the *Portugals* to flight, and slew their captaine. Afterwards when *Adel* had sent away these *Turkes*, king *Claudius* set vpon him at vnawares by the riuer *Zcila* and the mountaine *Sana* with 8000. footemen, 500. *Abyssine* horsemen, and the remainder of the liuing *Portugals*, one of whom gaue *Grada Amada* his deaths wound. But in March 1506. *Claudius* fighting with the *Moores* of *Malaca*, gaining the victory, was slaine in the battell. *Adam* his brother succeeded, against whom being a demi *Mahumetan*, the greatest part of the *Abyssine* Nobility rebelled, and was ouerthrowne in the year 1562. by *Bernagasso*. By this casualty did the *Ethiopian* affaires ebbe and flow, vntill the raigne of *Alexand.* things began in some sort to return to their ancient state by the ayd of the *Portugals*, who furnished them with weapons both offensive and defensive, and by their example encouraged them to be stout and couragious against their enemies.

All that were liuing after the defeature of *Christopher Gama*, and all that euer went thither since that day to this, do remain there, marrying wiues and begetting children. *K. Alexander* gaue them leaue to elect a iusticer, and to end all matters of controuersy among themselues, which maketh them so willing to stay and teach them the vse of weapons, the maners of warfare, and how to fortifie places of importance. Sithence those times (*Francis Medicis* contracting friendship with the *abessine*) diuers *Florentines*, some for pleasure and some for profit, haue trauelled into those prouinces, wherin when they are once entered, the king entreateth them so faire, and giueth them so liberally wheron to liue, that they can hardly obtaine licence to returne againe into their owne Countries.



Besides these, he hath other enemies, as the king of *Dancab*, whose city and haven is *Vela* vpon the red sea, & the Moores of *Doba*, a prouince diuided into 14. Lieutenantships. These people though they are accounted within the limits of the *Abessine* Empire, yet do they often rebell, hauing a law amongst themselves, that no young man may contract matrimony, vnlesse he can bring good prooffe that he hath slaine twelue Christians.

*Monomotapa.*

**I**N the residue of the *Ethiophe*, raigndiuers powerful princes, as the kings of *Adel*, *Monomugi*, *Monomotapa*, *Angola*, & *Congo*, of which as we yet vnderstand very little. But that the reader by the description of one may coniecture of the rest, I wil speak somewhat of the state and pollicy of *Monomotapa*, because it is mightier and more famous then the rest. This kingdome containeth all that Iland which lyeth between the riuers of *Cuama* and *Spirito Santo* (a territory of one hundred and fifty leagues in compasse) and from *Spirito Santo* it stretcheth euen to the *Cape* of good Hope: for the viceroyes of that huge tract do acknowledge him for their soueraigne and supream gouernour. Of townes and villages they haue few, those cottages which they haue, consist of Timber and thatch. One of their chiefe Citties is called *Zimbas*, another *Benemetaxa*, the one 25. miles, the other 21. distant from *Cesala* towards the west. The soile aboundeth with corne and with cattell great and small wandering by heards through the fields and woods. By the store of teeth from thence transported, wee may coniecture that lesse then 5000. Elephants cannot but die yearly in this countrey, these beasts are heere very great. There is no climate like it for plentie of gold: for there are 3000. mines, wherout gold is digged: gold is likewise found in the earth, in rockes and riuers. The mines of *Manica*, *Boro*, *Quiticui*, and *Toroe* (which some men cal *Bu-tua*) are the richest. The people are meane of stature, black, and well set. They conuerse with the King kneeling on their knees, and to fitte in his presence, is the vse with them, as with vs to stand, and that is granted but to great Lords. The assay of meate and drinke is not made before, but after the Prince hath eat & drunke. Here are no prisons, because law passeth vpon the of-



sendor in the very moment wherein the offence was committed. The offences most severely punished, are witchcraft, theft, and adultery. They pay no other tribute but certain daies work and presents, without which, no man may appeare in the princes presence. The king beareth in his coat of armes a certaine little spade, with an Iuory handle, and two small dartes. Hee keepeth for his faithfullest Guard, two hundred dogs. He keepeth the heyres of his vassall princes to be secured of their fathers loyalty. One of the kings not long since was conuerted and baptised by *Gonfalua Silva* a Iesuite, with the greater part of his courtiers, but afterwards (by the perswasion of certaine Moores in great credit about him) he caused him to be slaine. *Sebastian* king of *Portugall* offended hereat, proclaimed war against him, vnder the leading of *Francisco Berotio*. This Army consisted of sixteen hundred, the greatest part gentlemen, to whom the *Monomotapa* fearing their armes and valour, offered honorable conditions, but the captaine (whom no offer or indifferency could satisfie) was ouercome, and his Army vtterly consumed, yet not by the enemy, but by sicknesse and the infectious ayre of the countrey.

## Egypt.

IN this discription, I will rather follow the opinion of *Ptolomy* and some others, who make it a part of Africa, then those who either refer some portion thereof to *Asya*, and the residue to *Affrique*. It is a most noble and auncient Region, much celebrated both in Scripture, and other profane writers for the excellency and antiquity thereof. In holy writ (as witnesseth *Iosephus*) it is called *Misraim*, and so the inhabitants. For *Misraim* was the sonne of *Chus*, the sonne of *Cham*, the son of *Noe*. The Arabians call the country *Mesre*, but the Inhabitants *chibeth*, for such was his name, that first brought his Colony into these partes. It is plaine, sandy, and low land without mountains, which is the reason, that it cannot be seene a farre off: the ayre is hot and infectious; and therefore eyther to auoyd, or mollifie, the intollerable heat of the Summer sun, the Inhabitants are accustomed in all their cities vpon the tops of their houses to build open tarrases, to let the wind driue in through  
all



all their roomes. Yet is not this countrey as the rest of Africk, infested with the southern winds ingendred of heat, but is especially refreshed with the northern, which here is moyft, and in other places dry. It hath no earthquakes, nor shewers, but of very able fertility: and if it raine (as it sildome doth) it bringeth many diseases, as Murrs, Catars, Agues, and such like.

The inundation of *Nilus* is mother of all fertility, the want thereof, an assured prediction of famine and scarcity. The countrey is full of cuts and inlets from this riuer, which long agoe *Sesostris* caused to be intrenched, least those towns which were scituated far from the main banke in the hart of the kingdome, should want water vpon the ebbing of the riuer. This inundation causeth such plentifull haruests, that through the whole earth better increase, and speedier ripenisse, is not to be found.

The wealth hereof is rather to be admired, then estimated, in reuiewing the splendor and magnificēce of their regal antiquities, their laborinths, their Piramides, and water workes, all built and perfected at inestimable charges. Their ruines are to be seene at this day, wherevnto the brauest monumentes of the Roman empyre are nothing comparable. The reuenue of this kingdome in times past, both in regard of the fertility of *Nilus*, and the infinite quantity of merchandize transported from *Ethiopia*, *Arabia*, and *India*, hath bin very great. Some report (saith *Ptolomy*) that *Auletes* receiued from hence twelue millions and fifty talents, which according to the computation of *Budans*, ariseth to seuen millions and a halfe of Crownes: The *Romans* receiued a far greater masse, but now by the *Portugals* nauigations, it yeeldeth the Turke no such reckoning.

About the beginning of April they go to haruest, so by the 20 of May, no one care is left growing. About the banks of *Nilus* it brings forth the fruits of the earth with great ease, but farther off, they are fain by the labor of Oxen and men, to let in water from the riuers by trenches to moysten their grounds.

Besides wild Beasts and harmefull in abundance, it affoordeth infinite store of tame Cattle; as the Buffall, the Oxe, the Camell, the Horffe, the Assie, the Ramme, and the Goate. All which (as *Bellonius* affirmeth) by reason of theyr deep pastures



and excellent temperature of the countrey, do exceed common proportion. As the Ram, who groweth very fat and extraordinary big, hauing a large and grosse taile trailing after him vpon the earth, and created with a *Dulap* in manner of an Oxe, and created with black wooll. And for that the winter is very pleasant, and the soyle moorish, it is no lesse stored with foule, especially Storks, who for their infinite aboundance (especially towards the *Nile*) a man would imagine the fields to be covered with white: But as these flocks of Birdes are admirable, no lesse noisome are their swarmes of Frogs; so that if God had not ordained the birds to deuour this vermin, all places would proue loathsome, barren, and infectious. The *Chamelion* is found here very frequent, but liueth not vpon the ayre as some do imagine, but indeed is able to liue without foode a whole yeares space. It hath beene alwaies found to abound in metall, especially towards the borders of *Aethyopia*, and it is not wholly without some sort of pretious stones.

This Countrey was no sooner known, but it was inhabited. And although it were and is of hard access, by reason of the huge desarts, steepe mountaines, moorish places, and violent seas, wherewith it is wholly incompassed, yet hath it suffered diuers and lamentable alterations vnder the yoke of strangers. For first it was subiect to their natieue kings, and they were the *Pharaos*: then to the *Aethiopians*, whom *Cambises* king of *Persia* expelled, and subiected. After that, they reuolted from *Darius* (surnamed *Nothus*) and elected kings againe of their owne Nation, vntill the daies of *Alexander* the *Macedonian*. After whose death, the third time they had their owne kings, called *Ptolomies*, of *Ptolomy* the sonne of *Tagus*, in whose race it continued till the times of *Ptolomeus Auletes*, father of *Cleopatra*, whom *Augustus Caesar* vtterly defeated, and annexed that prouince to the Roman Empire. Vnder the *Romans*, the Egyptians became Christians, and the deuision of the Empire accrued to the share of the *Constantinopolitan* Emperor.

But no sooner began the Mahumetan armes to prosper, but it fell in their laps, and many yeares continued both the seat of the *Sultans*, and the nurcery of *Nilstia*. In the yeare of our Lo.



1516. Selimus the great Turke, razed clean out both the name and the fame of those Princes, and now governeth the prouince by one of his Bassaes, whoe at this day keepeth his Court in *Cair*.

They goe apparailed in garments close buttoned vnto their breasts, and from thence to the foot hanging loose with streit sleeues. In the Summer they vse a kind of cotten cloth, wouen of diuers colours, but in the winter a thicker sort of cloth. The merchants and the better sort of Cittizens for the most part, were the cloathes of Europe. Vppon their head they vse that height and round fashion, which is tearmed a *Dulipan*, whereby all callings and sorts of professions are distinguished, as in the rest of Turkey. They yet retaine the auncient forme of the *Sandall*. Their women neuer walke abroad with bare faces, by the commandement of *Mahomet*, as in the residue of Turkey.

*Aethiopia inferior.*

**T**He lower *Aethiops*, lyeth most southerly of any part of *Africke*, vnknowne to *Ptolomy*, and but lately discovered by the *Portugals*. Towards the west it beginneth vpon the Riuer *Zair*, not far from the *Aequator*, and incircling all the maritime coast of *Africke* beyond the *aequator*, incompasseth vppon that side the kingdome of the *Abessine*, euen to the Arabian fret. This Region containeth many memorable workes of God, as certain great kingdoms, the famoused mountains of the moon, the notable riuers arising from the Lake *Zembre*, and the most renowned Cape of *Good Hope*. The chiefest kingdoms are *Aina*, *Zangueber*, *Monomotapa*, *Cafrania*, and *Manicongi*.

It conteineth besides many kingdomes, wherof some are famous, and vnwritten of; some obscure, and not worth the recording: Amongst which is *Adell*, a large kingdome, adorned with two famous Mart-townes; *Zeila*, and *Barbora*. *Adea*, *Magadaxum* a kingdome and citty, *Zanzibar*, *Melind*, *Mombassa*, *Quiola*, *Mozambique*, *Cesala*, *Angola*, and *Loangi*, all kingdomes.

Amongst the famous Ilandes, are *Insula portus sancti*, *Madera*, the *Canaries*, *Capo virde*, *Saint Thomas*, *Madagascar*, and *Zocorara*.

*Asia.*



**A**sia is the most Noble, greatest, and vastest part of the world, and in auncient times acknowledged for the thirde part thereof. Now it is accounted the fourth, or if you please, one of the seuen, exceeding the auncient two, viz: *Europe* and *Affrica* in largenes and circuit: especially in these our dayes, being wholly discovered to the East and North, the habitations of the *Chinois* and *Tartars*, without accounting the Islandes thereunto belonging, which if they were multiplycd, woulde make a continent farre fairer then Europe.

Vpon three parts it is bounded with the vast Ocean, firnamed the *Orient*, on the south, which the *Indian*, vpon the North, with the *Scythian*. Vpon the West it is somewhere disioyned frō Europe and Affrick, with the red sea, somwhere with the *Mediterranean*, somwhere with the *Euxine*, and somwhere with the riuer *Tanais*. The Regions which of old it containeth wer, *Pontus*, *Bitinia*, *Phrigia* the great, *Licia*, *Galatia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Pamphilia*, *Cappadocia*, *Armenia* the lesse, *Cilicia*, *Sarmatia Asiatica*, *Colchis*, *Iberia*, *Albania*, *Armenia* the great, *Ciprus*, *Siria Cana*, *Phanicia*, *Palestina*, *Arabia Petrea*, *Melopotamia*, *Arabia deserta*, *Babilonia*, *Assiria*, *Susiana*, *Media*, *Persis*, *Parthia*, *Caramania deserta*, *Caramania Altera*, *Arabia Felix*, *Hircania*, *Margiana*, *Bractriana*, *Sogdiana*, *Sacarum Regio*, *Scythia* within *Imaus*, *Scythia* vwithout *Imaus*, *Serica*, *Aria*, *Paramisus*, *Drangiana*, *Arachosia*, *Gedrosio*, *India* on this side *Ganges*, *India* beyonde *Ganges*, *Sinarum Regio*, and *Traboban*.

Generally it inioyeth a most excellent temperature of aire, & is so rich, firtil and bateful, of such variety for fruits & feeding; and so abounding therewith, that in all these good giftes it excelleth al countries whatsoever. For here are to be found diuers sorts of liuing creatures, and plants, the like wherof the whole vvorlde againe affoordeth not. As Balme, sugar-canes, Frankincence, Mirrhe, Cassia, Cinamon, Nutmegs, Pepper, Saffron, sweet Woods, Muske, and diuers other sorts of drugs & odors, excellent gold, all sorts of Minerals, and precious stones.

Of beasts it affordeth the Elephant and Camel, with diuers strange sorts both vvilde and tame.



The people are of excellent wits, exceeding rich, and happy in all good things: This Region hath bin the parent of many rare spirits, and the seat of most mighty & flourishing Empires, As vvherein raigned the monarchs of the *Assyrians*, *Persians*, *Babilonians*, *Parthians*, and *Medes*. No lesse regardfull at this day are the Empires of the *Turkes*, *Tartars*, *Persians*, *Mogors*, *Indians* and *Chinois*; but indeed most celebrated in holy writ for our creation, fall, and redemption, as the region vvherein in a maner all the histories and acts mentioned in the old testamēt, and a great part of those in the nevv, vvere vvrought & accomplished. The ancients deuided it into diuers partes, but at this present it is best deuided into 5, according to the chiefe & principall Empires therein: the first vvhich confineth vvith Europe is gouerned by the great duke of *Moscouie*, the seconde belongeth to the great *Cham*, the third is commannded by the *Turke*, the fourth is the kingdome of *Persia*, the fift comprehendeth that vvhich hath alvvayes been called *India*, and gouerned by diuers princes, for the most part vassals, feodaries, & tributaries to other potentates. The principal Ilands are *Iapan*, *Luconia*, *Mindanao*, *Burneo*, *Sumatra*, *Zeilan* and *Capris*: *Gilolo*, the *Molucca*, *Banda* and *Celebes* belong to *Magelanica*.

*The great duke of Moscouia.*

**T**He great Duke of *Moscouia* is Lord of a most large dominion, and within the limits of his iurisdiction are contained many regions: the chiefe prouinces and shires vvhich are *Volodomer Mosco*, *Nisnonograi*, *Plesdo*, *sinolensdo*, *Nonogrodo*, *Velica*, *Rostone*, *Yarnestaue*, *Bealozera*, *Reza*, *Dwana*, *Cargapelia*, *Meschora*, *Vagha*, *Ustuga*, *Golefsa*. These are the natural shires pertaining to *Russia*, but far greater and larger then the shires of *England*, though not so vvell peopled. The residue vvith a great part of *Siberia*, haue beene ioyned to this crowvn by conquest, vvho though they speake not the *Russie* language, yet obey they the Emperor, and are ruled by his lawes, and are all this day reduced into foure iurdictions, or *Tetrachies*, from the North to the south (if you measure frō *Cola* to *Astrachan*, vvhich draweth somewhat Eastvvard) it reacheth in length about 4260. versts or miles: the bredth is 4400. versts, a verst is  
(accor-



(according to their reckoning) 1000. paces, lesser then our mile by one quarter; wherein as some write, are contained fiftene Duke-domes, and two kingdome; (viz.) *Casan* and *Astrachan*, wherein if it were alike habitable and peopled in all places, as it is in some, he wold ouer hardly hold it within one regiment; or if he so could, then would he be ouer mighty for his neighbor princes.

*Moscouy* is scituated partly in Europ, and partly in Asia, which seperation is caused by the riuer of *Tanis*, bounder of Asia, and running through the middle of the Country.

The people were once subiect to the *Tartars*, whose Prince *Roydo* in the year 1140. conquered *Moscouie*; but *Iohn* the first (incoraged by their ciuill dissentions) denyed them tribute. In proceffe of time, when *Ametes* the last successor of *Roydo*, (who dyed at *Vilna*) had ouercome the *Tatars Precopenses*, the great Duke adioyned to his Empire, *Permia*, *Veatia*, and *Lugria*, prouinces subiect to *Ammetes*. From this time, the forces of the great Duke increasing, *Basilius Casan*, and *Iohn* the second, conquered the prouinces of *Citraban*, which at this day are called kingdome. To confesse the truth, the great dukes haue mightily enlarged their bounds, and haue taken the great Duchies of *Seuerin* and *Smoloncke*, *Bielchese*, *Presconia*, *Nonogrod*, *Iaroslau*, and *Roscouia*, (some of them) from the *Polandes*, & some from other Potentates: they possessed thirty great townes in *Lituania*, with *Narue* and *Derts* in *Lithonia*, but they are al quite gone, being of late years surprized by the Kings of *Poland* and *Swene-land*.

The chiefe Citty of the kingdome of *Mosco*, where the patriarch resideth, *Roscouio* & *Nonogrode* are the seats of the Archbishops; *Cortisa*, *Resania*, *Columna*, *Susdelia*, *Casan*, *Vologda*, *Tueria*, *Smoloncke*, *Plescouia*, *Staritia*, *Sloboda*, *Ieroslau*, *Volodomer*, (from whence the Kings seat was translated to the Citty *Mosco*, by *Iohn* the second) *Mosayco*, *Saint Nicholas*, *Sugana*, *Vstind*, and *Gargapolia*: are Bishoppricks. The Emperor abideth in the citty *Mosco*, which taketh his name of the Riuer *Mosco*, arising foure score and ten miles higher into the Countrey. The Citty hath been greater then now it is, and was nine miles compasse,  
the



the forme thereof is in a maner round, with three strong wals, circuling the one within the other, and streets lying between; whereof the inmost wall, and the buildinges closed within it, (lying safest as the hart within the bodie, fenced and watered with the riuer *Moscouia*, that runneth close by it) is all accounted the Emperors castle. The number of houses thorough the whole citty, (being reckoned by the Emperor a little before it was fired by the enemy) there was 41500. in all. But since it was sacked 1571. and burnt by the *Tartars*, it containeth not about 5. miles. According to *Possennus* a writer of good iudgment and industry, there are housed in this Citty thirtie thousande people, besides Oxen and other Cattle. Nowe (as writeth Doctour *Fletcher*) it is not much bigger then the cittie of London.

*Novograde* hath the name of Great, and yet the same author alloweth it not about twenty thousand inhabitants; as likewise *Smolonck* and *Plescouia*. As the *Russie* sayth, here was committed that memorable warre (so much spoken off in Histories) of the *Scithian* seruants that tooke armes against their Maisters: who in memory of their great victory haue euer since in their coine stamped the figure of a horlle-man shaking a whip aloft in his hand.

This seemeth most incredible to mee (if it bee true as some write) that *Plescouia* when King *Stephen* of *Polande* besieged it, had within it, fifty thousand footmen, & seuen thousand horse. Truly this is a great number, and though they were not all *Moscouites*, yet this reckoning asketh a great portion of inhabitants: for if the king thrust in fifty seauen thousand fighting men, it must needs be that the inhabitants were very many moe. Some will haue it, that in times past the countrey was better replenished with people, and that afterwards it became desolate for 3. causes: the first was, the plague (a new disease in *Moscouie*,) which gleaned away many thousande people: the second, the tyranny of their Emperors, who haue put infinite numbers to death, especially of the nobility: the thirde, the incursions and robberies of the *Tartars*, *Precopie*, and *Negaians*, which neuer cease vexing their bordering neighbors.



These Tartars harrie not onely the contry, but lead away captiue whole cities, selling them to the Turkes and other Nations. These inrodes haue laid wast many and far remoued provinces. The wisdom of a prince is not liuelier discerned, then in his good foresight, whether his enterprises are like to proue hurtfull or profitable to his estate: and when he suffereth not himselfe to be carried away with the vaine hope of atchieuing some conquest, which can neither continue to him sure nor certain, but rather draweth after it a continuall disquiet to his owne safety. For that prince that is led with such an ambitious humor to enlarge his estate, doth but weaken himselfe in people and riches, and in mine opinion, is like the man that mindeth to raise the wals and rooffe of his house higher, taketh away the foundatiō of the building. It is the greatest glory wel to keep what we haue got, but those gettings which are made with future losse and diminution of our proper strength, are contrary to that Maxime. And seeing these acquisitions are as it were incisions or graffings, they ought to better, not to impair the state of our affayres: for as these incisions are vsed to make soure trees sweete, or vnfruitfull plants fruitfull: So the enterpises of princes ought to bee such, as bring forth assured honor and profit; otherwise they are labors vnprofitable, pulling downe more then they builde, and heaping to themselues more harme then honor, more troble then safety. Of this kind are those wars which are waged to conquer kingdomes farre distant, hauing nothing neare vnto vs, but are so far disioyned that they aske greater garrisons then reason, or our abilities are able to affoord, to defend them. Therefore let the resolution of euery expedition be laide on three grounds: first, that the quarrell be iust; secondly, what hope and facility of conquest; thirdly, what gaine wil arise of victory. For war vnder-taken without hope of assured fruit is meere madnes: & many great captains haue enlarged the bounds of their Empires, but not increased their owne quiet and safeties. No prince made longer iournies & greater expences then the great duke *Iohn*: he vanquished the kingdome of *Casan to Volga*, and *Astrachan* on the Caspian sea; hee subdued a great part of *Linonia*. But what



what honor, what profit, or what continuance of security gained he by these victories? What was the end of this warre? In these expeditions perished infinit numbers of men, in iourning, in assaults with the sword, with sicknes, with hunger, and other extremities. When he had ouercome them, he was inforced to keep great garisons, yea to bring thither whole colonies: Besides, when men were so far from home, either busied in getting other mens goods, or in keeping what they had got, their wiues stayed at home like widowes, and the inward part of the realme remained empty, as a hart void of bloude, wanting his necessary nutriment, whillt the inhabitants wer wasted on the skirts of the kingdom. And therefore when it was inuaded by k. *Stephen* of *Poland*, these remote forces were wanting to make resistance, and through this ouersight hee lost againe *Pozonia*, and other peeces of good reckning, yea and inforced to leaue the vvhole possession of *Liuonia* to the *Polander*.

To proceed yet further, the soil of the country for the most part is of slight sandy mould, yet very much diffrent one place from another, for the yeeld of such thinges as grow out of the earth. Northwards tovards the parts of *S. Nicholas* and *Cola*, & North East towards *Siberia*, it is al barren, and full of desart vvoods, by reason of the climate and extremity of cold in winter time. So likewise along the riuer *Volga* betwext the cuntries of *Casan* and *Astrachan*, notwithstanding the soyle be fruitful, it is all vnhabited, sauing that vpon the west side, the Emperour hath some few castles vvith garisons in them. This hapneth by meanes of the *Crimme Tartar*, that will neither himselfe plante tovnes to dwell in, (liuing a vvild and vagrant life) nor suffer the *Russie* being far of with the sinevvs of his cuntry, to people those parts. From *Vologda*, which lyeth almost 1700. versts frō the port of *S. Nicholas*, dovvne tovwards *Mosco*, and so toward the south parts that border vppon the *Crimme* (containing the like space of 1700. versts, or thereabouts) is a very pleasant and fruitfull countrey, yeelding pasture and corne, with vvood and water in great store and plenty. The like is betvvene *Rezan* (lying south East from *Mosco*) to *Novogrode* and *Vobsko*, that reacheth farthest tovvardes the North-vvest: So betvvixte



*Mosco* and *Smolensko* (that lyeth south west towards *Lithuania*) is a very fruitfull and pleasaunt soile, and also very fertile and commodious, for those inhabitants that dwell therein.

The countrey differeth very much from it selfe by reason of the yeare, so that a man would maruell to see the great alteration and difference betwixt the winter and summer in *Russia*. The whole countrey in winter lyeth vnder snow (which falleth continually) and is sometime of a yard or two thicke, but greater towards the North. The riuers and other waters are frozen vp a yeard or more thicke, how swift or broad soeuer they bee. And this continueth commonly fiue months, viz: from the beginning of Nouember, till towards the end of March, about which time the snow beginneth to melt. The sharpnes whereof, you may iudge of by this: for that water dropped down or cast vp into the ayre, congealeth into yce before it come to the ground. In the extremity of winter, if you holde a pewter dish or pot in your hand or any other mettall (except in some chamber where their warme stoues be) your fingers wil friez fast to it, and draw off the skin, at the parting: when you passe out of a warme roome into a cold, you shall sencibly feel your breath to wax starcke, and euen stifling with the cold as you draw it in and out. Diuers not onely that trauell abroad, but in the verie markets and streets of their townes, are monstrously pinched and killed withall; so that you shall see many droppe downe in the streets, many traellers brought into the Townes sitting dead and stiffe in their sleds; and yet in summer time you shall see such a new hievv and face of a country, the woods so fresh and so svect, the pastures and meddovves so greene and vwell growne, (and that vpon the suddaine) such variety of flowvers, such melody of Birdes (especially of Nightingales) that a man shall not lightly traell in a more pleasanter countrey; vvhich fresh and speedy groweth of the spring, seemeth to proceed fro the benefite of the snow, which all the winter time being spread ouer the whole countrey as a white Rose, and keeping it warme from the rigor of the frost, in the spring time, when the wether waxeth warme, and the sunne dissolueth it into water, doth so thoroughly drench and soke the ground, being of a sleight and sandie



sandy mold, and then shineth so hotly vpon it again, that it euen forceth the hearbs and plants forth in great plenty and variety, and that in a short time. As the winter season in these regions exceedeth in cold, so likewise I may say that the summer inclineth to ouermuch heat, especially in the months of Iune, Iuly, and August, being accounted the three chiefest months of burning heate, and yet in these places it is much warmer then the summer in England.

To returne to our relation of the soile and climate; for the most part it is couered with woods and lakes; these woods are the branches of *Hercinia*, spreading it selfe through al the north, and perhaps more in this prouince then in any other. Heere growe the goodliest and tallest trees of the worlde, thorough which for their thicknesse the brightnes of the sunne beames can hardly pierce. An vnspcakable quantity of Rosin and pitch distilleth out of these Trees, and heere is the neuer-wasting fountaine of wax and hony. For without any industry of man, the Bees themselues builde their hives in the barkes and hollownesse of trees. Heere is all plenty of cattell and wild beasts, Beares, Martins, beasts called *Zbellini*, and Woolues: whose skinnes do beare high prices. Of the timber of these trees are squared all necessaries, as well for buildings as all other vses; the wals of the citties are framed of beames cut fouresquare, fastened together, filling all the chinks and vacant places with earth. And of these beames likewise they builde platformes of such height and thicknesse, that they bear the vweight of great Ordinance howv massie soeuer: they are subiect to fire, but not easily shaken vvith the fury of battery. Somemen maintaine great disputation, whether fortresses built of stone, chalke or erth be of greatest validity. For the last, these be their reasons: these are sooner built, with lesse charge, & make best resistace: when a breach is made, they are easiest repaired, and any part thereof (if chance, ocaion or necessity require) lightlier changed. But al these reasons notwithstanding, in my mind fortresses built of stone cary the credit; for seeing there are 4. meanes to ruinate a fortresse, Ordinaunce, mining, fire, and digging, peradventure the stone wall may auaille as much in resisting, as



the earthen in receiuing and deading the bullet; but against mining, fire, the spade, and pickaxe, without comparison the stone worke excelleth; and to raise platformes or the inside of the vval is all you can inuent either defensiue or praise worthy to a fortresse built of timber and earth.

For vvaters *Moscouie* is the mother of riuers and lakes, witness *Duyna, Boristhenes, Volga, Dvyna, Onega, Moscoua, Volisca*, and the famous *Tanaïs*, the lakes of *Ina*, vpon which standeth the great *Novograde, Voluppo*, and many others. The abundance of these vvaters do make the ayr colder then is requisit for the increase of cattell, or groweth of plants, and although cold is thought more vvholsome then heat, yet are their cattell of small growth therby, and many times their fruits com not to ripening, the earth drovned vvith the vvaters for the most part becometh light and sandy, and then either with too great drouth, or too much moysture, it destroyeth the fruit. Winter in some sort lasteth nine months, little more or lesse, and the soil bringeth forth plenty of graine and feeding for cattle. It also bringeth forth Apples, Nuts, & Filberds: other kind of fruits they scarcely know. Of fish they raise their greatest gaine, as hauing greatest abundance of that commodity; they dry them in the frost and vvinde, as in *Norvvey* and other northerly Nations, and they lay it vp for store as vvell in their townes of warre, as for their priuate families. The kingdom is not full of merchāts, because by nature the inhabitants are idle, and that prouince cannot abound vvith Merchāts, where arts and artificers are not established. They haue not the vse of the sea, because it is not lawfull for a *Moscouite* to trauell out of his princees dominions; such, and such store of wares as they haue, as skinnes, Rosin and Wax, they barter for cloath, and diuers other commodities, which the *Armenians* bring to *Astrachan* by the *Caspian* sea, and the *English* to *S. Nicholas* in the bay of *Graduicū*. The gouernment of the great Duke is more tyranicall then of any other prince in the world; for he is absolute Lord and disposer of the bodies and goods of his subiects. Therefore *Mahumet* the Visier was wont to say, that the *Moscouite* and the great Turke amongst all the princes of the earth, were onely  
 Lords



Lords of their owne dominions, & in that regard thought the journey of king *Stephen of Poland* would proue full of daunger and difficulty. To preserue his maiesty and reputation, he vseth incredible policy and seuerity: first it is not lawfull for any of his subiects to depart the Realme vppon paine of death; and therefore no man there, dare go to sea, no not speake to an ambassadour, or vse the counsell of a forraine Physitian without licence. He weareth apparrel of inestimable value, ioyning the Ornaments of a Byshop to the maiesty of a king, by wearing a miter on his head, shining with Diamondes and rich stones; when hee weareth it not on his head, hee placeth it before his chaire of estate, and oftentimes changeth it, in boast of his riches; In his left hand he beareth a most rich crozier, apparrelled in a long garment, not much vnlike to that which the pope weareth when he goeth to masse: his fingers are full of golde rings, and the image of Christ and his blessed mother the virgin, are ouer the chaire wherein he sitteth. The priuy chamber and great chamber are full of men cloathed in cloth of Golde downe to the foot. In ceremonies of Religion hee vseth great deuotion and reuerence: at the Table as often as a dish is changed, or he hath a desire to drink, he maketh many signes of the crosse: he beareth singular regard to fastes, and in the Church he kisseth the ground with his foreheade, euen as others doe. That no man should proue a better scholler then himselfe, he suffereth no schoole but of writing and reading to bee kepte: they read nothing but the Euangelists, some History, the liues of Saints, a Homily of *Iohn Chrysostome*, or some such like, yea, they would hold him for an Heretike, that should go about to professe himselfe better learned; and assure himselfe, hee shall not escape punnishment. Which is the reason that our Notaries, nay the Secretaries themselves cōmonly can neither write nor answere Ambassadours of forraine princes, no farther then they are taught of the great D. When they negotiate, they no sooner name the great Duke, but all of them rise vp with great reuerence: the like is done at his table, when hee drinketh or speaketh to any man, and so in a thousand like casualties: they are taught euen from their cradles to beleue and talk of their great Duke as of God: vsing these phrases in their ordinarie



talking, God onely and our great *Semapor* knoweth this: our great Lord knoweth all things. Al we injoy health and riches; all proceedeth from our great Duke. For his subiectes seeing such state and magnificence in their Prince, and knowing no more then they are taught at home, reuerence and obey him as slaues, not as subiects, accounting him rather a God then a King. He hath not vnder him Lords graced with titles, as wee haue, Dukes, Barons, &c. but he bestoweth vpon one a hamlet, vpon another a farme, and these not hereditary, vnlesse he confirme it: and when he hath confirmed it, the farmers notwithstanding pay him a portion of their fruits, and owe him villainseruice: which is the cause that euery man dependeth on the will of the prince, and looke by howe much the richer, by so much the deeper is he indebted vnto him. To preuent rebellion, hee transferreth whole families and townships frome one prouince to another, and sendeth the one and the other into garrisons, as into exile: so farre away are the miserable people carried from their owne homes.

By this a man may gesse of his wealth and riches: for seeing he is absolute Lord of all, he vseth the seruice of their bodies at his pleasure, and what portion of their goods him listeth. Of the skins of wild beasts he chalengeth what portion he liketh; and of euery sort of fish, euen what he will. The skins are solde or giuen, as pleaseth him: the fish dried in the winde is kepte for victualling the garrisons. In the market no man may sell his wares before the king hath sold. Hee hath not many mines of gold or siluer. The best mart towns from whence he gathereth the greatest part of his reuenues, are *Astrachan* at the *Caspian* sea, whither the wares of the *Persians* & *Armenians* are broght; and *Saint Nicholas*, whether the ships of the English and *Hollanders* doe ariue, laden with cloath and other merchandize, which from thence are transported to *Vologda*. When his Ambassadors return, he taketh from them the presents giuen them by forraine princes, and in steed thereof bestoweth vpon them some other reward, and many times nothing at all. To speak in a word: he gleaneth whatsoever is good or ought worth thorough his whole kingdome; it is thought that hee hath great  
store



store of treasure in his castles of *Mosco*, *Ioroslane*, and the marshes of *Albi*, which may be true: for the great Duke *Iohn*, wasted in a manner all *Liunia*, sparing neither relique, challice, crucifix, nor any ornament of silver: and of that which is once brought in, he suffereth no part thereof to be transported out of his dominions, vnlesse it be for the ransome of souldiers taken in the warre, or of the poore people caried into captiuity. This is most true, that when hee lost *Liunia*, which king *Stephen* of *Poland* reconquered in the yeare of our Lord, 1582. he lost the richest prouince of all his dominions for the traffick of the *Baltick* sea, and the best, for the strength of 34. castles standing therein.

The strength of the kingdome consisteth in the manifold numbers of riuers and marshes, and in the thicknes of woods. Besides they vse to lay waste the parts neere their enemies that there the woods may grow thicker, which for the moysture of the soile quickly commeth to passe, and are as auailable as a wall or trench to the defence of the next townes. This pollicy brought great trauell to the *Polanders*, for they were constrained to loose much time in cutting downe the woodes before they could com to the inhabited places of their enemies. They haue a few fortresses, some built of stone, some of bricke after the *Italian* fashion, but without strength of moderne deuises or cunning workmanship. Such are the castles of *Mosco*, *Nonagrad*, *Plescouia*, *Porcouia*, *Slobada*: some are wrought with twigs and earth well troden downe, as *Smolonck*. But commonly the wals of strong places are built of great beams stuffed with turffe or mosse, leauing loop-holes for their shot. This fortifying is very auailable against great Ordinance, but exceeding subiect to fiering. They serue in the field (as we told you before treating of his gouernment) rather bearing themselues valiantly for fear of punishment, then of their owne natures, shewing alacrity or willingnes to the seruice. He hath his captaines at a becke, his souldiors suffer all extremities patiently; they care not for frost or raine; they indure hunger and scarcity with incredible contentment; they liue with a little: better able to defend a fortress, then fight in field, for here corage and agility, there con-



stancy and resolution are most seruiceable ; whereas the *Polan-*  
*ders* are better to fight in the field, then to keep a castle : as well  
 appeared in either Nation at the siege of *Vobsko*, wher the *Russe*  
 repulsed the Polonian king *Stephen Battore*, with his whole ar-  
 my of 100000. men, and forced him in the end to giue ouer his  
 siege, with the losse of many of his best captains and souldiers :  
 but in a set field the *Russie* hath bin euer noted to haue had the  
 worse of the *Polonian* and *Sweden*. And therefore the great duke  
*Iohn* finding by experience the vnaptnes of his souldiers, and  
 the readinesse of the Polonians in skirmishes, was wont to say,  
 that his men had need of a spur to driue them forward, and the  
 Polonians wanted a bridle to holde them backe . His chiefest  
 force is in horse, but what number he can raise, who can shew ?  
 For I do not beleue that he is able (as some say) to arme three  
 hundred thousand, because thogh his Empire be large, yet for  
 the greatest part it lyeth vnmanured, as the many daies iourney  
 betweene *Cazan* and *Astrachan*, and scarce meet one village  
 in the way, may well witnessse. In the war which king *Stephen*  
 waged against him (beeing not aboue 60000. foote and horse  
 strong) he was not able to raise so great a force, I will not say,  
 to meet him in the open field, yea not to hinder him from the  
 forcing of *Pozonia*, *Vilocoluc*, and other pieces, no not to diuert  
 him from the siege of *Plescowia*. In the year 1571. the Prince of  
 the *Tartars* with 80000. souldiers, pierced euen to the bowels  
 of his kingdome, and set fire on his imperiall seat *Mosco*. Ther-  
 fore I thinke that they that report, that the great Duke can le-  
 uie 300000. men, and the king of *Polonia* 200. do rather mean  
 heads of horses then riders ; for ther may be so many thousand  
 horse, & yet euery one is not to be counted a horse of seruice,  
 no more then euery horseman a rider, or able to find himselfe  
 armor. One hath his hart in his hose ; another wants abilitie ;  
 a third wants strēgth of body ; a fourth both corage & strēgth.  
 yea admit he could raise so many men, as these writers speake  
 of : yet would it be a harde matter, perchance impossible, for  
 him to assemble them in one place ; or if he could, where wold  
 wages, or victuals be found sufficient to sustain them. For two  
 hundred horsemen in *Moscouie*, require three hundred pack-  
 horses.



horses, and so many tenders, who must all be fed: as likewise the victulers, the merchants, the artificers, and such seruantes as can hardly bee spared in warlike enterprises. To performe this, whole *Moscorie* must of necessity bee gathered into one place, and then it were to be feared, least in so great a iourney from one part of the kingdom, the other part opposite would run to ruine and decay. Likewise, although such a proportion of horse, as hath beene spoken of, might be raised, it were not wisdom for the state to strip the borders of their garrisons; the prouinces of their sinnewes; the cities of their magistrates, and the country of husbandmen.

In which point *Basilus* in the conquest of *Lituania* and *Lithuania* committed a great ouersight; for that, taking away with him the vpland and country people, who should haue tilled the ground, and might easily haue bin kept in order without any danger by other good polices, by this course was afterwardes driuen, many yeares together to victuall the country (especially the great townes) out of his owne country of *Russia*, the soil lying there in the meane time wast and vntilled. And againe when he first conquered these contries, he committed no lesse an error in suffering the Natiues to keepe their possessions and to inhabit all their townes, onely paying him a tribute, vnder the gouernment of his *Russe* captaines, whose conspiracies & attempts were the losse of these places. The like fell out at the port Towne of *Narue* in *Tiefland*, where his son *Iuan Vasilivich* built a towne and castle on the other-side of the Riuer called *Iuangorod*; to keepe the countrey in subiection, which he built & fortified that it was thought to bee inuincible; when it was furnished, for reward to the Architect (being a *Polonian*) he put out both his eies, to disable him to builde the like againe. But hauing left all the natiues within their own cuntry, without abating their number and strength in due order, the town & castle not long after was betrayed to the k. of *Sweden*. Therefore I conclude, that prince whose kingdom is able to affoorde him 150. thousande horse, to be brauely furnished, if he can bring into the field but the third part (I speake of warre and not incursions.) Some more modest in writing affirme, that the



Moscovite could leuy 150. thousand horse if necessity to defend himselfe, forced him thereunto, and that *Iohn* the third in the voyage of *Astracan* entertained 120. thousand horse, & twenty thousand foot. The same king invading *Livonia* in the time of king *Alexander*, leuyed a mighty army, and notwithstanding maintained another vpon the borders of the kingdome. The great Duke *Iohn* adioyned to his troupes of horse, certain thousand of shot, most strangers, which yeilded him notable seruice in the defence of his Citties.

The *Englishmen*, who by reason of their yearely Nauigations into those countries are best acquainted with these relations, doe write, that the souldiers of *Russia* are called *Synaboyarskey*, or the sons of Gentlemen, because they are all of that degree by vertue of their Millitary profession, for euery *Russian* soldior is a Gent. and none others, and they take it by discent from their auncestors: so that the sonne of a gentleman (which is borne a souldier) is euer a gentleman and a soldior withall, and professeth nothing but military matters: when they are of years able to beare armes, they come to the office of the *Roserade*, or great Constable, and there present themselues; who entereth their names, and alloteth them certaine lands to maintain their charges; for the most part the same which their fathers enioyed, for the lands assigned to maintaine the army are euermore certaine, annexed to this office without improuing, or detracting one foot. But if the Emperor haue sufficient in wages, the roomes being full, so far as the land doth extend, they are many times deferred, and haue nothing allowed them, except som one portion of land to be deuided into two. The whole number of his souldiers in continuall pay is this: first, he hath his *Dworancy*, viz: Pentioners, or guard of his person, to the nūber of 15000. horsmen, with their captains and other officers, that are alwaies in a readinesse. These 15000. are deuided in three sorts: the first are chiefe Pentioners, and they receiue, some 1000. some 80. rubles a yeare, none vnder 70. The 2. sort, receiue betwixt 60. and 50. rubles, none vnder 40. The third & lowest sort, receiue 30. rubles a yeare, some 25. some 20. none vnder 12. the whole sum ariseth to 55000. rubles by yeare.



Besides these 15000. horsmen (as being the Empero. owne guard when himselfe goeth to the wars, resembling the *Roman* prætorian souldiers) there are 110. men of speciall account for their nobility and trust, chosen by the Emp. who are bound to find 65000. horsmen with all necessaries meet for the war after the *Russian* manner. And to this end they haue yearly allowāce for themselues, and their companies, to the sum of 40000. rubles. These 65000. are to repaire to the fielde euery yeare on the borders towards the *Crim Tartar*, (except they be appointed for some other seruice) whether there be wars with the *Tartar* or no. And because it should not proue dangerous vnto the state to intrust so great a power to Noblemen, first as they are many, viz: 110. so are they changed by the Emp: at his plesure: Secondly, they haue their maintenance of the Emp: being otherwise but of very small reuenue: Thirdly, for the most part they are about the Emperors person, being of his counsell, eyther speciall, or at large. Fourthly, they are rather paimasters then captaines to their companies, themselues not going forth ordinarily to the wars, saue when they are appointed by speciall command. So the whole number of horsmen alwaies in readinesse and continuall pay, are foure score thousand, few more or lesse. If he need a greater number (which sildom hapneth) then he entertaineth those Gent. which are out of pay: if yet he want, he giueth charge vnto his Noblemen that hold lands of him, to bring into the field euery man a proportionable number of his seruants (called *Rolophey*, such as till his landes) with their furniture: the which seruice being done, presently lay in their weapons, and returne againe to their seruile labors.

Of footmen in continual pay, he hath 12000. al gunners, wher of 5000. attend about the citty of *Mosco*, or where the Emper: shall abide; and two thousand *Stremancy strelsey*, or Gunners at the stirrop, about his owne person at the very Court or house where himselfe lodgeth. The residue are placed in Garrisons, till times of seruice, and receiue for their fallary euery man seauen rubbles a yeare, besides twelue measures a peece of Rie & Oates. Of mercenary souldiers being strangers (1588. he had 43000. *Polonians*: Of *Chircnasses* (that are vnder the *Polonians*).



about 4000. Dutch, and Scots about 150. of *Greeks, Turkes* and *Swedens*, all in one band, a hundred or thereabouts. These doe vse onely vpon the *Tartars* side, & against the *Siberians*, as they doe the *Tartar* souldiers (whom they sometime hire but onely for the present) on the other side against the *Polonian & Sweden*. Concerning their arming, they are but sleightly appointed. The common horsman hath nothing but his bowe in his case vnder his right arme, and his quiuer and sword hanging on the left side, except some few that beare a case of Dagges, or a Iavelin, or short staffe along their horse side. The noblemen ride better and richer appointed. Their swords, bowes and arrowes are of the Turkish fashion, and practise as the *Tartars* to shoot forwards and backwards as they fly and retire.

The footman hath nothing but his piece in his hand, his striking hatchet at his back, and his sword by his side; prouision of victuall the Emp: alloweth none, either for captain or souldior, neither prouideth any, except peradventure som corn for their money. Euery man is to bring sufficient for himselfe for foure monethes, and if need require to giue order for more to be brought him to the campe from his tennant that tilleth his land, or some other place: for diet and lodging euery *Russie* is prepared a souldier beforehand, for though the chiefe captains carry tents with them after the fashion of ours, with som better prouision of victuall than the rest, yet the common sort bring nothing with them, saue a kind of dried bread with some store of meale, which they temper with water, and so make it into a ball, or small lumpe of dough, and this they eate raw in steade of bread: their meat is bacon, or some other flesh or fish dried after the Dutch manner. If this souldior were as hardy to execute, as he is to beare out toyle and trauell, or as apt and well trained, as he is indifferent for his lodging and dyet, he would farre exceed the seruitors of other prouinces.

It is thought that no prince in Christendom hath better store of munition; which may partly appeare by the Artillery house at *Mosco*, where are all sorts of great Ordinance, al brasse pieces, very faire, to an exceeding great number.

Vpon his frontiers lie the *Tartars Precopenses*, the *Taurici*, the  
Cher-



*Chersonesi*, the *Circassi*, and the *Negayans*. These people inhabit a countrey seauen daies iourney distant, and are gouerned by Dukes, after the manner of the *Heluetians*. Hee hath receiued great iniury of the *Precopenses*, without hope of amends, because they are confederate with the great Turke, and by him furnisht with Harguebufiers, and Ordinance; and haue in their kingdome many strong places fortified with the *Turkish* Garrisons, and therefore he thinketh it hard and dangerous to inuade the, being backed by the Turke, whose power hee should likewise stir vp against them. It is the custome of the *Precopi* often vied to make inrodes into the prouinces of the great Duke, as likewise of the *Polonian*, and to carry away whatsoever commeth to hand. If the great Duke haue vanquished the *Tartars* of *Cassan* and *Astrachan*, let him attribute that conquest to his great Ordinance, which they wanted. This Duke led against the *Cassani*, an Engine made of this fashion: He fastened to the sides of Chariots a broad and large planke, boarded full of holes, and fitted for the shooting of harquebufiers and musketyers; with the which they did grieuously wound the enemies, and could not be hurt againe by the arrowes of the aduersaries. By these helps it was no mastery to vanquish and subdue them. But the *Precopi* haue the vlc of Gunnes, and (worth all the rest) the fauour and protection of the Turkish Emperour, who thirsting to open a way into *Moscouy*, or the *Caspian* sea, assayed not many yeares since to digge a trench from *Tanais* to *Volga*: but his forces were put to flight by the *Moscouites* with the ayde of the *Tartars*, who feared their vtter destruction, if the *Turk* had brought that deseignment to passe. This was a deuise of greater courage then wisdome: for the *Moscouites* not onely defeated his Nauye, taking part thereof, but also put all his Land forces to the sworde, consisting of fourescore thousand *Tartars* five and twenty thousand *Turkes*, and three thousand *Ianizaries*.

As we haue said before, the *Circassi* liue much after the manner of the *Swissers*; they endeouour not to inlarge their owne boundes, but serue for wages, sometime the *Turke*, sometime the *Persian*, and sometimes the *Moscouite*, from whose Dominion they



they are so far disioyned, that they stand in no feare of their seueral mightines. The *Tartars Negayans* are more to be dreaded, for their suddaine inrodes, and furious incursions, then for iceloufie of their forces, or that they are able to raise, or vnder-take any vóyage royall. Of late times they threatned the *Moscouite*, but their fury was appeased by sending them presents. It is the best course to hazard our money, rather then our forces against the thefts and spoiles of these barbarous Nations: for when they haue neither city nor stróg place to subdue, to keep them in subiection: what can you terme the war made against them, but labor with losse, & charge without profit? the great duke is forced to keepe great troupes of horse in *Citrachã*, *Casan*, and *Vitca*, against these *Nagay*: also a great garison in *Culagan* vpon *Tanais* against the *Precopi*.

But the mightiest of them all is the *Crimme Tartar* (whome some call the great *Cam*) that lyeth south and southeastwarde from *Russia*, and doth most annoy the country by often inuasions, commonly once euery yeare, sometimes entering very far within the Inland parts. In the yeare 1571. he pierced as farre as the city *Mosco* with an army of 200000. men without battell, or resistance, for that the *Russie* Emperor (then *Iaan Vasilovich*) leading forth his army to encounter him, marched a wróg way. The city he tooke not, but fired the suburbes, which by reason of the buildings consistig for the most part of woode, kindled so quickly, and went on with such fury, as that it consumed the greatest part thereof, almost within the space of four houres; where by fire and prease 800000. people or more wer reported to haue perished at that season. Their principall quarrell ariseth about certaine territories claimed by the *Tartar*, but possessed by the *Russie*. The *Tartar* alledgeth, that besides *Astrachan* & *Cazan* (the ancient possession of the East *Tartar*) the whole bounds north and westward so far as the city of *Mosco*, and *Mosco* it selfe pertaineth to his right. Which seemeth to be true by the report of *Russies* themselues, that tel of a certain homage done by the *Russie* Emperor euery yeare to the great *Crimor Cam*, the *Russie* Empe. standing on foot and feeding the *Crimor* horse sitting on horse-backe, with Oats out of his owne cap,



cap, instead of a boule or manger, and that within the castle of *Mosco*.

And this homage they say was doone till the time of *Basilius*, who surprising the *Crimme Tartar* by a stratagem doone by one of his nobility, was content to change this homage into a tribute of furs: which afterwards also was denied to bee payde; whereupon they continue their quarrels, the *Russie* defending his country and conquests, and the *Crimme* inuading him once or twice a yeare, sometime about Whitfontide, but oftener in haruest. What time if the great *Crimme* come in person, hee bringeth with him an army of 100000. or 200000. men, other wise they make short and suddaine rodes with lesfer numbers, running about the list of the borders as wild geese flie, inuading and retyring as they see aduantage. And now being entered thus far, not without occasion into the maners of these *Tartars*, I thinke it not amisse somewhat to discourse of their fights, their arming, their Religion and customes.

Their common practise (being very populous) is to make diuers armies, and so drawing the *Russe* into one or two places of the frontiers, to inuade at some place vn suspected and without defence. Their order of fight is much after the *Russe* manners; that is, to thrust on altogether without discipline in a hurry, as they are directed by their generall; saue that they are al horsemen, and carry nothing els but a bow, a sheafe of arrowes, and a falcon sword after the Turkish fashion. They are verie expert horsemen, and vse to shoot as readily backward as forward. Some will haue a horsmans staffe like a boarspear, besides their other weapons. The common souldiers hath no other armour, then his ordinary apparell, viz: a blacke sheepe skin with the wool-side outward in the day time, and inwards, in the night time, with a cap of the same. But their *Morseis* or noblemen imitate the Turke both in apparel and armor: When they are to passe ouer a riuer with their army, they tye three or foure horses together, and taking long poles or pieces of wood, bind the to the tails of their horses, & so sitting on the poles they driue their horses ouer. At handy strokes they are counted far better men then the *Russes*, fierce by nature, but more hardy & bloodie



dy by continuall practise of warre, as men neuer invred to the delights peace, nor any ciuill practise.

Yet their subtilty is more then may seem to agree with their barbarous condition. By their continual inuasions & roberies they are very pregnant and witty, to deuise stratagems on the sudden for their aduantage. As in their wars against *Beala* the 4. king of *Hungary*, whom they inuaded with 500000. men, & obtained against him a great victory. Wherein hauing slaine his Chansellor, they found about him the kings priuy seale, & therewith presently counterfitted letters in the Kings name to the next cities, with charge, that in no case they shuld conuey themselves or their goods out of their dwelling places, incouraging the people to abide therein without feare of daunger, and withall recounting how base a resolution it were to abandon their cuntry & possessions to so barbarous a Nation as the *Tartar*, dispraising themselves in all despightful manner, letting them to vnderstand, that though he had lost his cariages with some few straglers that had marched disorderly, yet hee doubted not but to recouer that losse with the fortune of a noble victory, if the sauage *Tartar* durst abide him in the field. To this purpose hauing written their letters in the Polish character by the help of young men taken prisoners in the field, and signed them with the kings seale, they dispatched them forth to all the adiacent quarters of the country; whereupon the *Hungarians* that were now posting away with their goods wiues, and children, on the rumor of the kings ouerthrow, by the comfort of these counterfet letters, stopped their iourney, and so being surprised on the sudden, were hemd in and made a prey to the huge numbers of these barbarous *Tartarians*. When they besiege a towne or fort, they offer much parle, & pretend many flattering curtesies to perswade a surrender, and being once possessed of the place, they leaue no cruelty vnpractised, pretending that faith and Iustice is to be kept toward no people but their own; in their encounters (where they alway practise by ambushments) they retire as repulsd for fear, so to draw their enemies within danger: but the *Russie* being well acquainted with this subtilty, is very wary of them. Whē they  
were



were in small numbers like rousers, to make their army seeme greater, they set counterfeit shapes of men on horseback.

When they giue the onset, they make a great and barbarous shout, crying altogether, *Olla Billa, Olla Billa*, God helpe vs, god helpe vs; they contemne death in that desperat manner, that they chuse rather to die, then yeelde: and when they are wounded to death & past recovery, they haue bin seen to bite their weapons in rage, wherein appeareth great difference of corage betweene the *Tartar* and the *Russie* or *Turke*. For if the *Russie* soldier be once put to retire, all his safety is set on speedy and a resolued flight, and being once taken, he neyther defendeth himselfe, nor intreateth for mercy, as reckoning strait to die: & the *Turke* comonly, when he is past hope of scaping, falleth to intreat, and casting away his weapon, offereth both his hands, as it were to bee manacled, chosing rather to liue a slaue, then to die constantly.

The cheefest booty they desire, is to get store of captiues, especially young boies or girls: whom they sell to the *Turks* or their other neighbors. And the *Russie* borderers (being vsed to their inuasions lightly euery summer) keep few other catle on the borders saue swine, which the *Tartars* will not touch, nor driue away, because they are of the *Turkish* religion and will eat no swines flesh. Of *Christ* they confesse as much as the *Turke* doth in his *Alcoran*, viz: that he came of the Angell *Gabriell* and *Marie*; that he was a great prophet, and shall be iudge of the world at the last day. In other matters likewise they are much ordered after the manner and direcion of the *Turke*, as hauing felt his force at the winnings of *Axon* and *Cassa*, with some other territories about the *Euxine* sea, which before were tributaries to this *Crimme Tartar*. So that at this day most vsually the Emperor of the *Crim* is chosen out of the *Tartar* Nobility by the *Turkes* appointment, and to him they giue the tenths of their spoils gotten by war from the christians. Vnder the Emp. they haue certain dukes, whom they call *Morses* or *Dimoy* morses, that rule ouer a certaine number of 10000. 20000. or 40000. a pece; which they term fords. Whē the Emperor hath vse of them in his warres, they are bound to



come & to bring with them their proportion of soldiers, euery man with two horse at least, the one to ride on, the other to kil, when it commeth to his turn to haue him eaten. For their chief victual is horse flesh, which they eat without bred, or any thing els with it. And yet (with maruel) though they serue al on horse-back, and eat all of horse flesh, there are brought yearly to the *Mosco* to be sold 30. or 40000. horse. So haue they great droues of kine and flockes of black sheep, which they keep rather for their skins then flesh, though somtime they eat of it. Towns they plant none, nor other standing buildings, but haue mouing houses, built on wheels like a shepherds cottage: these they draw with them wheresoeuer they go, driuing their catle with them, and when they come to their iournies end, they plāt these cart horses in a ranke, in forme of a Towne with large streets: neither hath the Emperor himselfe other place or manner of dwelling, saying, that the fixed and standing buildings of other countries are vnholosome and vnpleasant.

In the spring they begin to moue their houses from the south parts towards the north; and so driuing on till they haue grazed al vp to the farthest part of the north, they returne back againe towards the south (where they continue all the winter) by x. miles a stage. Of money they haue no vse at all, preferring brasse and steel before other mettals, especially bullat, which they vse for swords, kniues, and other necessaries; gold and siluer they neglect of purpose, as also tillage, to be more free for their wandering kind of life, and to keepe their countrey lesse subiect to inuasions. Which course indeede cannot but prooue disaduantageous to the inuaders, as it hapned in old time to *Cirus* and *Darius Histaspis*. For their maner is when they are inuaded, by flying, reculing, and fained fear, to draw their enemies some good way into the bowels of their country, & then when victuals begin to grow scarce, and other extremities to opresse their enemies (as needs they must where nothing is to be had) they stop vp the passages and inclose them with multitudes. By which policy (as some write) they had well nigh surprized the army of *Tamerlan*, had hee not with all expedition retired towards the riuer *Tanais*.



For person and complection they haue broad and flat visages, of a tawny colour, fierce and cruell in looks, thin haired on the vpper lip and pit of the chin, light and nimble bodied, & short legd as if they wer naturally created for horsmen. Their speech is very sudder and lowd, speaking as it were out of a deep hollow throat. Their chiefest exercise is shooting, wherein they traine their children from their infancy: and to couclude are the very same people whome the Greekes and Latines called *Scithe Nomades* or the Scythian shepheards.

There are diuers other *Tartars* (as I haue aforefaid) bordering vpon *Russia*, as the *Negar*, the *Cheremissens*, the *Mordwittes*, the *Chircasses*, and the *Shalcans*: all differing in name more then in customes or condition from this *Crim Tartar*, except the *Chircasses* that border southeast towards *Lituania*, who are far more ciuil then the rest of the *Tartars*, of a comely personage & state ly behavior, as imitating the fashions of the Polonian; wherof some of them haue subiected themselues to this crowne, and professe christianity. The *Negai* lyeth Eastward, and is reckned the best man of war among the *Tartars*, but very sauage aboue all the rest. The *Cheremessen Tartar* lyeth between the *Russie* & the *Naigai*, and are of two sorts, the *Lugaxoy*, that is of the valley, and the *Nagornay*, viz: of the hilly countrey. These haue so troubled the *Russie* Emperour, that vnder colour of a yearly pension of *Russie* commodities, he is content to buy his peace, yet with condition to serue him in his wars.

The most rude and barborous it acounted the *Mordwit Tartar*, a people hauing many selfe fashions and strange kinds of behavior differing from the rest.

Next to the kingdome of *Astrackan* the farthest part south-East of the *Russie* dominion, lyeth the *Shalcan* and the countrey of *Media*, whether the *Russie* merchants trauel for raw silks, sindon, saffron, skins, and other commodities.

The next bordering neighbor by *Finland* side is the King of *Sueneland*. Of late times this king holding a long warre against him, took from him by force the castles of *Sorenesco*, and *Pernania*, the great and the lesse in *Limonia* on the one side, while king *Stephen* cruelly vexed him with war on the other side. In the vt-



most bound of the *Finland Bay*, the *Swenian* to his great charge possesseth the fortresse of *Viburge*, maintaining therein a great garrison to resist the attempts of the *Russie*, and the great duke likewise in that sea & the coast adioyning, he keepeth ships of war as wel to be ready at al assaies against the aproches of this great du; as also to forbid the *Easterlings* the bringing of any munition or warlike furniture into any part of his dominions: neither doth he suffer other ships to saile in those seas, without a special placard signed with his own hand. By the benefit of this navy, the king of *Sweeland* (whersoever he finds means to vse it) becommeth maister of the field, and by vertue thereof seizeth vpon many places on the coast of *Livonia*, & the bordering territories, but where the Dukes horse and great numbers of footmen may stand him in stead, as in the open field removed from the sea, there he maketh his part good enough, and most commonly puts the *Swenian* to the worst. The best is, nature hath placed between thē such rough moūtaines, such cold, such yce, and such snows, that they cannot greatly endamage one another. The last neighbor is the king of *Poland*, between whom and the great duke this is the difference, the *Moscouite* hath more territories; the *Polonians* better inhabited and more ciuil: the *Moscouite* more subiects, and more subiect; the *Polonian* better soldiers and more coragious; the *Moscouites* are apter to beare the shocke then to giue a charge: the *Polonians* to charge: the *Moscouite* is fitter to keep a fortres, the *Polonia* to fight in the field; the *Moscouites* forces are better vnited; the *Polonian* more considerat & better aduised: the *Moscouite* lesse careth for want and extremities: the *Poloman* death and the sword: yea either nation is of greater worth, when either of their princes, is of greter magnanimity, as it hapned, when *Basilus* conquered the great Dutchy of *Smoloncke* & *Polonck*, and the large circuit of *Livonia*; And againe, when *Stephen* king of *Poland* in his last war against *Iohn* (*Basilus* son) reconquerd *Poloncke*, with diuers other places of good reckning, besieged the city of *Plesko*, and forced the *Moscouite* to leaue all *Livonia*: whereby I conclude, such as is the valor and wisdom of eyther prince, such is the force and corage of their people.

*Tartaria*



NEeds must this kingdom of the *Tartars* fall out to be the fairest & greatest principality through the whol world, when as, besides that portion which lyeth in Europ, it containeth more then a third part of *Asia*. In it are contained three famous and principall prouinces, *Sarmatia Asiatica*, both *Scythias* and the Regions of *Serica*, now called *Cathai*. Most fierce and barbarous Nations did alwaies inhabit this cuntry, as first the *Amazons*, a warlike kind of women, which in their dayes casting away the properties of their sex, vext the whol world, vsurped *Asia* & built *Ephesus*. Vpon their final extirpation arose the *Scythians*, no lesse dreadfull then the former. Thē succeeded the *Gothes* or *Getes*, termed by their neighbors *Polouci*, that is, rauinous or theeuissh. These the *Tartars* tamed, and erected their monarchy about the yeare of our Lord 1187. or as others say, 1162. Electing for their K. one *Cingris*, a mā of base birth & calling. This mans folowers at that time liued without maners, law or religiō, in the plains of *Caracoram*, tended their cattle, and paied their duties to king *Uncham*, otherwise *Presbiter Iohn*, who without doubt in those daies kept his court in *Tenduch* in the kingdome of *Argon*. But this king *Cingris* firste subdued the kingdom of *Uncham*, & afterwards imposed the yoke of subiectiō on the bordering prouinces. And without question that famous comet seen in the month of may, 1211. lasting 18. daies, & glimmering on the *Goths*, *Tanais* & *Russia*, with it's tail extended towards the west, did foresnew the succeeding invndation of these *Tartars*. For in the year folowing, this nation, whose name was not so much as drempt of before in Europe, wholly subdued *Sarmatia Asiatica*, or *Scythia*, inuaded *Russia*, *Hungaria*, and *Polonia*. And lastly erected other famous Monarchies in *China*, *Mein*, and *Bengala*.

At this day it is deuided into fiue principal prouinces: *Tartaria Minor*, lying in Europe betweene *Tanais* and *Boristhenes*. *Tartaria deserta*, of olde *Sarmatia Asiatica*, containing most of the *Hords*, but not all: *Zagatai*, *Cathai*; And lastly that great promontory, which lyeth outstretched in the furthest part of *Tartary* towards the North & East, & may be caled *Tartaria antiqua*,



*tiqua*, as the mother place of the true *Tartar* nation, vtterly vnknowne to *Ptolomy*.

*Tartaria  
Minor.*

The *Precopenses* liue in the open field about the *Euxine* sea, the lake of *Meotis*, and the *Taurique Chersonesse* which adioyneth vpon *Boristhenes* and *Tanais* in Europe. In this straight or *Peninsula* standeth *Theodosia*, now *caffa*, once a colony of the *Genois*, now a *Sangiarie* of the *Turkes*. Their whole territories are very fruitfull for corne and cattle, and the people more ciuil & curteous then many of the residue, yet retayning a smatch of their ancient barbarousnes. For they are sworne enemies to the *Christians* yearely inuading *Russia*, *Lithuania*, *Valachia*, *Polonia*, & many times *Moscouie*, yeelding vnto the *Turke* in the name of tribute euery yeare 300. *Christian* souls. To one of these princes *Selimus* gaue his deughter in mariage.

*Tartaria de-  
jarta.*

This in old time was called *Sartuasia Asiatica*, and better inhabited before the comming of the *Tartars*. It lyeth betweene *Tanais*, the *Caspian* sea, and the lake of *Kitay*, and a plaine cuntry, by nature fertil, if it were manured by the *Tartars*, nothing giuen to husbandry, but to lead a roghish & wandring life after the manner of the *Arabians*. Their chiefe delight is in hunting and warefare: Mill and Panique, they cast carelesly into the grounde, which notwithstanding yeeldeth sufficient increase. Their store of horse and cattell is so plentifull, that they haue to spare for their neighbors. For the most part they liue vpon Cartrages couered with skins and woollen cloth. Some defensible townes they haue, whereunto they fly in times of necessity.

*Astracan.*

*Astracan* is scituated vpon the *Caspian* sea: it is rich, affordeth excellent good salt, and very well frequented by *Moscouites*, *Turkish*, *Armenian*, and *Persia* marchants.

In the yeare 1494. it was taken by *Iohn Basilides* great Duke of *Moscouie*, and by him with the title thereof annexed to the *Moscouan* Empire.

The *Zagatayan Tartars* were so named of their Prince, the brother of the great *Cham*, which once raigned amongst them. They are now called *Hiesolbas*, that is to say, Green heads, of the colour of their *Dulpans*. They inhabit the ancient contries  
of



*Bactria, Sogdiana, and Margiana*, in times past the habitation of the *Massagetes*, so famous in armes. These are the most honorable people of the *Tartars*, indifferent ciuill, giuen to arts, & Lordes of many faire Citties built with stone, as *Samarcana*, once a towne of great fame and excellency, but now in these dayes decayed.

*The Great Cham.*

AS our auncestors were ignorant of the Regions scituated vpon the East side of the *Caspian* sea, which they imagined to be a branch of the Ocean: Euen so as yet little or nothing knoweth this age, what regions ly, or what people inhabit beyond that sea, and the mountaines commonly called *Dalanger* and *Vssont*. *Marke Paule Venetus* was the first that broke the yce in describing of those countries, and of him wee receyued what we know of the *Tartars*. The great distiance of countries, the difficulty of the iourney, and the inaccessible scituation of places, hath hindered the discouery of those prouinces: & the great Duke of *Mosconie* (by whose dominions wee may easiest trauell thither) will suffer no straungers to passe thorough his kingdom. The *Caspian* sea, a passage no lesse fitting for the iurny, is not frequented: and by the way of *Persia* infinite mountaines and vast desertes, deuiding both prouinces, oppose themselves against vs. And to the further hindrance of this discouery, neither the great *Cham*, neither the ki. of *China*, nor the D. of *Moscouy* wil suffer any of their subiects to trauel out of their dominions, nor any stranger to enter in, vnlesse he come as an Ambassador; neither (in this case) it is lawful for him to conuerse freely or range at his pleasure.

They do liue vnder diuers princes, the principall whereof are those that wear greene on their *Turbants*. These do inhabit *Shamercand*, & are at continual enmity with the *Persians*. Next are those of *Bochan*, *Mahumetans*: then those of *Mogor*, of whom you shall heare heareafter; and lastly those of *Cathay*, wherof we now intreat.

Neuer was there any Nation vpon the face of the earth, that enioyed a larger Empery then they doe, or haue vndertaken haughtier exploites: and I woulde that they had had some,



who might haue recommended by writing their doings to the world.

*M. Paul Venetus* writeth that this people once inhabited *Cingra* and *Berge*, prouinces scituated vpon the *Scythick Ocean*, without citty, castle or house, wandering like the Arabians frō place to place, according to the season of the yeare. They, as before acknowledged *Vncham* (whom some interpret *Prestor John*) for their soueraigne Lord, to whom they gaue the tenth of their cattle. In proesse of time they multiplied to such numbers, that *Vncham* being iealous of their neighborhood, began to lessen their number and forces, by sending them, nowe hither, nowe thither, vpon most long and desperat voyages, as occasion offered. Which when they perceiued, they assembled themselues, resolving to leaue their naturall soile, and remoue so far from the borders of *Vncham*, that neuer after he should haue cause to suspect their numbers: this they performed. After certaine yeares they elected amongst them a K. called *Chāgis*, to whome for the greatnes of his glory and victories, they added the surname of great. This *Changis*, departing from his own territories in the year of our Lord 1162. with a most fearfull army, subdued partly by force, partly by the terrour of his name, nine prouinces. At last, being denied the daughter of *Vncham* in marriage, he made war vpon him, & ouercomming him in battell, cast him out of his kingdom. After the death of *Chāgis* his successors afflicted Europ. In the year 1212. they droue the *Polosochi* from the banks of the *Euxine* sea. In the year 1228 they spoiled *Russia*. In the yeare 1241. they raised *Kionia* the chiefe city of the *Rutheni*, and *Batu* their captaine wasted *Polonia*, *Silesia*, *Moravia*, and *Hungary*. *Innocent* the fourth amazed with the tempest of these inuasions, in the year 1242. sent certaine Friers of the orders of *Dominicke* and *Frances*, to the court of the great *Cham*, to intreat a peace for Christendome.

The circuit of this Empire in the times aboue spokē of, stretched from the vttermost bounds of *Asia* to *Armenia*, and from *Bengala* to *Volga*, yea their incursions pierced euen to *Nilus* & *Danubius*. The *Macedonian* and Roman Empires were neuer so large. But because they were rather runnagates then men of war,



warre, wanting politicke government and military discipline, sometime ruling one prouince, sometime another, they rather wrought spoile and terror to the conquered nations, then fear of bondage or subiection, & at last seated themselves beyonde the mountaine *Caucasus*. After, it became deuided into many principalities, yet so that the title and maiesty of the Empire, remained alwaies to the great *Cham*, who (as we saide before) tooke the originall of this name from the great *Changis*. At this day this Empire reacheth from the desert *Lop* on the one side, and the lake *Kitania* on the other, to that famous wall of *China* scituate betweene 43. and 45. degrees, (which leadeth from mountaine to mountaine, til it end at the Ocean, and diuideth the *Tartars* from the *Chinois*) and from the *Scythian Ocean*, to the confines of *Tipura* and the bordering regions.

In the foresaide compasse are contained many and mightie kingdomes, and many puissant prouinces, as *Tangut*, wherein are the citties *Succuir* and *Campian*, built after the maner of *Italy*; *Ergimul*, *Carazan*, *Teber* and *Candu*, the chief cities of prouinces. In the midst of the Empire is *Tenduch*, which in time of *Paule Vene*. was in the iurisdiction of *Prester Iohn*, but now subdued by the great *Cham*. The greater part of the people were Christians (but *Nestorians*) the residue Mahumetants. Heere is the city *Cambalu* the imperiall seate, containing in compasse eight and twenty miles, and neere vnto it *Taiduc* scituated vpon a lake, and containing in compasse foure and twenty miles. Then *Xaindu* the palace of the great *Cham*, being foure square; euery square containing eight miles, and foure gates. Within that square, is another pallace, six miles square, in the midst whereof are 3. gates towards the south, and as many towards the North; from whence as likewise from euery corner, you may behold the imperiall pallace. And within this circuire is yet another square of one mile, hauing sixe gates like the former. Betweene euery wall you may see meddowes and woods, and within this square is the imperiall pallace, of whose pleasures, riches, and magnificence, neyther of his chases, fowlinges and fishings am I able to write. This whole region for the most part is very populous, full of townes, rich and ciuill,



which you may the rather belieue; first, for that the Tartars chusing this for their countrey, beautified it with the spoyles of *Asya*, *China*, and that part of Europe which they harried, and were neuer woon or taken from thence againe to this day: next for that the prouinces are most commodiously scituated for Trafick and negotiation, partly by reason of theyr admirable plaines and huge Lakes, amongst which are *Cazaia* (whose waters are salt) *Guian*, *Dangu*, *Xandu*, and *Catacora*: partly by reason of their large riuers, which with a long course do runne by the Prouinces of *Curato*, *Polifango*, *Zaiton* and *Mecon*. *Paulus Venetus* calleth it *Quion*. A great help hereunto likewise is the variety of fruits, and the aboundance of grain, Rice, wool, silke, Hempe, Reubarbe, Muske, and excellent fine Chamlets woauen of Camels hayre. *Paule* writeth, that it affoordeth Ginger, Cinamon, and Cloues, which I can hardly beleue. In many riuers are found graines of gold. Their coyne is not all of one value. In *Cathais* a coine is currant made of the blacke rinde of a certaine tree growing betweene the body and the barke: this rinde being smoothed, rounded and tempered with a gummy substance, is stamped with the image of the great *Cham*. In the kingdomes of *Caiacan* and *Carazan*, certaine sea-shells are currant, which some men terme *Porcelline*. This kind of money is frequent in many places of *India* and *Ethyope*. By this meanes the Princes get to themselues all the gold and siluer of the prouinces, which they cause to be molten and laide vp in most safe places, without euer taking any thing from thence againe. In like sort *Prestor Iohn* is thought to be Lord of inestimable treasure, while he maketh graines of Salt and Pepper to passe for currant coyne amongst his subiects. They brewe an excellent beuerage of rice and spice, which sooner procureth drunkenesse then wine. As the *Arabians* so they, delight in sower milk or *cosmus*, a kind of churned sower Mares-milke, very forcible to burne the braine.

His force consisteth first (as we told you) in scituation, in spacious territory, in goodly citties, in plenty of prouision, and in rich reuenues: for amongst other things he taketh the tenthes of wooll, silke, hemp, graine, cattle, and is absolute lord of al:

but



but the chief sinewes of his state consisteth in his armed troops which he keepeth in continuall pay and action. These liue alway in the field, foure or five miles remote from the citties. Ouer and aboue their sallarie, they are allowed to make profit of their cattle, milk and wooll. When he goeth to warre, according to the custom of the *Romans*, he mustreth part of that soldiery which lyeth dispersed through the Prouinces. For the most part all the Nations of the *Tartars* (except the *Varcheni*,) who are not subiect to the Great *cham*, fight on horsebacke. Their weapons are the bow and arrow, with which they fight very desperatly. They are very swift, their tents are made of wouen wooll, vnder which they keepe in foule weather. Their chiefeft meat is milke dried in the sunne after the butter is squized out, yea the bloud of their horses, if famine enforce them. They fight not pel-mel with their enemies, but somtime on the front, sometime on the flanke, after the *Parthian* manner, they ouerwhelme them as it were, with a shewer of arrowes. Whosoever carrieth himselfe valiantly, stands assured of reward and are graced with honor, immunities & gifts. Twelue thousand horsmen are appointed for the guard of the Prince, & it is said that of this kind of force, he is able to leuy a greater power the any other potentate. Howsoever it be, two things in his kingdom are worthy consideration: the one is, numbers which may be imagined by the spaciousnesse of his dominions: the other, their discipline, because he keepeth them in continuall pay. For as discipline rather than fury, is to be wished in a souldior; so in armies, a few trained and experienced soldiers are more worth, then many strong, and raw. The one may well be compared to Egles, Lions and Tygres, which obtaine principality amongst other beasts, not because they exceed them in hugenes of bodies (for then should they be a prey to the Elephant, horse and Bufall,) but because they excell them in swiftnesse and nimblenesse ioyned to the strength of their bodies.

Beside these things which *Mark Paule* writeth, certain *Englismen* sayling by the *Moscouite* sea, and the bordering Regions, haue pierced euen to *Cathaiia*, and haue set downe many memorable matters of this Prince, whom the *Moscouite* tearms



the Cæsar of *Cathay*, & the Turke of *Vluchan*, that is, the great Prince. And not without reason, for in magnificence of courts, amplexes of dominion, abundance of treasure, and number of souldiers, he goeth far beyond all the kings and potentates of *Asya*, and raigneth in such maiesty, that his subiects foolishly call him *the shadow of spirits, and the son of the immortall God*. His word only is a law, wherein consisteth life and death. He maintaineth Iustice with admirable seuerity, except for the first fault for which the offender is grieuously whipped: for euery other fault, he is cut in peeces by the middle: herein it should seeme they imitate the opinion of the *Storcks*, concerning the equality of offences. A thiefe is likewise flaine, if he be not able to repay ninefold, as well for a farthing as a pound. The first son is heire to the Crowne, and installed with these ceremonyes. The chiefe of their seuen Tribes, clothed in white (which is their mourning colour) cause the Prince to sit vpon a blacke wollen cloth spread vpon the ground, willing him to beholde the Sunne, and to feare the immortall God; which if he doth performe, he shall find a more plentiful reward in heauen than in earth; if not, that piece of black cloth shall scarcely be left him, wherevpon to rest his wearied body in the fiede, besides a thousande other miseries that shall continually attende him. Then they set the Crowne vpon his head, and the great Lords kisse his feet, sweare fealty, and honor him with most rich presents. Then is his name written in golden letters, and laide vp in the Temples of the Metropolitan city. He hath two Councils, the one for war, wherein twelue wise men consult: the other of state matters, consisting likewise of as many councelors. These manage all things belonging to ciuill gouernment, rewarding the good, and punishing the euill, taking special care to see those preferd, who haue done best seruice, eyther in war or peace, to his country or Emperour, and others seuerely punished, whoe beare themselues carelesly and cowardly in the charges vnto them committed. In these two points (that is in rewarding and punishing) consisteth so high a pollicy of good gouernment, that it may well be saide, the greatest part of the barbarous Princes by these two vertues onely, imprint so ma-  
iesticall



iesticall a reuerence in the harts of their barbarous subiects.

For what other face of good gouernment see you in the *Turk*, *Persian*, *Mogor*, or *Xeriffe*? whom reward they, but Captaines and souldiers? where vse they liberality, but in the field amōg weapons? Surely they built the foundation of their state vpon no other groundworke, nor hope for peace and quietnes, but by victory & strong hand: yea they haue no meane, in disgracing base minds and cowards, and in honoring high spirits and valiant souldiors. Neuer was there any common-weal or kingdome, that more deuised to honour and inriche the souldiour, then these *Barbarians*, and the *Turk* more then all the rest. The *Tartars*, *Arabians*, and *Persians*, honor Nobility in some good measure; but the *Turke* rooteth out the families of Noblemen, and esteems of no man vnlesse he be a souldiour, committing the fortunes of the whole Empire to the direction of slaues & men base borne, but with a special care of their good parts, & sufficiency. Let vs returne to the *Tartar*, and his forme of gouernment. *Astrologians* are in great request in those prouinces; for *M. Paule* writeth, that in the city of *Cambula* are fifty thousand: and when *Cublaycham* vnderstood by them that that Citty would rebell against him, he caused another to be built neere vnto it, called *Taindu*, containing 24. miles, besides the Suburbs. There are also great store of Fortune-tellers & Nigromancers in the kings pallace of *Xaidu*, as also in *China*, they are in high esteeme. *Ismaell* king of *Persia* enterprised few matters without their counsel, & it is no wonder that it is of such repute in those places, for betweene the *Chaldeans* and *Assyrians* it tooke the first Original in those Countries. The *Turkes* cannot abide it. The *Roman* Emperors did more than once banish it and the professors thereof, out of their gouernments. I would to God the like might be done amongst vs Christians, for it is nothing else but a branch of Paganisme. To end with the nature of this people: In outward shape they are vnlike to all other people; for they are broader betweene the eies, and balles of their cheekes then men of other Nations bee: they are of meane stature, hauing flat and small Noses, little Eyes, broad faces and Eyeliddes standing straight & vpright, swar-



ty of complexion, strong of constitutiō, patient of extremities, excellent horsemen, and very good archers. And as part of the Arabians inhabit cities, and are called Moores; part liue in the fields and mountains, and are termed *Baduini*: so some of these people dwel in cities; as the *Cathaians*, *Bochars*, & those of *Shamercand*: others wander through the plaines, and are deuided into Hords, and they are fiue in number, as aforesaid.

These *Tartars* far scituated from the residue, and inhabiting that remote *Scithian* promontory, which *Pliny* caletth *Tabin*, lying vpon the fret of *Anian*, are also dispersed into diuers hords, wandering vp and downe the country, and in a maner all subiect to the great *Cham* of *Cathai*.

Certain writers affirme that these hords issued from those x. tribes of Israel, which wer sent into captiuity by *Salmanasser* K. of *Affrica*, beyond the *Caspian* mountaines. In remembraunce whereof vntil this day, they retaine the name of their tribes, the title of *Hæbrewes*, and circumcision. In al other rites they folow the fashions of the *Tartarians*.

Some men likewise affirme, that king *Tabor* cam out of these parts, to turne vnto *Iudaisme*, *Francis* king of *France*, *Charls* the fift, and other Christian princes; & for his paines at last in the yeare 1540. by the commandement of the sayd *Charls* was burned to death at *Mantua*.

#### Turkey.

VNDER the Empire of the Turke is comprehended the better part of the ancient threefold diuision of the earth. He holdeth in *Europ* the whole sea coast, which from the borders of *Epidaurus* stretched it selfe to the mouth of *Tanais*: whatsoever lyeth between *Buda* and *Constantinople*, & from the *Euxine* sea to the banks of *Savus*, is his. In that perambulation is contained the greater part of *Hungary* in all *Bosnia*, *Serua*, *Bulgaria*, *Macedon*, *Epire*, *Greece*, *Peloponnese*, *Thrace*, and the *Archipelago* with the Ilands. He holdeth in *Asia* and *Affricke*, al that is between *Velez de la Gomera* & *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, between *Bugia* and *Guargula*, betweene *Alexandria* and the citty *Siene*; and from the city *Suez* as farre as *Swachen*. The hugenes of this territory may be imagined by the circuit of som of the percells:

*Palus*



*Palis Meotis* (wholly his) spreadeth it selfe 1000. miles into the land; 2000. and 700. miles do hardly incompasse the *Euxine* sea. The coast of the *Mediterranean* sea (as much as is subiect to him) containeth in circuit 8000. miles. *Egypt* wholly his, is esteemed five hundred miles long. From *Tauris* to *Buda* is 3000. & 200. miles; so far from *Derbent* vpon the *Caspian* sea to *Aden* vpon the red sea; and from *Balsara* vpon the *Persian* gulfe, to *Tremessen* in *Barbary*, is acounted little lesse then 4000 miles. In the sea, he is Lord of the most noble Ilands of *Ciprus*, *Eubea* *Rhodes*, *Samos*, *Chio*, *Losbos*, and many other in the *Archipelago*.

In this progresse are containd many most puifant kingdoms, abounding with all sorts of sustenance for the vse of man. For what prouinces are richer in corne then *Egypt*, *Affricke*, *Syria*, and *Asia*? What region more flowing with all good thinges then *Hungary*, *Greece*, and *Thrace*? In these prouinces he hath 4. cities of inestimable wealth, *Constantinople*, *Cair*, *Aleppo* & *Tauris*. *Constantinople* exceedeth al the cities in Europ in populousnes: for it is thought that there are therein more then 700000 persons: which if it be true, it is twice as much as may be saide of *Paris*. *Aleppo* is a great city in *Syria*, & the staple of the whol traffick of *Asia*. *Tauris* was the seat of the kings of *Persia*, but taken from them in our daies, and thought to containe more then two hundred thousand persons. Amongst all the cities of *Affrick*, *Cair* by many degrees may challenge the principality though some men compare *Cano* to it for greatnes. This cittie may well be called the garner, not onely of *Egypt*, but of the greater part of *Affricke* and *India*, whose treasures being conueyed first by the red sea, and from thence ouerland to *Cair* on the backes of Camels, are at length distributed through al the regions of the *Mediterranean* sea.

This Empire from smal beginnings hath rise to such greatnes, partly by their own armes, partly by the discords of the christians, that at this day it is the onely terror of the Christian commonwealth. Since those beginnings it hath bin their hereditary practise, to stand vpon their guard, to preuent their enemies; in their iournies to vse admirable celerity; to keep their



forces ready, and at hand; not to haue many Irons at one time in the fire; nor long to manage war with any one nation, least by practise they become better warriors then themselves, not to spende their time and treasure in voyages of base account; nor at one cast to set at all, but to proceed leasurely and aduisedly, and, which is not the least pollicy amongst many, that their princes march in person in most of their iournies. Diuers other lessons they obserue, by which in the space of 300. years they haue attained vnto a most mighty dominion; & that too, since the yeare 1500. to this day, they haue almost doubled.

The gouernment is meere tyranicall: for the great Turk is so absolute a Lord of all things contained within the boundes of his dominions, that the inhabitants do account themselves his slaues, not his subiects: no man is maister of himself, much lesse of his house wherein he dwelleth, or of the field which he tilleth, excepting certaine families in *Constantinople*, to whome for some good seruice, immunity was graunted by Mahumet the second. Neither any man be he neuer so great, standeth secure of his life, his goods or estate, longer then *Durante beneplacito* of the grand Seignior. By two policies he establisheth this tyranical gouernment; first, by disfurnishing the people of weapons; secondly, by putting all comands into the hands of *Renegados*, whom he taketh as tithe from their parentes in their childhood. By this subtilty he gleaneth the prouinces of the flower and sinnewes of their strength (for the likeliest and ablest springals are chosen:) & secondly, with the same means he armeth himselfe and secureth his estate. For these yong lads being taken from the laps of their parents, and deliuerd to the training of this or that schoolmaister, are made Mahumetans before they perceiue it, and so by reason of their young yeares forgetting their father and mother, depend wholly vpon the pleasure of the Grand-Seignior, yeelding him all dutifull and acceptable seruice, as their maintainer and aduancer to honor and riches. His forces consist in horsmen, footmen, shipping, corne & treasure. As touching his treasure, it is generally receiued, that he inioyeth little lesse thē 8. millions of ordinarie reuenue. And where some men think, that out of so large a do-  
mini-



minion a greater reuenuē may be raised, therein they deceiue themselves, in not calling to remembrance, that the nation giue their minds to nothing but to war, nor take care of any thing, but prouision of armor and weapons: courses fitter to destroy and wast, then to preserue and enrich prouinces. Hereupon, to giue corage to their armies, and to continue them in the loue of warfare, they suffer them to spoil the people, hardly leauing them wherewith to hold life and soule together. And therefore the poore men not sure of so much as their household prouisions, much lesse of their wealth (which by time & industry they may gather) take no more paines about their husbandry & traffick, then they needs must: yea, no more then their own necessity, as neer as they can, shal inforce them to make cleer at the years end. For say they, why shuld we sow, and another reape? Or why should we reape, and another deuoure the reward of our labors? This is the cause, that in the *Ottoman* dominions you shall see admirable huge woods; all things laide wast: few cities well peopled, and especially the better parte of the fields lying vnmanured. In our countries by the abundance of people ariseth the deernesse of victuals, but in Turkey through the scarcity of inhabitants. The greatest number of the husbandmen perish with carrying prouision and other necessaries to the remote places, through which their armies are to crauell. In their gallies likewise falleth most cōmonly so great a mortality, that of ten thousand rowers haled from their houses, scant the fourth part returneth againe. This the rather hapneth, because the Turkes in winter time moring their gallies, do not inyre their seamen and gally slaues to change of aire & the discommodities of tempestuous seas in that sealon.

The whole trade of merchandize for the most part is in the hands of Iewes, or christians of Europe; *Epidaurians*, *Venetians*, *Frenchmen* and *Englishmen*. In so large a territory as the Turk hath in Europ, there is neuer a famous Mart-towne but *Constantinople*, *Capha* and *Thessalonica*: In *Asia*, but *Aleppo* & *Damasco*, *Tripoli* and *Adena*: In *Affricke*, *Cair*, *Alexandria* and *Algier*.

Although the ordinary reuenues are no greater then aforesaid, yet the extraordinary arise to a greater reckning, & that



by confiscations and presents. For the *Bassas* and great officers, as it were Harpies, sucke the very bloud of the people, & after they haue heaped vp inestimable riches, for the most part they escheat to the coffers of the grand Seignior. It is reported that *Imbrain Bassa* carried from *Cair* six millions, and *Mahomet Visior* a far greater masse. *Orchali* besides, other riches had 3000. slaues. The *Sultna*, sister to *Selim* the 2. receiued daily 2000. & 500. *Chechini*, and for the ease of pilgrims and trauellors, iourning betweene *Cair* and *Meca*, she beganne to trench a watercourse alongst the way, an enterprife great, chargeable and maiesticall.

Yea to giue you an estimate of his reuenues, I haue seene a perticular of his daily expences, amoūting by the year sterling to one million, 968. thousand, 735. pounds, nineteen s. eight pence, aunswered quarterly without default: with the sum of 492. thousand, 164 pounds, foure shillings eleuen pence; & is for euery day 5393. pound, fifteene shillings ten pence; vpon which account, runneth for his own diet, one thousand & one Aspers a day, according to the customes of his auncestors, amounting in sterling mony by the year, to 2192. pounds, three shil. 8. pence. Among fise and forty thousand *Ianizars*, disposed through his whole dominions, euery one at six Aspers a day, is expended 591. thousand, and 300. pounds. The *Azamoglans* tribute children far surmount that number, and are allowed one with another 3. aspers a day. The fise *Bassas*, besides their ordinary reuenue, receiue one thousand aspers a day: and of ordinary reuenue, the chiefest receiueth for his *Timar* or anuitie 60000. ducats, the second 50000. ducats, the third 40000. the fourth 30000. and the fift 20000. In Europe he maintaines 3. *Beglerleis*, viz: in *Greece* one, another in *Hungary*, and a third in *Sclauony*, at a thousand aspers a day, the fourth in *Natolia*, the fift in *Caramania* of *Asia*, at like allowance. The Admiral receiueth 2190. pounds: the captaine of the *Ianizars* 1950. besides his anuity of 20000. ducats by the yeare. The *Imbrahur Bassa* (Mai. of the horse) receiueth 328. li. his anuity is 15000. ducates. The captaine of the *Spachi*, or horsemen, receiue 1961 pounds, the *Capigi Bassas* (head Porters) 1414. li. The *Sisingar bassa* controler of



of the household 263. pounce. The *Chans bassa* (captain of the Pensioners) 262. pound sixteene shillings, besides his annuity of ten thousand ducats. The residue of the foresaid account is expended vpon inferiour officers and attendants vpon the court, city and Armies, euery man receiuing according to his place & calling, (viz : ) the maisters of the Armory, maisters of the artillery, Physitions, porters of the Court and city, Archers of his gard, seruitors of his stable, sadlers, Bitmakers, captains of gallies, maisters, Boatswaines, Purfers, shipwrites, and such like.

To raise his donatiues to a high reckoning, it is a custome, that no ambass. appeare before him empty-handed : no man may looke for any office or honorable preferment, if mony be wanting : no generall may returne from his prouince or iourney without his presents, and you must thinke that so magnificent a prince will not swallow small trifles.

The *Valuods* of *Valachia*, *Moldavia* and *Transilvania* holde their estates by vertue of this bribery, and yet are often changed. For the estates are giuen to the best chapmen, who again to make good their daies of payment, oppresse the people, & bring the commons to extreame pouerty. Notwithstanding al this, we haue seene the Persian warre to haue drawne dry his coffers, and emptied his treasures. Not long sithence, both at *Constantinople* and through the whole Empire, the value of gold was raised aboue beleefe, insomuch that *Chechina* of Golde went for double his value, and the alay of gold and siluer was so much abased, that the *Ianizars* finding themselues agreed thereat, brought great feare not onely vpon the inhabitantes, but also to the Grand-Seignior, in threatning that they shuld set fire on *Constantinople*. In *Aleppo* sixty thousand ducats were taken vppe of the Merchants in the name of the graund-Seignior.

But although his reuenues are not so great, as the spacious & fertill apprehension of so mighty an Empire may seeme to obiect, yet hath hee an assistance of greater value then his surest reuenues, and that is, his *Timars* or stipendaries. For it is the custome of *Ottoman* princes to seize on al the land which they take from their enemies, and assigning a small parcell (perad-



uēture none at al) to the ancient lords, they deuide the residue into Timars, to euery gallant seruator a portion; but on condition, to find so and so many seruiceable horse for the warre. Therein consisteth the cheefest preservation of the *Ottoman* Empire; for vnlesse, vpon this consideration the care of manuring the land were committed to the souldiers, and they again, set it ouer vnto others for their vse and lucre, all wold lie wast through the whole Empire: themselues affirming that wherefoeuer the grand Seignior once treadeth with his horse hoofe, if it were not for this course, there neuer after woulde growe grasse again. With these Timars he also maintaineth 150. thousand horsemen, excellent well armed, and alwayes ready at their owne charges to march whether their leaders will command the. So great caualry can no other prince maintain with the yearly expence of 14. millions of gold. Which maketh mee wonder that some writers comparing the Turkish receipts with the Christians, neuer speake word of so huge a member of the Turkish puissance. It is reported, that in the war of Persia, the Turk conquered so much land, that thereof he erected 40000 Timars, and a new Exchequer at *Tauris*, from whence he receiueth yearly a million of gold.

The institution of these Timars, and the choosing of the *Azamogli* (for so they terme the young lads whom they mean to make *Ianizars* is (as it were) the very nursery of their militarie discipline, and the maine arch pillar of their Empery. Wherein they seem to haue imitated the Roman policy. For the Roman Emperors did alwayes invre their Cittizens to warre, and of them consisted the *Pretorian Cohorts*, which neuer departed frō the Emperours person. *Tacitus* sayth, that the election of the youngmen, which was made in this manner, gaue the occasion of the *Batavian* reuolt. In the Romain Empire these Timars or stipends were giuen to the souldiers in vse, as rewards of theyr good seruice, and wer termed *Beneficia*, and the lessees, *Beneficiari*. *Alexander Severus* confirmed them to the heires of his souldiers, but vpon condition, that they shuld be alwaies ready to serue, otherwise not. But *Constantine the great*, made them hereditary, without exception or limitation.



By these infinite troupes of horse the Grand-Seignior worketh two exceeding pollitick effects through his whole Empire, by the first he so aweth his subiects, that they no sooner stirre, but (as so many falcons) these *Timorots* are presētly on their necks, and this is the drift of dispersing them through the prouinces: the second is, that one part of them are alwaies ready at the sound of the trumpet vpon all occasions to march, while the other stay at home to keep the inhabitants in obedience.

Besides this Cauallry he entertaineth in continual pay great numbers of horse-men, deuided into *Spachi*, *Vlusagi*, and into *Caripici*: these are as it were the Nursery from whence springeth the degrees of *Bassas*, *Begleribeis*, and *Sangiaks*. Then hath hee his *Auxiliares*, the *Alcanzi*, the *Tartars*, the *Walchians*, and *Moldanians*.

The other pilar of his estate is his Infantry, consisting of foot-  
men, by them tearmed *Ianizars*. In them, two properties are to  
be noted; their byrth place and training. As concerning their  
byrth place, they are not chosen out of Asia, but Europe: for  
they euer accounted the *Asians* effeminate and cowardly, al-  
waies more ready to fly, then willing to fight; but the *Europi-  
ans*, hardy, coragious, and good men of war. The *Asians* they  
terme after their owne name, Turkes, but the *Europeans*, *Rumi*,  
that is, Romans.

As concerning their training, they are taught when they are  
young: and therefore no maruel, if, as they grow in age, so they  
increase in strength, actiuity, and courage: for these three ver-  
tues make a perfect souldior. The tithing of springals is made  
euery third yeare, vnlesse occasion constrain a quicker electi-  
on, as it hapned in the Persian war, wherein they were forced  
not onely to make more hast then ordinary, but also compel-  
led to take vp Turkish *Azamoglani*, which was neuer seen to be  
put in practise before. When these young lads are brought to  
*Constātinople*, they are surviewed by the captain of the *Ianizars*,  
who registreth their names, their parents, and cuntry in tables.  
From thence some are sent into *Natolia* & other prouinces, to  
learne their law & language, where being nouzeled in the su-  
perstitious customs of them with whō they conuers, they turn  
Mahume-

Footmen.

Their birth  
place.Their tray-  
ning.



Mahumetans, before they haue discretion to discerne good frō euil. Another sort is distributed into the offices of the *Seraglio*, the third sort (of the fairest complexions, and comliest proportion) are appointed to seruices in the port of the Grand Seignior. During the time that they are counted *Azamoglani*, they haue no certaine gouernor, nor trained vp in prescript orders, but some are set to keepe gardens, some to manure fields, others to manuell occupations, and dispatch houshold busines. At riper and abler yeares, they are called into the schooles of *Azamoglani*, (for so they are still tearmed till they are inrolled in the scroule of *Ianizars*) and then deliuered ouer to prescribed schoolmaisters, who traine them vp in exercises of labour and trauell, allowing them spare diet and thin clothing: they sleepe in spacious lodgings, not vnlike the monasteries of religious persons, where likewise they haue their ouerseers, without whose licence they dare not depart from their appointed places. Here they learne to shoot in the bow and Harquebush or to handle any weapon they haue most mind vnto, and when they haue well profited in any profession, then are they inrolled in the roll of the *Ianizars* or *Spachy*. For their maintenance the one sort are allowed no lesse then fiue aspers, nor more thē eight a day, the other ten.

Their allowance.

Being inrolled for *Ianizars*, immediately they enter into action, to garisons, or to waight in the Port. The later sort haue three most spacious houses like monasteries appointed them for their abiding place, and there euery one liueth vnder the gouernment of his superior of the same order, the yonger seruing the elder in buying and dressing his prouision, and such like seruices, with obedience, good wil, and incredible silence. Those of one order, eat at one table, and sleepe together as it were in long cloysters. If any one vpon occasion chance to bee out of his lodging but one night, the euening following he is well bastinaded, and that with so great seuerity and patience, that after correction, he holds it no disgrace to kisse the hand of his gouernor. In their iournies and expeditions, they count it religious seruice to spoile the cottages and houses of Christians, who must not find fault with any outrage: whatsoever they

Their licentious liberty



they bargain for, they must vary it at their own prices. They are subiect to no iudge, but their *Aga*, and he neither can giue iudgement of life and death vpon any of them, but in cases of sedition and mutinies, and that seldom, and very secretly. They inioy many immunities & priuiledges: they are crouched to, and feared of all men. Some of them are appointed to conuers with Ambassadors, others to accompany trauellers, especially those of honest reputation, for their security throughout the Turkish dominions. The election of their Emperour is in their power; for vnlesse they approue and proclaime the election, the instalment and inuesture is of no force. Euery Empe. coming to the crowne, giueth them some donatiue, & augmenteth their pay. In any dangerous war, part of the go forth with their *Aga*, or his lieutenant, but these are the last men that come to blowes. There is not amongst the Turkish honors, an office more subiect to enuy & ielousie then this captainship; for hee and the *Begler-be* of *Greece* may not choose their lieutenants, but the grand Seignior onely: the generall fauour of the *Ianizars* is his assured destruction. Their number commonly is 24000. but in our times they carry not their wonted reputations, because both Turkes and Asians are inrolled for *Ianizars*, whereas in former ages none were admitted but the European Christians: Besides, contrary to their custome, they marry wiues, without limitation. By their long residence about *Constantinople* (then which there is not a more effeminate citty in the world) they are growne vile, base, and men of smal seruice, yea lazy, insolent, and proud aboue measure. It is a common saying that in their prowesse and discipline consisteth the flourishing state of their Empire, but the argument might easily be framed to disproue and ouerthrow that opinion.

Besides his *Ianizars* he hath the *Azapi*, a base *Besorio*, fitter for the spade then the sword, entertained rather with numbers to tire, then by prowesse to defeat armies, opposing them to all dangerous seruices, yea to fill trenches with their carcases, and to make bridges of their slaughtered bodies, for the *Ianizars* to passe ouer to the breaches. And as the Romans had their *Legions* and *Auxiliaries*; the one the flower of their chiuallry, the



other is an ayde or augmentation; euen so the Turke accounteth his stipendary horsemen and Timarots the sinewes of his armes; the *Alcanzi* (such as he presseth out of townes & Villages) scarcrowes, and for ostentation: the *Ianizars* as the *praetorian* legions, and the *Azapi* as a rable of Pefants.

Now a word or two of his sea forces; There is no prince furnished with better meanes for building of shippes then this prince; for not onely the woods of *Epire* and *Cilicia*, but also of *Nichomedia* and *Trapezond* are so huge, so thicke, and full of tall trees, fit for all sorts of buildings, that a man woulde take the trunks falling by violence of storm frō the banks of the woods of *Nichomedia* into the *Euxin* sea, to be triremes already built & framed. They can want no workmen to fit and square this timber, for vile couetousnes hath drawne whole flocks of christian shipwrights into their Arsenals. The yeare after his defeature at *Lepanto*, he shewed his nauy whole and intire, yea itching to cope with the christian *Armada*. Neyther can he want a competent number of Mariners: for out of the Gallies which hee maintaineth in *Lesbo*, *Rodes*, *Ciprus* and *Alexandria*, and from the hauens of *Tunis*, *Bugia* and *Algier*, he is able to draw a sufficient proportion of sea men and gally slaues, as often as occasion requireth to furnish his royall army. The experience hereof we haue seene at *Malta*, at *Lepanto*, and *Goletta*.

Of warlike furniture his store is infinite; his ordinance innumerable: out of *Hungary* he caried five thousand: in *Ciprus* he won five hundred: at *Goletta* few lesse. The siege of *Malta*, wherein they discharged threescore thousand bullets, may wel declare their abundance of powder and shot: at *Favagasta* they discharged 118. thousand: at *Goletta* in 39. dayes they rased with their vncessant vollies, a fortification which was 40. yeares in building by our people: in the last Persian warre *Osman Bassa* drew after him 500. field peeces. Where euer they come, they neuer cease playing with their Ordinance, till they haue layde all leuell with the ground; if that preuaile not, they fall to mining; if that fayle, they go to worke with spade and pickaxe, if that too, they will neuer giue ouer till they haue filled the ditches with the bodies of their slaughtered soldiers.

They



They haue three thinges wherewith they terifie the whole world: Multitudes of men, vnconquerable: millitary discipline, vncorrupted: of corne and prouisions, store infinite. Multitudes in time past haue bred confusion, and commonly we haue seene great armies ouerthrown by small numbers, but the Turkish multitudes are managed with so good order, that although it be far more easie to range a small army then a great, yet euen in order haue their great armies excelled our smal, so that I must needs chnclude, that they goe far beyond vs both in discipline and numbers; heerein giuing place no not to the auncient Romanes, much lesse to any moderne Nation howe warlike soeuer. And this their due commendation consisteth not onely in armes; but in thirst, patience and harde dyet; as for wine, by their law they are vtterly forbidden it. In the field euery ten souldiers haue their corporall, to whom without any grudging they dutifully obey. You shall neuer see woman in their armes; their silence is admirable, for with the becke of the hand and signe of the countenance they vnderstand without words what they are to do: rather then they will make any noyse in the night, they will suffer their slaues and prisoners to escape. They punish theft and quarelling extreamely. They dare not for their liues step out of their rankes to spoyle vineyard or Orchard. They feare not death, beleeuing their destinies to be written in their foreheades ineuitable. The valiant are assured of preferment; the cowards of punishment. They are neuer billeted in townes, nor suffered to lodge one night with in them. To keep them in breath and exercise, their princes are alwayes in action with some neighbor or other being very ielous of the corruption of their discipline.

For the ciuill and politike gouernment of his estates, he causeth a counsell to be holden four daies in the week by the *Basfads*, whersoeuer the Prince sojourneth if it be in time of peace then at *Constantinople*, or in some other towne, according to occasions, within his domiuions: if in war, then is it kept within his paultion. In this counsell cald *Dyuan*, where audience is open to euery suter, they consult of embassaids, and of answers to be made to the: of matters of state, & of soueraignty, of the



means to provide for decayed or ruined provinces, of murders and condemnations. The suppliant, complainant, or suffer speaketh without advocat or attorney, and is forced to answer presently to the information of his aduersary if he be present, or to proue his accusation by witnesses. Vpon hearing of both parties, iudgement definitiue is giuen, and may not be repealed. When the Councell hath sitten seauen or 8. houres, the *Bassa visor* maketh true relation to the Prince, of all that hath bin handled: if he lye, it is present death. For the prince often listneth at a window, tearmed dangerous, right against the *Diuan*, being made in such sort, that he may heare or see, and not be perceiued: thogh he be seldom there, yet are they alwaies suspicious. After he hath heard the discourse & aduise of his Councell, he seldom gain sayth, but confirmeth or moderateth the same. These things thus ordered, they are written and registred by officers appointed. With his treasure his *Bassaes* intermeddle not, but two generall treasurers or ouerseers are chiefe dealers there, the one residing in *Romania*, the other in *Natolia*. Two *Cadalisquers* haue the administration of Iustice, who assist the *Bassaes* in the *Diuan*; neyther do any sit there but the twelue *Bellarbies*, & the Princes children, being Presidents in their fathers absence. Toward the East, from *Tauris* to *Balsara* lie the *Persians*; toward the South, and the *Persian* Gulfe, the *Portugals*; toward the Red sea, *Prester Iohn*; vpon the west, the *Xeriffe*, & the kingdome of *Naples*; on the north, border the *Polonians*, and the  *Germans*. Without all question, the *Turke* far excelleth the *Persian* in Military discipline: for Mahumet the second, tooke *Vssuncassan*. Selim the first (& after him his son *Soliman*) defeated *Ismael* and *Tamas*. *Amurat* the third, by his lieutenantes tooke from them all *Media*, the greater *Armenia*, and their chiefe city *Tauris*. Their batallions of footmen, and the vse of great Ordinance, which the *Persians* want, (and know not how to manage) haue bin the chiefe occasions of these their good fortunes. And although the *Persians* haue sometime preuailed in horse-fights, yet hath it beene alwaies with the losse of ground, not to themselues onely, but to their confederates also. For *Selim* the first, tooke from the



*Mameluks, Siria and Egypt*, and *Amurath the third*, almost extinguished the nation of the *Georgians*, their surest allies.

To the *Portugals* he is far inferiour; for in sea-fights and sea forces there is as great inequality between them, as between the Ocean and the Persian gulf. The *Portugals* haue in *India* hauens and castles, territories and dominions plentiful in timber, prouision, and all sorts of warlike furniture for the sea, not without many great Princes their allies and confederats; wher as the *Turke* hath no one place of strength in the *persian gulf*, but *Balsara*. The tract of the sea coast of Arabia, which standeth him in stead, hath but soure townes, and those weake and of small esteeme: which is sufficient to induce, that in this gulf as likewise in the red Sea, he hath small meanes to rig out any strong *Armada*. Besides, the soile is vtterly barren of Tymber fit for building of Gallies: for which scarcety whensoever hee had occasion to set foorth a Nauy, he was constrained to send downe his stufte from the hauens of *Bithinia* and *Cilicia* by *Ninus* to *Cair*, and from thence to conuey it ouerland vpon Camels backes to his Arsenall at *Suez*. What successe his fleetes haue had in those parts, may be read in the discourse of *Portugall*: for the *Portugals* take great care to preuent him of setting foot in those Seas, yea, when they but heare he prouideth Sea-forces, they presently spoile whatsoever they light vpon.

For Captains, Souldiors, Armes and Munition, he is better prouided then *Prestor Iohn*: for this prince hath a large territory without munition, & infinite souldiors without weapons; *Barnangasso* his lieutenant lost all the Sea-coast of the red Sea, and brought the *Abessine* into such extreimity, that to obtaine peace, he promised paiment of a yearely tribute.

In *Afrike* he hath a greater iurisdiction then the *Xeriffe*, for he is Lord of all those prouinces which lie betweene the Red Sea and *Uelez de Gomera*; but the *Xeriffe* hath the richer, the stronger, and better vnited. Neither of them for the neighborhood of the king of Spaine dare molest one another.

The residue of his neighbors are the Christians, and first the King of *Poland*: what either of these princes can effect th'one against the other, hath beene manifested by their fore-passed



actions. In some sort it seemeth that the Turke feareth the *Po-  
laques*: for vpon sundry occasions beeing prouoked (as in the  
raigne of *Henry* the third, in the warre which *Iuonia Voyvod* of  
*Walachia* made with the Turks, wherein great numbers of *Po-  
laques* serued) and (in the raigne of *Sigismund* the thirde) not-  
withstanding the incursions of the *Kosacks*, and the inrodes of  
*Iohn Zamoschus* General of *Polonia*, he stirred not, neither with  
wontlike disdain once offered to reuenge so great an indigni-  
ty. Againe since the vnfortunate iourney of *Ladislaus*, they ne-  
uer enterprised iourney against the Turkes, no nor at any time  
aided the *Walachians* their neighbors, their friends & confede-  
rats, but suffered whatsoeuer they held vppon the *Euxin* sea to  
be takē from them. But the smothering of this wrong I rather  
attribute to the base mind of the ki. then to any want of good  
will or courage either in the Gent. or Nobility. *Sigismund* the  
1. being by *Leo* the x. moued to war vpon the Turk, answered,  
Few wordes shall serue; first make firme peace betweene the  
christian princes, then wil I be nothing behind the forwardst.  
*Sigis.* the 2. bore a mind so far abhorring from war, that hee not  
onely neuer made attempt against this enemy, but being iniu-  
red by the *Moscuite*, let him likewise do what he would vnre-  
uenged. King *Stephen* a great politician, thought the war of Tur-  
ky full of danger, notwithstanding discouraging with his fami-  
liars, he would often say, that if he had but 30000. good foot-  
men ioyned to his Polonian hoisemen, he could willingly haue  
found in his hart to try his fortune with this enemy.

The princes of *Austrich* are borderers by a far larger circuit of  
land then any other potentate, and being constrained to spend  
the gretest part of their reuenues in the continual maintenāce  
of twenty thousand footmen and horsemen in garisons: they  
seem rather to stande content to defend their owne, then any  
way minded to recouer their losses or inlarge their boūds. *Fer-  
dinands* iourney to *Buda* and *Possonia* was rather to be counted  
couragious then prosperous: the reason was, not because his  
soldiers wanted strength and courage, but skill and discipline.  
For nūbers he was equal to the enemy, & reasonably well fur-  
nished with necessaries, but his troups consisted of *Germans* &  
*Bohemi-*



*Bohemians*, nations by influence heavy, slow, and nothing fit to match the *Turkes* skilfull and ready in all warlike exercises.

The *Venctians* likewise are borderers for many hundred mi. space by sea and land : but they maintaine their estate by treaties of peace, by traffick and presents, rather then by open hostility, prouiding very strongly for their places exposed to danger, and auoyding all charges and hazard of war, yea refusing no conditions if not dishonorable, rather then willing to trie their fortune in battell. The reason is not, because they want money and sufficiency of warlike furniture, but souldiers and prouision incident to so great warfare.

His last neighbor is the king of Spain, between whom there is no great difference : the king reuenues (I mean those of Europe onely) exceede the *Turkish* : for hee receiueh more the foure millions out of his prouinces of *Italy* and *Cicill*; two and vpward out of *Portugal*, and three from the *Indies* one year with another. In these onely he equalizeth the *Turke*, and in the ordinary reuenues of *Castile*, *Arragon* and *Belgia*, he far exceeds him. But what can you finde (say some men) to compare to his *Timars*? First I answere, that the kings reuenues are far greater then the *Turkes*, next his subsidies which he leuieth extraordinarily (of late times for the most part ordinarily) as his *Croisados*, do amount to as much as the intyre profites of some whole kingdome. His tenths of the spirituall liuings, are able to maintaine one hundred strong gallies : his escheats in *Spain* & *Naples* bring more into his coffers then a man would think. His beneuolences & presents sent him frō *Naples*, *Sicil*, *Sardinia*, *Millan*, and the New-world, are infinite and magnificent. Not long since *Castile* graunted a contribution of eight millions of gold to be payd in foure yeares, which sum amounteth to the *Turkes* whole reuenue of one yeare. What should I speake of his *Commendams* of the orders of *Montegia*, *Calatraria*, *Alcanara*, and *S. James*, which were enough if he had naught else to suffice him : he is great maister of the saide order, and thereby hath meanes to aduance and enrich his seruants, whome soeuer he pleaseth, as freely as if he himselfe were King of *France* or *Polande*. Also in *Spainne* hee keepeh three thousand good  
horlmen



horsemen, as many in *Flanders*, in *Milaine* foure hundred men  
 at armes, and 1000. light horse: in *Naples* 1;00. men at armes,  
 & a great company of light armed *Italians*. The number of his  
 souldiery in *Sicill* is one thousand five hundred. Neither are his  
 feodaries lightly to be esteemed, who vpon necessity are bound  
 by their tenors at their own charges, to serue personally in the  
 field, especially if you consider their numbers, wherein are re-  
 koned 23. Dukes, 32. Marquisses, 49. Vicounts, 7. Archbi. (for  
 they likewise in this case are bound to contribute as the great  
 lay Lords, 33. Bishops. And in *Naples*, 14. princes. 25. dukes, 37  
 Marquisses, 54. Earles, 448. Barons, to speake nothing of *Por-  
 tugall*, *Sicill*, *Sardinia*, & *Millan*. Lastly you must note, that these  
 troupes to whom the Turke granteth these Timars, are not so  
 renowned for their valor as for their numbers: for the Timars  
 and profits of their villages and possessions, together with the  
 greedy desire of enriching theselues with the demains of their  
 farmes, hath bred such loue of ease and peace in their mindes,  
 that they are grown cowards and base minded: by their good  
 willes hating the trauels of warres and innouations. They are  
 drawne from their houses with an ill wil, and they march with  
 a greater desire of returning home and inioying the pleasures  
 of their gardens, & the plenty of their granges, then stomacks  
 to cope with their aduersaries or to enrich theselus with spoils.  
 For if by a little pillage, fierce and valiaunt souldiers haue be-  
 come cowards and men of small seruice, what will faire posses-  
 sions, a pleasant seat, a rich dairy, and wife and children left be  
 hind, bring to passe? I may well say, and say truely, that these  
*Timarots* are fitter to bridle and keepe vnder the subdued pro-  
 uinces, then to fight in field against armed nations: & to this  
 vse it is good policy to maintaine them. For who knoweth not  
 that the Turkish subiects do hate his gouernment, his religion  
 and tyranny? For Religion onely, the Moores and Arabians,  
 who differ in opinion: and for religion and tyranny, the Chri-  
 stians who make more then two third parts of his subiects. For  
 ielousie heereof, he is forced to keep the greater part of those  
 troupes at home, vnles he should lay naked his estates to infinit  
 casualties. To speake in a word, his caualry is so far & wide dis-  
 persed



perfed throughout the prouinces, that they cannot easily bee drawn to any famous iourney in great numbers, without losse of long time, neither are they able to stay long from their houfes, but they will fall into difeases and extremities: fo that if the grand Seignior had no other aids but thefe Timarots, hee might happen to make many vnfortunate iournies.

The experience of forepaffed exploits, doth well fhewe the difference of their feuerall force. The losse of the Spanifh fleet at *Zerby*, may be put in the ballance againft the Turkish flight from *Malta*. The losse of *Goletta* againft the taking of the rock of *Uelez*. *Tunis* is alwaies to be taken at his pleafute that hath a liking thereto. The Spanifh king neuer enterprized any foie iourney againft the Turke, but he hath valiantly defended his owne at *Malta* and *Oran*. I wil fpeake nothing of the defeture at *Lepanto*, for other princes had their shares therein. Ther was a treaty of truce motioned betweene both princes, not many years fince, and equally accepted of both parties. For the one was inuefted in the war of *Persia*, the other in the commotions of the low countries. Thefe wars by reason of their remote diftances were extreame chargeable to both princes, but worfer to the king then the Turke: for though *Persia* be far from *Cōftantinople* (from whence the principal finnews of the war were to be drawne) yet it bordereth vpon *Mefopotamia*, and other fubdued prouinces, from whence his armies are fupplied with prouifions and treasures, but *Belgia* is far diftant from any part of the *Spanifh* dominions. The Turk hath to do with the *Persian* (a ftate without any mighty confederate worth fpeaking off) but the k. was ingaged in a war (of greater difficulty) fauored by the English, the French, and the Germans: nations feuerally equall in all points to the *Persian*.

*Turkey Romania.*

**A**Nd now that we haue but by name for breuities fake, run ouer the fpacious prouinces of this mighty, rich, & dreadfull potentate, we will in fome fort relate to the pleafure of the Reader, many the particulars of thofe good & ancient regions which at this day this *Saracenicall* nation termeth by the name of *Romania* and *Natolia*. *Romana* at this day is taken for that



part of Christendome, which was anciently called *Grecia*, and containeth the prouinces of *Thrace*, with it's *Cbersones*, vulgarly, the straight of *Gallipolis*, *Macedon*, *Epire* now *Albania*, *Achaia* now *Linadia*, *Peloponesus* now *Morea*, and the *Ilands* of the *Archipelago*.

Vntill the comming of *Cirus* king of *Persia*, these prouinces remained in freedome, but of all others he first gaue them the yoke of subiectiō. After him *Xerxes* the son of *Darius*, with the succeeding princes of *Persia* did no lesse afflict thē. When their turn was past, *Phillip* k. of *Macedon* acted his part, & vnited thē vnder his owne dominion, vntil the daies of *Perseus*, whom the Romans subdued & subiected. But the Roman Empire beeing diuided into the East and West, the *Grecians* began their Empire vnder *Constantine* the great, & ruled honorably many ages, vntill the discent, first of the *Goths*, secondly of the *Bulgares*, 3. of the *Saracens*, & lastly of the *Turks*, who slew their Emperour & seized on the Empire. Who at this day (except some relicks remaining vnder the *Venetian* dominions,) possesse the greatest part therof, as wel vpon the continent as in the *Ilands*. Those that are vnder the *Venetian* iurisdiction (saith *Bellonius*) litle differ, especially in religion, from those that are tributary to the *Turke*: for both sortes being mingled, those are subiect to the *Turks*, liue like *Turks*; and those that liue vnder the *Venetians*, do as do the *Venetians*. So vnspeakable is the rudenes of either, that through all their cities you shall not find a schoole to instruct their youth. *Promiscuously* all speak the *Greek* toong corrupted frō the ancient, but some better then others. The *Burgbers*, subiect to the *Italians*, speak *Italian* as well as *Greek*, but the *Villagois* altogether *Greeke*. And so the *Grecians*, which are subiect to the *Turk*, in cities speake *Turkish* & *Greek*, the *Villagois* onely *Greeke*, & in places of traffick they borrow one frō another, according as their busines is with those whome they *Negotiate*. And as they differ in language so do they in attire. Those that serue the *Venetians* go apareled like *Venetians*, those that liue vnder the *Turk*, like *Turks*. Both the *Ilanders* & those that liue on the continent aswel in *Europ* as *Asia*, althogh subiect to *Turky*, keep their ancient christian faith. Long also they reiected



reiected the primacy of the Latine church, and elected to themselves patriarchs, whom they acknowledge for their chiefe pastors, & apointed them seueral sees. Whom not only the Græcians thus obey, but likewise all those prouinces, which follow the Greek church, as *Circassia, Walachia, Bulgaria, Moscovia, Russia*, the better part of *Polonia, Mingrelia, Bosnia, Albania, Sclauonia*, some part of *Tartary, Sirtia, Cuoatia*, & generally al the prouinces about the *Euxin* sea. In number they are 4. viz: the Patriarchs of *Constantinople, Alexandria, Ierusalem, and Antioch*.

Of these, the patriarch of *Constantinople* is the Primat, sitteth in *Constan.* and chiefly moderateth ouer the *Caloieri* (so are the Greeke priests termed) which reside in mount *Athos*, and generally ouer all Christians professing the rites of the Greeke church throughout Europ; and for the Monasteries of mount *Athos*, and al other, dispersed ouer Europ, he payeth the Turke yearly 12000. ducats. The patriarch of *Alexandria* moderateth in *Egypt* and *Arabia*, and his dwelling places in *Memphis* and *Cair*, are not much inferior to his of *Constantinople*.

The Patriarch of *Ierusalem*, absolutely moderateth in *Iudea*, and ouer all professors of the Greek religion throughout *Siria*. And must of necessity euery year on the 15. of August, say masse in the Monastery scituated vpon mount *Libanus*.

The Patriarch of *Antioch* presedeth in the Monastries and the Greek churches, which are in *Beritus, Tripolis, Haleb*, and other places of *Asia*. And in these places, as in all other, the Turk permitteth the Christians to vse their consciences freely, so they performe their due and accustomed tributes.

## Thrace.

**T**hrace hath on the East the *Euxine* sea, the *Thracian Bosphorus propontis*, and *Hellepont*: on the north the mount *Hemus*, vpon the West the higher *Misia*, and part of *Macedon*, on the south the *Archipelago*. It is a most Noble prouince cold, plain & admirable populous, stored with grain, pulse & excellent wine, towards the seaside: but towards the vpland (lying more subiect to cold) it is not so fertile nor wooddy.

In it standes many goodly cities? *Philipopolis, Nicopolis, Hadrianopolis* and amongst many other *Constantinopolis*, by Heauen



erected to be the head of an Empire; as the onely seat which *Romans, Greekes,* and now the *Turkes*, haue chosen and reputed to be most commodiously seated, not for the gouernment on-ly of the Empire, but (as they conceited) of the whole world. *Gallipolis*, is another famous portion thereof: I will not stande to describe these triuials, yet is it a place of great moment, and therein resideth a gouernor, without whose licence no ship of what countrey soeuer may passe the streight, but he must cast Anchour at least for three dayes, vntill the *Turkes* haue made full search, whether they transport any slaues by stealth, or no.

Next followeth *Macedon*, a fertil region inclosed with hills, and neere the *Ionian* sea, plaine and woody. That it was once the Empreffe of the East, it is well known, but at this day, it is Turkish, and without any famous cities, saue in a peece of *Albania*. In it is nothing memorable but the mount *Athos*, or holy mount. It is 75. miles in compasse, three dayes iourney long, & half a daies iourny broad, resembling the shape of a man lying with his face vpward, whose highest cone, alwaies couered with snow, is seen 30 miles off at sea. It is exceeding fertile in grasse, fruit, oile, and wine. Long ago it was dedicated in honor of *S. Basil* to the Greeke *Caloieri*, and endowed with priuiledges, which at this day it enioyeth by the *Turkes* good fauor; that is to say, that no man neyther Græcian nor *Turke* may inhabit in this place, except he be a Priest. So that their nūber in these dayes are about six thousand, dispersed into 24. monasteries, auncient and warlike, built for feare of theeues and Pyrats, although there be no such great cause. In these Monasteries are many reliques, which cause great concourse of people, & they are stately built, and richly adorned.

This hill is in as great register with the Græcians for their *Sanctimonious* strictnesse of life, as is Rome with the Latines; yea, the *Turkes* themselues do send hither many bountiful almes. None of them liue ydely, but must do somewhat, and so do daily, for the œconomique of the house; as dresse Vines, fell timber, yea build ships, and such like mechanicall labors. They are poorly clad like Heremites, neither wear they shirts of linnen, but wollen, and them they spin, and sew themselues, neuer giuing



giuing themselves to study: and that more is, many of them can neither write nor read. And yet notwithstanding, if any man haue occasion to iourney by their houses, he shall if hee please find vyands scotfree, according to his calling.

*Epire*, now *Albania*, was once a very famous prouince, as witnesseth *P. Aemilius*, it had in it 70. cities, now destroyed, & turned into ruines or pillages, meanly inhabited. For the most part it is woody and barren, but neer the sea, fertile, and adorned with very beautifull hauens.

*Achaia* is a very goodly region, as may be gathered by the goodly citties, which therein once flourished (viz:) *Delphos*, *Thebes*, *Athens*, *Megara* and many mo, now destroyed.

So is *Peloponesus*: termed by *Pliny* the bulwarke of Greece. It yeeldeth all things that man can desire either for life or pleasure. And although the ancient cities be now defaced, yet is it for quantity the best peopled part of Greece. It is now vnder the Turke, and counted the best *Sangiak* ship in Turkey, as bound to bring at the commādemēt of the *Beglerbeg* of Greece 1000. horsemen vnder his owne pay. It is worth yearly 14. thousand ducats. The Ilands adioyning vnto these large continents, I will not discourse of: for as they are diuerse in worth and estimation, so are they many in number, and not worthy relation.

#### *Dalmatia*..

**D***Almatia*, is at this day diuided into *Sclauonia*, *Dalmatia*, and *Albania*. Slauonia lyeth vpon the west, *Albania* vpon the east, and in the middle *Dalmatia*. In all fertility it is as good as *Italy*. Of a country first wasted by *Cesar Augustus*, secondly by the *Gothes*; thirdly by the *Turkes*, and at this day shared amongst three such Lords, as are the *Venetians*, the *Turke* & the Emperour; it may be sayd to be resonable well inhabited. And so it is, hauing many fine Citties it, as *Iadera*, *Ragusinum*, &c. Howbeit, that part which is subiect to the *Turke*, lyeth almost desert, by reason of their continuall inrodes.

#### *Mesia superior*.

**B***ossina*, or *Mesia superior*, is also a parcel of *Illeria*, and erected into a Turkish *Beglerbeg*-ship, hauing vnder it 9. *Saniaks*. *Serua* nowe *Rascia*, lyeth between *Bosnia* and *Bulgaria*, it was



taken by the Turke 1438. and reduced into a *Saniak-ship* vnder the *Beglerbeg* of *Buda*. *Bulgaria*, which some take for the tower *Mesia*, is so famous a prouince, that the Turkish Emp. hath erected it for the chiefe seat of the generall *Beglerbeg* of *Europe*; vnder whose command are 21. *Saniaks*.

*Walachia*, containeth the two prouinces of *Moldavia* & *Transalpinga*. *Walachia* is a plaine and fertile country, finally inhabited, and destitute of firewood; but stored with excellent horse, cattle, & mines of gold and siluer, if the people durst dig them for feare of the Turks. In *Moldavia* dwell many *Armenians*, *Iewes*, *Hungarians*, *Saxons* and *Ragusians*, who forstal the whole traffick of those parts in their hands, bartering their corn & wine into *Russia* and *Polonia*, and their skins, wax, hony, powdred beefe, butter & pulse, into *constantinople*. The *Malmesey* likewise which is transported out of *Creet* into *Poland* & *Germany*, is caried thorough this cuntry, wherof the *Vaynod* receiueth a massie impost.

*Natolia.*

THat which the Turkes at this day terme *Natolia* or *Turcia maior*, once *Asia minor*, comprehendeth the prouinces of *Pontus*, *Bithinia*, *Asia* it selfe, *Licia*, *Galacia*, *Pamphilia*, *Cappadocia*, *Cilicia*, and *Armenia* the lesse; and in these prouinces of ancient times florished the states and kingdoms of the *Troyans*, of *Methridates*, of *Cressus*, of *Antigonus*, of the *Paphlagonians*, of the *Galathians*, of the *Cappadocians* & *Phrigians*: All which at this day are not sufficient to satisfie the only ambition of the Turkish tyranny. The inhabitants for the most part are Mahumetans, & naturall Turkes, of simpler natures then the Turks of Europ, and nothing so cruel as the *Renegado* christians. Yet are there many christians among thē in many of these regions, following the rites of the greeke church. Among these Turkes there is no acknowledgement of superiority, blood or nobility, but al are equall slaues to the grand Seignior, ouer whom he appointeth *Beglerbegs* and *Saniaks*. They are eyther a kind of idle or lofty people, for they are finally industrious, and were it not for their slaues, their grounds would generally lye vnmanured.

*Pontus* and *Bithinia* are now vnited vnder one name, & called *Bursia*. Heere once raigned the great King *Methridates*; and heere



heere stood the famous cities of *Chalcedon, Nichomedia, Apamia, Prusia, Nice,* and *Heraclea Pentii.*

*Asia propria*, now *Sabrum*, is a peculiar prouince of *Asia minor*, and containeth in it many famous prouinces, as *Phrigia maior, & minor, Caria, Misia, &c.* In *Phrigia minor* stood that noble city of Troy, famous at this day (saith *Bellonius*) an eye-witnes, for it is very ruinons of wals, gates, circuit, and marble sepulchers, found vpon the waies without the wals.

*Pamphilia* now *Caramania*, is one of the 7. *Sangiak-ships* of *Turkey*, and yeeld 8000. ducats of yearely reuenue. In this country, as also in *Cilicia*, are wouen those fine cloths which we cal *chā-blets*, watered and vnwatered. They are made of the hayre of Goats so fine and white, as no silke can surpasse them in those two properties.

*Cappadocia* now *Amasia*, is a goodly country, and the seate of the Turks eldest son. In it are many goodly cities, as *Trapezond*, once the seate of the *Comneni*, Emperours of *Trapezond*, whose Name and Progeny, Mahumet the seconde vtterly extinguished.

*Cilicia* now part of *Caramania*, is a good cuntry: the inhabitants are giuē to pasturing of goats for lucre of their fleece, of which they make their *Chamblets*; but otherwise, neyther giuen to Fishing, Nauigation, nor Husbandry. At the foote of mount *Taurus* (saith *Bellonius*) are diuers small villages, and excellent pastors about them, which for the fertility thereof shoulde seem to be one of the Turks Races: for from thence he culleth out euery yeer 600. horse of seruice, which they highly esteem and name *Caramani*.

*Armenia minor*, is a better foil, and more populous then *Cappadocia*, and round about incircled with tall, huge, broken, and woody mountaines.

*Arabia Triplex.*

**T**He three *Arabias*, are likewise parcel of this Empire, which is a maruelous great country, included between two huge bosomes of the sea, in maner of a *Peninsula*, viz: vpon the West & East with the *Arabian & Persian* gulfs, vppon the south with the Ocean, and vpon the North with *Syria* and *Euphrates*.

The



The inhabitants are indifferently called *Arabians*, *Saracens*, or *Moors*: Those are the true Arabians which liue out of cittyes in Tents, disperfed ouer *Syria*, *Egypt*, & *Afrike*: these giue themselves to feed cattle, and droues of Camels. Those which inhabite cittyes, are called *Moors*, and were once of such puissance, that they not only subdued *Syria*, *Persia* and *Trogladitica*, but likewise *Egypt*, a great part of *Afrike*, and almost all *Spain*, with the Iland of *Scecell*, and the kingdome of *Naples*.

Two hundred yeares they kept possession of these peeces, but of some part of *Spaine* 700. euen vntill the daies of our fathers. And further, this accursed generation at this day is not only spread ouer all the southern coast of *Asia*, viz: *Persia*, *East India*, and the Ilands of the *Indian* Sea, but likewise aduanced with great prosperity vnto diuers wealthy kingdoms, famous cittyes, and worthy Mart-townes, ouer all the south coast of *Afrike*, vnder this people the *Turkes* were first called into *Asya* to beare armes. Of their maners we haue spoken elswher. In their religion they are *Mahumetans*, for in this countrey that false prophet first opened his superstitious Map.

*Arabia deserta.*

**T**His is a vast countrey, full of Desertes, yet well inhabited with populous and warlike multitudes, especially toward *Euphrates*, and the mountaines of *Arabia Felix*, whether Merchants resort. The residue towards the west is sandy, by which if a man be to trauell, he must haue the stars to his guide, company for his safeguard, and prouision for his dyet: for otherwise, he shall surely lose his way, to surrender his goods to the theeuish Arabs, or starue in the Desert for want of food.

*Arabia Petrea.*

**T**Owards *Syria*, this is somewhat fertile, but smally commended for that property by the auncientes: For indeede it is exceeding barren and wanteth necessary sustenance, wood and fresh water. The memorable things herein are, the mountains at *Synay* and *Oreb*, vpon the former wherof, is at this day builded a Monastery of Christians, following the Greeke Church, and the only receptacle or Inne for wayfaring christians: other place of reliefe is there none.



*Arabia Felix* is a very large prouince, better manured and watered then the other. It is adorned with noble citties, & full of villages, especially towards the sea side, where are many excellent places of trade. The residue except the sand, is made manurable, either for feeding of catle or Camels, in which places liue infinit swarmes of diuers nations, by grazing and husbandry. It bringeth forth whatsoeuer wil grow in India, & that twice a yeare, in abundant manner, besides, Casia, Cinnamon, Mirrhe, &c. and soly as much Frankinsence, as will serue all the world. It yeeldeth also mettall, and excellent pearle all alongst the coast by fishing. It sendeth abundance of horse and sheepe into India, whose tayles weigh 40. pounds.

In it are many famous citties, as *Medina*, *Talnab*, *Mecca*, *Zidem*, *Zibit*, and *Adem*.

This citty of *Adem* together with the whole countrey, was in the yeere of our Lorde 1538. fraudulently surprized by the Turke, and their King hanged. It is now strongly fortified, and erected into a stately Turkish *Beglerbeg-ship*.

*Turcomania*, in times past a part of the quarter *Armenia*.



*Turcomania* comprehendeth no small portion of *Armenia maior*: what remaineth is accounted in *Georgia* Vpon the North lyeth *Colchis* (nowe *Margrellia*.) Vpon the West *Euphrates*, and the lesse *Armenia*, vpon the East that remainder of the greater *Armenia*, which is accounted in *Georgia*, vpon the south *Mesopotamia* (nowe *Dierbechia*) with the people *Curdi*. It is inuironed with mountaines, and beautified with plaines, amongst the which *Perian-er* (nowe *Chalderan*) *Antitaurus* (nowe *Mons niger*) are most renowned. It is generally exceeding fertile, and stored with Cattle, but maruellously subiect to deepe snowes.

The people by Nature are much giuen to theft and spoyle, as discending from the Tartars, and so at this day leade their liues, liuing in Tents and houels attending and pasturing their



cattle: Yet some of them invre themselves to tillage, and mechanic trades in weaving of chamblets and hangings both watered and vnwatered: of the like qualities are the *Curdi*, and some suppose, that these *Curdi* inhabite the ancient seats of the *Chaldeans*, whereuppon it is called at this day *Curdistan* by the Turks and Persians, but by the *Arabians*, *Keldan*, that is to say, *Chaldea*.

*Gurgistan, or Georgia, in times past Iberia.*

**G**eorgia, by the *Barbarians*, tearmed *Gurgistan*, comprehendeth the auncient *Iberia*, with parte of the greater *Armenie*, and peradventure *Atropatia*. Vpon the West lyeth *Mengaelia*, vppon the North, *Zuiria* (once *Albania*) vpon the East, the middle *Atropatia* (now *Siruan*) vpon the south, that part of the greater *Armenia*, which now is called *Turcomania*.

For the greater part it is couered with mountaines, woods, and thickets, and in that regard inconquerable, for the difficulties of the mountainous passages. It is notwithstanding fertile, and adorned with many large places and vallies, from whence arise many famous Riuers, as *Cirus* and *Araxis*, springing from the mountaine *Taurus*, and running thorough the whole prouince, vntill at last, it disgorge it selfe into the *Caspian* sea.

The inhabitants are tearmed *Georgiani*, of *S. George*, whom they advow their patron and aduocate. For they are Christians according to the Greeke church, with some small difference. They are very populous and warlike, strong of body, and valorous in fight, euen vntill our times maintaining their liberty in the midst of the Mahumetans, sometimes folowing the fortunes of the Turkes, sometimes of the Persians. But at this day, they haue not onely lost their wonted liberty, but also many famous fortresses and cities, as *Testis*, *Lori*, *Clisca*, *Gori*, and *Tomanis*, and withall some of them haue imbraced the Turkish infidelity.

*Palestina.*



**P**alestine is one of the most excellent prouinces of *Siria*, as wel in regard of habitations, as of many famous acts done therein, and celebrated in holy scripture. Vnder the generall name whereof are comprehended *Idumea*, *Iudea*, *Samaria*, and *Galilie*. Aunciently it was called *Canaan*, of *Chanaan* the son of *Cham*, whose posterity deuided the land amongst them, & that name it continued vntil the inuasion of the Israelites, who called it after their owne domination, *Israell*.

It was also called *Philistin*, of the *Philistians* once a powerful and mighty people: after that, the *Land of Promis*, and now lastly, *The Holy Land*.

It is scituated betweene the *Arabian* and *Mediterranean* seas, northerly vpon part of *Phenicia*; Eastward, vpon *Libanus*; southward and south-East, vpon *Arabia*; and West-ward, vpon part of the *Mediterranean*, which is tearmed the *Syrian* and *Phenician* sea.

From the very beginning (as witnesseth the holy scripture) it hath bin a most famous prouince, and afterward more renowned for the birth, myracles and passion of our Sauour Christ. The ayre is very temperate, the bodies of men healthfull, and very patient of labor. For the ancients will haue it to be scituated in the midst of the world, where it is neither pinched with extremity of cold, nor vexed with ouermuch heat. And therefore the Israelites say, This to be the land which God promised vnto *Abraham*.

For scite it is very pleasant, for plains & hills no lesse delightful, rich in diuers sortes of *Manufactures*, and well watered. And although it raine but seldome, yet is the soyle batefull, & that by testimony of scripture, auering it to be a land excelling all others in goodnes and fertility.

So that their graine is most delicate, their increase abundant, and their Roses most sweet. Rue, Fennell, and sage, and such like pothearbs it bringeth forth of it's own acord. Oliues, Figges, Pomegranats and Palme trees are very frequent; with some store of Vines. For although the *Saracens* are forbidden the drinking of wine, yet make they abundance, & very good,



for the vse of strangers dwelling in the countrey. They make three haruests, yet haue they neither Peares, apples, Cherries, Nuts, nor any other fruits common with vs: these are brought them from *Damascus*. Some fruits, as Oranges, and the apple of *Paradice*, they haue and preserue vpon the trees all the yeare long. It did once yeeld Balm, but not now, but is stored with hony, the *Egyptian Boam*, and suger Canes; so is it with Goats, Swine, Hares, Partridges and Quails; as also Lyons, Beares, and Camels. And in many places so pestred with Rats & mice, that if it were not for certaine Birds deuouring those creaturs, it were impossible to haue any haruest.

*Iordane* runneth through the middest of the Country, whose water is most delicious, and therein strangers are accustomed to wash themselues. In it's course, it maketh two Lakes, the one in *Cana of Galily*, the other at *Tyberias*, which is called *Genezareth*, and at last disgorgeth it selfe into the Ocean sea. Vpon the banks thereof grow Withies, Tamarisk, with many other sortes of shrubs and weeds, of which the *Arabians* make their darts, weapons, launces, and writing pens.

The former of these two Lakes, is especially filled, when the Snowes dissolue and run from *Libanus*. In the Summer it is dry, and bringeth forth abundance of shrubs and flags, wherein Lyons and diuers wilde beasts do shroud their carcases. The Lake of *Genezareth* runneth most cleerely, and yeeldeth diuers sorts of Fish, as Carpes, Pikes, &c.

It is not so broad, but that a man may see from one side vnto the other, as consisting of 16. miles in length, and six in bredth. The playnes round about are barren for the abundance of bushes, which hinder the husbandman fro manuring the ground. Yet the *Jewes* by industry do much amend it, and dwell about the bankes thereof for the fishing sake.

*Mare mortuum*, otherwise the Lake *Asphaltites*, so called of his bituminous fauor, was a place once wooddy and full of salt pits, which for the pleasantnesse thereof was resembled to *Paradice*; and therein stood *Sedome*, *Gomorrhah*, and the three other Citties, which for their sinne against Nature, were therein drowned and burnt by the doome of God. At this day it sendeth



deth forth smokes and fogs as from an infernall furnace, wherewith the whole valley adiacent for half a daies iourney is made barren. It neither yeeldeth fish nor foule, and whatsoeuer creature is cast therin, though bound hand and foot, it swimmeth on the face of the waters.

The land was once most populous, as appeareth by the muster of *David*, who numbred a thousand thousand, & three hundred thousand of men able to beare armes, besides the Tribe of *Beniamin*. As long as they continued their vpright and religious obedience to the seruice of God, the Land prospered, but assoone as they forgot God, they suffered many myseries, and those perpetuall, vntill they were cleane destroyed, and forced to fly euery way. For to speak nothing of ancient time, the 73. yeare after Christ, *Ierusalem* was taken and destroyed by *Titus*, with the slaughter and captiuity of infinite thousandes. In the yeare 136. it was restored by *Aelius Adrianus*, newe-named *Elia*, and giuen in possession to the Iewes. In the time of *Constantine* and *Helena* his mother, it fell into the hands of the christians, and so continued vntill the yeare 609. at what time it was sacked by the *Persians*, but left vnto the Christians, and so continued vntill the dayes of *Henry* the fourth, at what time it was againe taken by the *Sultan* of the *Sarazens*, and the Christians cleane bannished.

In the yeare 1097. in a generall Councell for the deliuey of the holy Land, the *Crossed Knights* were instituted throughout Christendome, and *Godfrey* of *Bulloygne* chosen Generall of 3. hundred thousand footmen, and one hundred thousand horse. These knights did many famous actes; recouered the land, instituted a Monarchy, and sometime with good fortune, & sometime with losse, continued the defence thereof, vntil the yeare 1290. In which yeare, it was vtterly subdued by the Soldan of Egypt. In whose possession it continued, vntil the yeare of our Lord 1517. and then was it ouercome by the Turkish armyes, who at this day retaine it in miserable seruitude. And so it resteth, peopled with men of diuers Nations and Sects; as *Saracens*, *Arabians*, *Turkes*, *Hebrenes* and Christians: whereof some follow the Latine Church, some the Greeke; as the Grecians,



*Syrians, Armenians, Georgians, Nestorians, Iacobites, Nubians, Maronits, Abessines, Indians, and Egyptians*, euery one hauing their peculiar Byshops, whom they obey.

## Galily.

**G**alilie vpon the North is enuironed with the steep hilles of *Libanus* and *Antilibanus*, vpon the west with *Phenicia*, vpon the East with *Caleciria*, and vpon the South with *Samaria*, and *Arabia* the desert. The soile is most fruitfull, yeelding all sorts of trees, and deuided by *Iordane*: vpon whose banks stand very many towns and villages, and so well watered either with mountaine torrents, or springs, that no part thereof lyeth vnumanured.

The Countrey is the more famous, for that in it, standeth (amongst the rude mountaines) the small Village of *Nazareth*, the place of our Lords conception: And at this day, there is a small Chappell archt and built vnder ground, wherinto a man must descend by stayres: Here (some say) the Angell appeared vnto *Mary*, and fortold her that she should conceiue & bring forth our Lord.

The Inhabitants are *Arabians*, short and thicke men, rudely apparelled, and weaponed with bowes, swordes and daggers. In this Region likewise standeth the Mount *Thabor*, whose North part is inaccessible, and whereon our Lord was transfigured.

## Samaria.

**S**amaria lyeth in a most delicate plotte of *Palestine*, but in bignesse not comparable to *Iudea* or *Galilie*. The soyle is partly mountanous, partly champian, pleasant, fruitfull, and very well watered with fresh and sweete water. The Cittye is now ruinated: but *Naples* for pleasure and delight is inferiour to no other. It is scituated vpon the side of a hill, the eyghth part of a myle from whence, a man may behold the ruynes of a great Temple: whereupon (as men say) Christ sate, when hee asked water of the *Samaritan* woman.

## Iudea.

**I**udea, farre excelleth any part of the residue of *Palestine*, and at this day enioyeth it's ancient fertility.

The



The tribe of *Juda* so named it, and in it, as in the rest of *Palestina* were very many worthy Citties, wherof *Ierusalem* was the chiefe seat of their Princes, the possession of the Patriarches, Prophets, and Apostles: the originall place of our faith, & the glory of the Christian world. By the *Barbarians*, at this day it is called *Godz*, or *Chutz*: It standeth on an eminent place, as wherevnto a man must alwaies ascend.

Saint *Ieroms* opinion was, that it stood not only in the heart of *Judea*, but in the very center of the worlde, as hauing *Afya* on the East, *Europe* on the West, vpon the South *Lybia* and *Africa*, and vpon the North, *Scythia*, *Armenia*, *Persia*, with the residue of the Pontique Nations.

What the glory hereof hath beene may bee coniectured out of *Tacitus*, who reporteth, that in the beginning of the sledge, it contained two hundred thousand soules. At this day it numbeth not aboue five thousand inhabitants, although many pilgrimes daily resort thither in a good conscience, and for deuotions sake.

It was once strongly and fairely walled, but nowe weakly, and therein it sheweth nothing so famous now, as the Sepulchre of our Lord Christ, whose Temple incircleth the whole Mount of *Caluary*, scituated vpon a plaine plot of ground, high round, and open at the top, from whence it receyueth light: but the Sepulchre it selfe is couered with an archt Chappel cut out of the mayne Marble, and left vnto the custody of the Latine Christians.

Whosoever is desirous to see this sepulchre, must pay nine crownes to the *Turke*; so that this tribute is yearely worth vnto him, eight millions of Duckets.

One hundred and eight foote distant from this Toombe, is the Mount (called the Mount *Caluarie*) whereon our Sauyour Christ was crucified by the trecherous Iewes. In this place are many other religious Reliques. And the Pilgrims which come thither, are alwaies lodged according to his owne profession; that is to say: the Latines with the *Franciscans*, without the citty, by Mount *Syon*: the Græcians are lodged with the *caloieran* Greekes, dwelling within the Citty by the sepulchre: And se  
euery



euery other Nation, Abessines, Georgians, Armenians, Restorians and Maronits, who all, haue their proper and peculiar chappels. Those Franciscans, which follow the Latine church, and are for the most part Italians, were wont to create the Knights of the sepulcher, and to giue testimonial vnto pilgrims of their being there.

Without this city is the vally of *Iosaphet*, & therein the tombs of the blessed Lady and S. Anne. The territory adioyning is exceeding fruitful in Vines, Apples, Almonds, Figs and oile: the mountains are no lesse stored with all sorts of trees, wild beasts and spiceries.

Besides *Ierusalem*, heere standeth *Bethlem*, now destroyed, & shewing nothing vworth looking one, saue a great and stately Monastery, of the *Franciscans*, within vvhich is the place where Christ vvas borne. *Rama* is novv likewise ruinated, the arches and Cesternes vvhich are nowe remaining, by the witnesse of *Bellonius* his own eye, are greater then those of Alexandria, but not so thicke.

*Gaza* is now a Turkish *Sangiak-ship*: the soyle about fertile, & the inhabitants *Gracians*, *Turkes*, and *Arabians*.

*Idumea.*

**I**N holy writ, this Region is called *Edom*, and by other Authors *Nabathea*. Toward the sea and *Iudea* the soil is fertile, but toward Arabia, desert and barren. Some say it is expugnable, for its deserts and vwant of vvater: yet is it stored therewith but hidden, and knowne to none but the natiues. Of olde they were a turbulent, vnquiet and seditious people, and so at this day they are like to their villanous and rogissh neighbours the *Arabians*.

*Phenicia.*

**N**Ext bordreth *Phenicia*, as part of *Syria*, exposed to the sea, and bordering vpon *Galile*. Of old it had many famous cities, as *Tripolis*, *Beritus*, *Sydon*, *Tyrus*, *Ptholomais*, *Capharnaum*, *Emissa*, and others: Amongst the which, *Tire* & *Sidon*, were most famous. *Tire* was a goodly citty, a Colony of the Romaines, and rounde about incircled with the sea, vtill *Alexander* in his siege ioyned it to the continent. It is now a neast of theeues, & the



receptable of the stifnecked *Druſians*. *Sidon* was no leſſe famous but now ruinated.

*Acon* or *Ptholomais*, is ſtrongly fortified, triangularwiſe, two parts whereof lye vpon the ſea, the third towards the land. The ſoile about is very fruitfull and delicious. The city adorn'd with a beautifull hoſpittall, ſtrong and well Bulwarked, once belonging to the *Tentonique* Knights. It hath alſo a very faire hauen, capacious of any ſhips comming from the ſouth.

*Beritus*, is an ancient citty, once an episcopall ſea, now famous for Trafficke and Merchandize, as the marts whereunto al the ſhips comming from Europ do arriue. It is ſcituated moſt ſafely, and almoſt inexpugnable.

Nowe (following mine author) and hauing finiſhed this tedious diſcourſe of the great Empire, by the patience of my Reader, I will alſo relate the Originall, the maners, the diſcent, and faſhion of religion of this warlike and infidelious people, being partly naturall, as lineally diſcended from the Scythians and Tartars, and partly Apoſtata and *Renegado* Chriſtians.

Generally they haue broad viſages, correſpondent in the proportion of their members, faire and tall, and ſomewhat inclining to groſſenes. Their haire they regard not, ſaue onely that of their beards.

They are of a groſſe & dul capacity, wayward, ſlow, and lazy, hating husbandry, and yet aboue all people in the worlde couetous and deſirous of riches, yea ſelling all places of Juſtice and gouernment to their beſt chapmen. Amongſt one another exceeding curteous; and, as ſeruite toward their ſuperiours, in whoſe preſence they keep admirable ſilence, and yeeld due reuerence: but toward ſtrangers they are all faſhioned of pride, inſolency, & boſting, thinking no nation in the world to equalize them; In their ſpeech, entertainment, and geſture, bewraying their inherent inſolence; faithfull to none, but where fidelity may produce aduantage. By nature they are as ydle, & giuen to exceſſiue eating and drinking, fitting cloſe by it three daies together, and not abſtaining from wine, althogh by their law they are forbidden the drinking thereof. No leſſe are they addicted to Lechery and lothſome vnnaturall venery: excee-



ding credulous, superstitious, relying vpon dreames, fortunes, diuinations, and destiny, beleeuing euery mans fortune to bee written in his forehead, impossible to be auoided: the fundamentall reason, why they aduenture like brute beastes into so many desperate dangers.

As concerning their Religion, a man might write much, but we studying breuity, do relate, that generally, as a people too too credulous, they imbrace many absurd and triuial opinions touching the creation & end of the world, of paradice, heauen, hell, the earth, the creation of man, and Mahumets iourney to heauen, euen such and so grosse, as would make our children to laugh, if they heard them fabled. They do al acknowledge one God, they reuerence Christ, not as the son of God, but as a prophet borne of the virgin Mary, and not crucified on the crosse, but some other mā foisted in by the subtilty of the Iews. Idols and images they will not indure, and obserue the Friday, as we do the sabaoth. They keepe a Lent of thirty dayes, which they call *Ramadan*, and fast all daye, but in the night they make amends for all, abstaining from nothing that cometh to hand, saue swines flesh, wine, and women. Next this feast, followeth their Easter, by them termed *Bayran*, it continueth 3. daies, and during that time, they take no delight in any pastims. This feast falleth not at all times alike, but sometimes in the winter, sometimes in the spring, and sometimes in autumnne, by reason, that they account not their yeere acording to the course, of the sun, but of the moone: the rising wherof at first quarter they adore, bearing the figure thereof as we do the rose, in ensignes.

They are circumcised Iew-like, but not as they, on the eight day, but at the eight yeare. They haue no bells after the maner of Christendom, neither wil they suffer the Christians to haue any, but five times in one day & night, their priests ascend the steeple, with their lowd roarings and outcries to call and assemble the people to prayers. By their good will they wil not be called Turkes: for in the Hæbrew tongue that denomination signifieth a Vagabond or banished man, and is accounted a word of disgrace, and therefore forsooth they must be stiled, *Musolman*, that is, Right-beleeuers.

They



They haue likewise amongst them (as amongst the Papistes) foure orders of professed persons, viz: the *Torlaci*, the *Dervisi*, the *Calenderi*, and the *Hugbie mali*; the most wickedest sect of all the residue, giuing themselves to all imposture and vncleanes. They are not very dainty to conuerse with christians, but with small intreaty will eate, drinke, and traffique with them; yea, and sometimes mary their daughters, permitting them to liue peaccably after their consciences: but to the Iewes, they are most infociable, detesting their company, and hating their tables, accounting them the basest people in the world, neither wil they mary with any of that progeny, no, nor receiue him in to the Mahumetan religion, vnlesse they be first baptized. By their lawes they may haue but 4. wiues, yet by prescription euery man taketh as many as hee can well maintaine: one of these is accounted the wife, to her the residue are vnderlings, & may at any time easily be diuorced. Their women go seldom abroad, but if they do, they mask their faces, are galantly atired and shine in gold, stone, and Iewels: Twice a weeke (as doth men) they resort to the banes. They neuer blaspheme the name of God, nor of Mahomet, nor of Christ, nor of our Lady, nor of any other saints, but if any be herd so to offend, he is greuouously punished, let him be of what calling or religion soeuer. At dice and cards they neuer play, but onely at *Alueolo*. They are very charitable, disbursing their almes, not only to Turkes, but also to Christians, & men of all professions, yea to brute beasts, sometimes buying quicke birds, which for charities sake, they will againe let fly at liberty. Their garments are long, and open before to the foot except their shirts, which they weare without their *Braccas*, so that as they go, they are openly seen. Their raiment is very faire and costly, viz: of cloth, silke, imbroiderie, and set with pearle. They couer their head with a Turbant, except those of the discent of Mahomet; they were altogether green: but the christians inhabiting among them, were no one colour, but as they please (except greene) but they are all clothed in long garments like the Turkes, & are not distinguished by any apparrell they wear (of what profession soeuer they be) but only by the attire of their heads. In salutations they neuer

M m 2                  vncouer their heads,



heads, neither doth the meaner salute his better; the left hand with them is the place of honor, and the better sort ride about their affayres on horsebacke.

In dyet they are very rude; they fare basely, and grossely, & yet they eat thrice a day, at morning, noone, and euening, alwaies without table-cloth or napkin; not sitting orderly at table, but on the ground, or some low stoole, with theyr legges acrosse Taylor-like. They feed vpon all sorts of fleshe, except Porke, which is forbidden them by their law. Their chiefeft food is Rice, and the *Asyan* Turks care not much for fish, but the *European* Turks for nothing more. By law they forbear wine and therefore drinke water, whereinto the better sort mix eyther hony or Suger, & in cold weather, in stead of a toast they throw in a burning cole, to take away the offensiue operation of this raw element. They make great vse of *Opium*, and there is not one of them but eateth it, belieuing that thereby his courage increaseth, and thereby lesse dreadeth the hazard of war. They make water cowering downe like women, and their priuat buildings for the most part consist of timber, and mortar, verie narrowe, and ill contriued; wherein, to say truth, they are not intensiue, esteeming it an heynous sin to bestow more cost vpon the frame, then is likely or conuenient to last longer then during the life of one man: but in building of Temples to the honour of God, in prouiding for publike receptacles for Trauellers, in erecting Hospitals, publique bathes, watering places for men and Cattle, and fountains to wash away their imaginary pollutions, before they enter into their *Meschites*, they are most sumptuous, most prodigall. No lesse a pride take they in building of Conduits, in erecting of bridges, and pauing of high-waies; all which in Turkey you shall see very carefullie repayred, and as a man may say, sumptuously and magnificētly prouided for.

Except vpon the frontyers, in *Turkey* you shall see no fortified Cities, but rather the walles that haue bin fortified, ruinated, and the fields wasted, according to their prouerbe, *quà Ottomanicus aliquis transiit, ibi nec folia, nec gramina proveniunt*. And not vnruly, for assoone as they haue conquered any prouince, they



they murder the great ones, especially those of royal blood, & as for the welthiest Burgers, they transport thē into remote provinces, already invred, and subiected to his lawes and gouernment, not forcing their consciences, but onely despoyling thē of their arms, restraining their liberty of traouelling out of their limits, and forbidding them to serue any other potentate, to preuent rebellion. In inuention of engines against their neighbors they are admirable industrious, not caring to obtain that by craft and faithles cowardize, which they cannot gaine by force, or the efusion of much blood: but those base proiects not preuailing, without respect of honor or military glory, they are not ashamed to betake themselues to their heels. Yet to speak truth, they are good soldiers, & to their especial aduantage, excellently disciplin'd, being obedient to their cōmanders, most laborious in their fabriks, content with a small refreshment of victuall, & that most grosse, contrary to the gluttonous behavior of all christian warfare.

Their armes are a lance, a bowe, and a quiuer of arrowes, an yron mace, a battle axe, and a Semitar, and those in chafed with golde and siluer, besides their great ordinance, whereof at this day they are Lordes of infinite pieces.

This Empire began to take root in the yeare 1300. vnder the fortunes of one *Osman* or *Othoman*, from whom the succeeding princes of that house haue deriued and vsurped the surnames of *Othoman*, euen as the Emperors of Christendom haue continued the title of Cæsars, since the first Roman *Iulius*. Frō that time vntill this yeare 1608. and from that *Othoman* vntill this *Amurath*, wonder it is to relate, how in the space of 300. years, from so meane a captaine, so base a people, and in so shorte a time, (considering the groath of the Roman Empire) this Empire is now grown to be the terror of the world, and almost to equalize that of the Romaines. How long euery particular prince raigned, and what exploites they perfourmed, I rewe to record, and meane not to relate; onely let mee remember you of that diuellish policy of theirs, howe one brother at his first comming to the crowne murdereth all the residue of his brethren, and male-competitors, thereby presuming to liue secure



and fearlesse of innouation: *indicet Deus*. They first seated the model and maiesty of their Empire in *Prusia* a citty of *Bithinia*; then they transported it to *Hadriople*, and lastly to *Constantinople*. In which imperiall citty is now his Court or palace, three miles in compasse, wholly inclosed with a strong wall, and situated the pleasauntest of any pallace on the face of the earth, tearmed by them the *Seraglio*. Within the inclosure of this wal are many pleasant parks, sweet fountaines, sumptuous Arbours, and innumerable lodgings richly built, especially those wherein the great Turke himselfe resideth. Within this inclosure likewise, are two other inclosed receptacles or lodgings for womē; in the one are continually kept at least 1500. dames, out of which are culled 150. for the daily seruice of the Empe. & those are sequestred into the other of the lesser lodgings.

For his guard he daily maintaineth 4000. footmen, by the stiled *Ianizars*, viz: slaues, by way of tribute haled in their infancies from the bosomes of their Christian parents. He hath alwayes in Court likewise attendant on his person 15000. horsemen (besides those that serue vnder the *Beglerbegs*) & those are deuided into foure classes or orders, viz: *Spazi*, *Vlofagi*, *Steliftari* and *Caripici*, all paid out of his *Casna*, or Exchequer. Besides these *Pretorian* bāds, he likewise maintaineth out of his Exchequer not so few as 10000. *Ianizers* garisoned, through al parts of his Empire, vnder seuerall leaders, acknowledging no other Lord, soueraigne or maintainer, but the grand Seignior.

Morcouer, he hath another order of souldiery, tearmed *Timarots*, and these are such horsemen as lie dispersed vnder their seuerall *Saniaks* ouer the whole Empire; and for the maintenāce of themselues, & of thus or thus many followers fit for seruice, haue so much of the conquered landes allotted vnto them, in maner of pensions or entertainment, as is thoght sufficient. And these *Timars* or pensions at this day raised in Europ, are thoght sufficient to entertaine 80000. horsemen: those in *Asia* or *Natolia* 50000. & those wrested from the crown of Persia 40000. What are rayfed in *Syria*, the adiacent regions in *Egipt*, & *Africa*, haue not bin estimated, but all these serue vnder their *Saniaks*, and they at the commands of their *Beglerbegs*, or Colonels.

The



The Court is commonly stiled by them *Capy*, viz: the port, wherein are many great officers, by vs spoken of before, and whose seruices are onely destinated to vses within the *Seraglio*, and they are for the most part Eunuches, with their rable of vnder Eunuches. But without the *Seraglio* are also diuers honourable offices for the gouernment of the Empire, the chiefe whereof is their *Muffti* or Pope, who onely hath plenary power to interpret their lawe and *Alcoran*. In the second Ranke, are their *Caldeleschers*, viz: chiefe Iustices, and they haue the hearing & deciding of all temporall suits betweene party and party. In ancient times they were but two, one in *Rumilia* or *Europe*, the other in *Natolia*: but *Selimus* the third, added a third equall in authority to the other two, ouer the prouinces of *Epirot*, *Siria*, *Arabia*, and part of *Armenia*. These chiefe Iudges haue iurisdiction ouer all inferior iustices in particuler prouinces, and by them are nominated, but confirmed by the grandseignior himselfe. After the *Caldeleschers*, follow the viceroy *Bassaes* (counsellours of estate) whose number is vncertain; in old time 3. or 4. but of late nine. The president of these the Turkes terme viceroy *Azem*, and in truth, is a personage of great dignitiy and authority in managing the affayres of the state, as the man with whom the Grand-seignior doth only communicat his weightiest intentions and secretest deliberations.

In the next place appeare the *Beglerbegs* (masters *del Campo*) the chiefe whereof is he that is tearmed of *Romania* or *Gracia*: The second is the *Beglerbeg* of *Anotalia* or *Asia*. The third, is the *Denizi Beglerbeg*, that is to say; the Lord high Admirall. And these three *Beglerbegs*, haue equall place and authority with the former *Bassaes* in the *Diuano*, or place of publique Audience.

Before the last war of Persia, this Empire was vndergouerned by 40. *Beglerbegs*, who likewise had vnder them, 270. *Saniaks*, but since those times this number, hath bin much augmented, viz: in *Europe* resided 7. In *Affricke* 4. In *Asia* 29.

The turkish Arsenals for shipping are four; the first is at *Pera*, and containeth 33. dockes or mansions for so many Gallies: The second is at *Gallipolis*, and containeth 20. both vnder the



the charge of the high Admiral and his seruitors: The third, is at *Suez* vpon the red sea, containing 25. mansions, & the fourth and last, at *Balsara* in the Persian gulfe, consistting of fiftene gallies, and these two last vnder the changes of the *Beglerbegs* of *Balsara* and *Carro*.

His yearely reuenue, without accounting his *Timars* is estimated at 15. millions of duckats.

In the time of *Selimus*, were reckoned one million and 333. thousand Christian soules to liue within his dominions, not accounting those that inioyed freedom of conscience by priuiledge, nor those that then were subiect to the *Aegyptian sultan*, whom the said *Selimus* vanquished.

The Iewes likewise liue dispersed ouer his whol dominions, in such infinite numbers, that scarce no towne nor village, but is very populously replenished with their families, speaking diuers languages, and vsing the trade of Marchandize in royall and rich fashion. Thus to my power, haue I laide out the portraiture of this mighty, tyranicall, irreligious, and bloody Empire, which as it began by the sword, and propagated by the sword, so let all Christians henceforth pray, that by the sword it may fal, and first vanish into nothing, as of nothing (to speake of) it tooke Originall.

*The kingdom of Persia.*

**P***ersia*, and the Persian glory hath bin often obscured, first by the *Arabians* (who to bury in obliuion the memory of their former reputation, enacted by law, that they shoulde no more be called *Persians*, bnt *Saracens*;) then by the *Tartarians* led by *Chingis*, and lastly by *Tamerlan* and his folowers. But not long before our times by the vertue of *Ismaell Sopby* (of whose Originall and fortunes for the more better vnderstanding of the state and History of *Persia*, it shall not be amisse to deuise) the kingdom regained his ancient splendor. When Mahumet, after the deceate of his first (wife who adopted him her heyre) by her riches and his new superstition, had gotten him a name amongst the vulgar, hee married for his second wife *Aissa* the daughter of one *Abubacer*, a great rich man, and of high authority in those quarters. By this mans continuance, & the friendship



ship of *Omar* and *Ottomar* his kinsmen, he gathered together a great rable of Arabians, and partly by faire meanes, and partly by colour of religion he became master of many of the bordering townes: and also about the same time gaue *Fatime* his daughter by his first wife to *Haly* his cozin: & to him after his death, all his earthly substance, making him the head of his superstition, with the title of *Caliph*. *Abubacer*, by whose countenance Mahumet became gracious, taking in ill part the preferment of the young man by the aide of *Omar* and *Ottomar* (whose desires were in hope of succession by reason of the old mans yeares, & for kinred sake, rather to see *Abubacer* then *Haly* *Caliph*) began onely to resist *Haly*, and to spoile him and his wife *Fatime* of all the substance which was left him by his Vncle. *Abubacer* died: *Omar* and *Ottomar* succeeded. *Omar* was slaine by a slaue; *Ottomar* in a priuate quarrell: after whose death *Haly* succeeded. Against him rose *Mauié*, who accusing him as accessarie to the death of *Ottomar* his Lord, caused him to bee slaine neere *Cafe*, a citty within two dayes iourney of *Babylon*, where likewise he lyeth buried. The place is called to this day *Massadell*, that is, the house of *Haly*. After his decease the inhabitants of *Cafe* proclaimed *Ossan* the son of *Fatima* *Caliph*, but him likewise *Mauié* resisted and slew by poyson. Then was he absolute *Caliph*, and after him his son *Iazit*. *Ossan* left behind him twelue sons, one wherof was called *Mahumet Mahadin*. The Moors say he neuer dyed, but that he shall returne againe to conuert the world, & therefore they keepe alwaies ready in the *Mosque* of *Massadella*, a horse gallant furnished, where in their foppery they affirm that this worlds conuersion shall there first begin. Vpon these differences of *Haly*, *Abubacer*, *Omar*, *Ottomar*, and *Mauié* haue mighty factions of armes and opinions arisen amongst the sectaries of this new superstition. The Persians labour to prooue *Haly* true *Caliph* by the last will of Mahumet; the Arabians stand as stiffly to the three first. When from the yeare of our Lorde God 1258. to the yeare 1363. the Moores had no *Caliph* (*Mustapha Mumbala* the last *Caliph* beeing slaine by *Alcu* king of the *Tartarians*) a certain Noble man in *Persia* named *Sophi*, Lord of *Ardenell*, deriuing his pedigree from *Haly* by *Musa Ceresin*



his Nephew, and one of the twelue sonnes of *Ossan*, in memory of whom hee altered the forme of the Turbant, by his vertue and valour won great credit and estimation to his new faction.

To him succeeded *Adar* the son of *Guine*, to whom *Assembeg* a pomefull prince in *Siria* and *Persia* gaue his daughter in marriage. But his son *Iacobbeg* fearing the power and estimation of *Adar*, caused him to be slaine, and deliuered his two sonnes *Ismael* and *Soliman* to his captain *Amanzar*, willing him to call them in prison in *Zaliga* (a Castle in the mountaines :) but *Amanzar* detesting the tyranny of his Lord, conueyed the children to his owne house; and brought them vplike Gentlemen amongst his owne sonnes; and falling sick of a deadly disease, forecasting what might happen after his disease, gaue the horses and money, willing them to flye, and to betake themselues to their mothers house & tuition. *Ismael* the eldest was no sooner returned to his mothers place, but hee vowed reuenge for his fathers death, and after some fortunate expeditions, tooke vpon him the cause and protection of the followers of *Haly*, from whō he deriued his Pedigree. He made the turbant higher, & sent Ambassa. to all the orientall Mahumetans, to exhort them to vnity in religion and cognifances. By these means and fortune of his armes, he became a terror to the East, and slewe *Ossan* then vsurper of the *Persian* estate with his ten brethren, except *Marabeg*, who saued himselfe and fled to *Soliman* the first Emperor of Turkes, imploring his ayde. This *Ismael* at the lake *Vay* ouerthrewe with a great slaughter the prince of the *Tartars Zagatai*, and in heat of his victory had passed the riuer *Abbian*, if his Astrologian in whom he greatly trusted, had not foretold him that his passage should be prosperous, but his returne infortunat. He left to his sonnes a most spacious Empire, bounded with the *Caspian* lea, the *Persian* gulfe, the lake *Sioc*, the Riuer *Tygris* and *Oxus*, & the kingdom of *Cambata*; which prouinces containe more then twenty degrees from East to West, and eightene from North to South. And althogh these kingdomes lying within these bounds held not immediatly of the crowne of *Persia*, yet all acknowledged the *Persian* for their soueraign Prince, that is, the kings of *Matam*, *Palam*, *Guadel* &



*Ormus*. The Georgians did follow their fortunes; so did *Media*, now called *Siruan*, *Dierbechia*, once *Mesopotamia*, *Cusistan* the inhabitation of the *Susiani*, *Farsistan* the country of the *Persians*, *Strana* once *Hircania*, *Pathia* at this day called *Arac*, *Caramania* now *Chermain*, *Sigestan*, *Carassa*, *Sablestan*, and *Istigin*, whose ancient names were *Drangia*, *Bactria*, *Parapamisus*, *Margiana*. Of these regions those which lie neereſt to the *Persian* ſea, are moſt plentifull, by reaſon of the riuers euery where diſperſed through the whole land. Amongſt theſe riuers the moſt famous is *Bindimir*, to whoſe waters the inhabitants are much behold- ing, conueying it by trenches and other inuentions into their grounds, to their great eaſe and commodity. The prouinces lying vpon the *Caspian* ſea, for their riuers and temperature doe likewise participate of the ſaid fertility, ſpecially al thoſe quarters which are watered with the Riuer *Puly-Malon*, falling into the lake *Burgian*: the reſidue of the prouince is dry, by reaſon whereof townes and villages are ſeldom ſeene in thoſe places, vnleſſe it be by ſome ſpring or waters ſide.

The moſt ample and magnificent cities of *Persia* are *Iſtigias* the chiefe ſeat of *Bactria*, thought to be one of the pleaſanteſt citties of the Eaſt. *Indion*, the chiefe city of *Margiana*, ſituated in ſo fat and fertile a territory, that therefore *Antiochus Soter* cauſed it to be walled about. *Candabar*, the chiefe ſeat of *Parapamisus*, famous for the traffick of *India* and *Cathayo*, whither the merchants of thoſe countries do reſort. *Eri*, the chiefe cittie of *Aria*, ſo abounding with Roſes, that thereof it ſhould ſeeme to take the name. *Barbarus* ſaith, it is of thirteen miles compaſſe. *Iſpaa* the chiefe ſeat of *Parthia*, ſo ſpacious for the circuit thereof, the *Persians* Hyperbolicall terme it, the halfe worldc. *Chirmaine* is the chiefe ſeat of *Caramania*, renowned for the excellent cloth of gold and ſiluer wrought therein. *Eor* is a Noble cittye, and ſo is *Cuſtra* of *Suſiana*. But all theſe for beauty and magnificence may bow, and bend the knee to *Siras*, ſeated vpon the Riuer *Bindimire*.

It was once the chiefe ſeat of *Persia*, and as ſome thinke called *Perſepolis*. *Alexander* the great burnt it to the ground, at the intreaty of his *Concubine*; but afterwarde beeing aſhamed of



so vile an action, caused it to be reedified againe. It is not at this time so great as in times past, yet it is thought to be one of the greatest Citties in all the Orient, with his suburbes, which are in compasse twenty miles. It is a prouerbe among the *Persians*, *quando Suars erat Siras, tunc Cairus erat eius Pagus*; yet they account it not very ancient, neither are they of their opinions who will haue it the head of *Persia*. *Tauris* and *Casbin* are most famous Citties, and besides their magnificence may glory that in them the kings of *Persia* keepe their Courts.

The forme of gouernment amongst this Nation is not lyke the gouernment of any other Mahumetan people; neyther is there to be seene the like policy in any place in the whol East, as amongst the *Persians*. All the rest hate Nobility, & depending vpon the faith & seruice of Slaues, do either murder their brethren, or put out their eyes. But amongst this people, Nobility is honoured. The king entreateth his brethren kindly & magnificently, and they alow in their dominions many Noble, rich, and mighty Barons, of which sort there is not one to bee found through the whole *Ottoman* dominions. They likewise grace gentility, and highly esteeme their seruice on horseback: they delight in Musicke and learning, they study Poësie, and therein become excellent. They giue theyr minds to *Astrologie*: all which good parts, the *Turkes* do vtterly reiect and despyte. Merchandize and mechanical trades are fauoured in *Persia*, & in all kind of ciuility and curtesie excell the *Turkish*.

The security of this state consisteth rather in prowesse then numbers; they maintaine three sorts of Souldiers: one sort the king keepeth in continuall pay, and alwaies about his owne person. The second is the *Timarots*, (for this kingdom likewise as doth the *Turke*, in lieu of wages, allotteth certaine quantities of Land to great numbers of horsmen.) The third are *Auxiliaries*, which serue for pay, and those are only *Georgians* & *Tartarians*. To speake of the two first (the essentiall sinewes of this king and kingdome) they are al horsmen. For where Princes rely only on the valor of their gentry, there is litle regard had of the footmans seruice; the like reason may be giuen for theyr want of shipping. For although on the one side lyeth the *Caspian*



*pian*, and on another the *Persian* gulfs, yet to this day were they neuer owners of any warlike shipping. If they chance to saile vpon the *Caspian* (a sea 800. miles long, and 600. broad) they dare not venter into the maine, but houering by the shore, timorously saile from one place to another. Of the *Persian* Sea the *Portugals* are lords. It aboundeth in mettall of excellent fine temper, specially in the prouince of *Cazan*. They haue not the vse of Artillery, neither the art of defending, besieging, assaul-ting, mining or intrenching of fortresses, and all because they want the vse of footmen, to whom these seruices doe properlie belong, as it doth to horsmen to fight in plain and open felde. Besides these wants, they are infested with other more grieuous mischiefes, and those are ciuill dissentions arising of the greatnes & disloyalty of their Sultans, with the length of iour-nies, and the scarcity of Nauigable riuers. Those riuers which they haue are not in vse, or else so little, that small ease ariseth thereby. They fal into the *Caspian* or *Persian* seas. The Inland regions are sandy, and vtterly destitute of water; How can the forces of that Land make any commodious or speedy ran- diuou, when halfe the land is dry and barren? in so wast a tract not one riuer seruing for Nauigable transportation, as doth the *Loir* in *France*; *Po* in *Italy*; *Vistula* in *Poland*; *Schild* in *Flanders*, and such like in other kingdomes.

There are also many Deserts and many mountaines disioy-ning the Prouinces farre asunder. Herein it resembleth *Spain*, where for want of Nauigable riuers (except towards the Sea coast) traffique is little vsed, and mountaines and prouinces lie vnmanured for scarcity of moylture. But Nature vnwilling that humane life should want any easement, hath so provided for mutual comnerce in these sandy and barren places, that tho-rough the labour of Cammels the want of Nauigation is richly recompenced throughout *Persia*, and the bordering contries. These beastes carry wonderous burdens, and wil longer conti- nue then eyther horse or Mule. They wil trauaile laden with a thousand pound weight, and wil so continue forty daies & vp-ward. In sterile and deepe sandy Countries (such as are *Libia*, *Arabia*, and *Persia*) they drinke but once euery fift day, and if



extremity enforce, they will endure the want of water ten or twelve. When their burdens are off, a little grasse, thornes, or leaues of trees will suffice them. There is no liuing thing lesse chargeable and more laborious, certainly ordained of Nature a fit creature for those sandy and deep places of *Asia* & *Africk*, wherein euen man himselfe, feeleth the want of food and water. Of these, there are three sorts, vpon the lesser men trauel; the middle sort haue bunches on their backs fit for carrying of Merchandise; the greater and stronger are those which carry burdens of one thousand pound weight.

What numbers of horsemen this king is able to leuie, was manifested in the warres betweene *Selim* the first, and *Ismaell*: betweene *Ismaell* and *Soliman*; and betweene *Codabanda* and *Amurath*. Not one of them brought aboue thirty thousand horse into the field, but so thoroughly furnished that they had little cause to feare greater numbers. The richer and abler sort arme themselves after the manner of our men at armes; the residue, being better then the third part of their caualrie content themselves with a scull, a iacke and Semiter. They vse the launce & the bowe indifferently. Touching their riches, the common opinion is, that in the dayes of king *Tamas*, the yearly Reuenues amounted to foure or five millions of gold, who by a sodaine doubling of the value of his coine, raised it to eight, and accordingly made payment to his Souldans and souldiers. But in these daies by the conquest of the great Turk, they are much diminished, and it is thought that they amount to little more then two millions; but the feodary lauds, townes and villages (which are very many) supply a great part of the pay due to the companies of the horsemen aboue mentioned.

Towards the East bordereth the *Mogor*, vpon the North the *Zagatai*. Towards the West the Turke possesseth a large frontire; vpon the south lieth *Ormus*, & therein the *Portugals*. With the *Mogors* he is little troubled: for as *Spaine* & *France* by reason of the narrow streights & difficult passages ouer the mountaines, they cannot easily conuey necessaries (the life of an army) to infest one another. So, towards the frontiers of *India* and *Cambaya*, prouinces belonging to the *Mogors*, high moun-



taines and vast deserts, keepe good peace betweene these two Princes: yet infest they one another on the borders of *Cabull* & *Sablestan*, of which certaine Lordes of the *Mogors* haue gotten the dominion. He commeth not neere the borders of the great *Cham*, betweene whom certaine petty Princes and impassable Deserts do oppose themselues. It seemeth that toward the *Zagatai* he standeth content with those bounds which the Ryuer *Oxus* hath laid out: for he neuer durst passe it; and when *Zaba K.* of the *Zagatai* had passed it, he was ouerthrowne with much slaughter by *Ismaell*. So was *Cyrus* by *Tomiris*, who slue him & all his hoast. The *Turke* is a borderer all alongest the Western coast of this whole Empire, euen fro the *Caspian* sea to the gulf *Saura*, a tract almost of 15. degrees. He hath no enemy so dangerous, nor more to be feared, nor at whose handes in all conflicts (for the most part) he hath receiued greater losse. *Mahumet* the second ouerthrew *Vssanchan*, and tooke from *David* his vassall and confederat the Empire of *Trapezond*. *Selim* the first did ouerthrow *Ismaell* in *Campania*, and tooke from him *Ararat*, *Orfa*, *Merdis*, and all the territory which they cal *Aleeh*. *Solyman* put *Tamas* to flight, and tooke from him *Babylon* and all *Mesopotamia*. In our daies *Amarath* woon whatsoeuer lieth betweene *Derbent* and *Tauris*, wherein is comprehended *Georgia* and *Siruan*, and by building of fortresses in *Teflis*, *Sumachia*, and *Eres*, assured the passages of *Chars*, *Tomanis* and *Lori*. He is Lord of all that lieth betweene *Erzurum* and *Orontes*, a riuer three daies iourney beyond *Tauris*. In this citty he caused a Citadell to be built, not minding to leaue it, as did *Selim* and *Soliman*, but thereby as with a curbe to bridle and keepe it. In this warre which lasted from the yeare 1591. to 1597. the *Turks* altered their forme of warrefare: for whereas they were wont to lay their whole hopes vpon their numbers, the valour of their hoismen and footmen, their store of artillery, and warlike furniture, scorning to be cooped vp in Castles and fortresses, for the most part spoyling and burning whatsoeuer they ouercame or became Lordes of, and taking as little care to keepe what they had conquered (supposing it no good policie to fortifie castles, or strengthen townes by weakening of their

compa-



companies) in these wars, to auoyde the inconueniences wher-into *Selim* and *Soliman* were plunged, wer glad to build strong places vpon commodious passages, and citadels in the chiefest townes, furnishing them with good garisons and great store of artillery. This war cost them very deare: for by surprises, by famine, and extremities of weather, infinit thousandes perished, yet alwaies to the losse of the Persian or his confederates. In the field the Persian is far inferior to the Turk, in numbers and goodnes of footmen, in ordinance, in all sorts of warlike furniture, and (the chiefest stay of a state) in obedience of subiects. Notwithstanding if *Selim*, *Soliman* or *Amurath* had not bin allured either by rebellion or intestine discords, they durste not haue medled with this warre. *Selim* was called into the ayde of *Marabeg* the son of *Ossan*, a most mighty prince in *Persia*. *Soliman* came in ayde of *Elasco* the brother of *Tamas*, hatefull to his soueraign for his ambition and aspiring humor, and in the end abused the credit and good will of the people toward *Elcasc* to the furtherance of his own designments. *Amurath* neuer took weapon in hand against this people, before he vnderstoode by the letters of *Mustafa Bassa* of *Van*, that all *Persia* was in vprore about the election of a new Prince, therby certifying him that some had chosen *Ismael*, some *Ainer* (both sons of *Tamas*) & that *Periacocona* slaying his owne brother *Ismael*, and betraying *Ainer*, had procured the kingdome to *Mahumet Codobanda*. After this mischiefe fel those fatal iars, betwixt *Codobanda* & his son, and betwixt the *Turcoman* nation (a mighty family in *Persia*) & the k. a faction no lesse disastrous to the state of *Persia*, thē the war of *Turky*. Against the *Portugals* of *Ormuz*, for want of sea-forces hee stirreth not, and againe for want of land forces the *Portugals* are not able to moleit his vpland countries. *Tamas* being counselled to make a voyage against *Ormuz*, asked what commodities the Iland brought forth, whether corne, cattell, fruit, or what other good thing? When it was answered that the soile was vtterly barren and destitute of all prouision, but excellent well seated for trafficke and nauigation: scoffing at the motion, replied: that of this kind of reuenue he had releas-  
fed vnto his people aboute ninety thousand *Tomana*.



**I**ndia is a spacious portion of *Asia*, the most Noble part of the world, and far exceeding any portion comprehended vnder one name, *Tartary* onely excepted. The Region is most wholesome to inhabit by the fauour of the westerne winds, though in regard of his spaciousnes it is subiect to diuers tempratures, as in some places warme, viz: towardes the *Æquator*, in some temperate or rather cold, as toward the North: But generally for goodnesse of scituation, temperature, health, and fertility, it is far better then any other countrey. Twice in the yeare it yeeldeth fruit, and therefore neuer feeleth famine, nor scarcity, the benefit whereof is furthered by the ouerflowing of the Ri- uers, as in *Ægypt*: yet hath it it's deserts, scorching sands, pla- ces infested with wilde beasts, and vnpeopled by reason of im- penetrable woods. And although the region wanteth wheat, yet aboundeth it with diuers sorts of fruits, of pulses, Barly, & Rice. Vines they haue none but rare, and, therefore brew their beuerage of barly and Rice. Of fruit trees, and trees fit to make linnen cloth they haue in abundance, & out of the Palme they produce Wine, vineger, and fruit to eat. The particuler of their Silkes, Bombasies, Elephantes, Serpents, Spices, Stones, and diuers famous riuers beeing well knowne, I will not stande to recite, The Nature and fashions of the inhabitantes brecfely, I will, who beeing diuersly dispersed into diuers regions and principalities, do diuersly differ in language, visage, habit, ma- ners and religion.

The four principal nations, that inhabit this tract, are the In- dians viz: the natiues, and they for the most part are Gentiles.

The second, are the Iewes, and they are dispersed ouer the whole face of the earth.

The third, are the Mahumetans, whereof some are *Persians*, some *Scythians*, now called *Mogors*, liuing in the vpland coun- tries. The fourth are the Moores or Arabians, who within these two hundred yeares vsurping vpon the *Maritim* places of the country, built them places and citties very fitte for Traffique, and expulsed the Natiues into the more Inland countries.

And now of late, besides those ancient Christians, which Sir



*S. Thomas* conuerted, there reside many Portugals & naturals, who are daily conuerted by the industry of the said *Portugals* to the Christian beleefe.

*The great Mogor.*

**I**T hath bin alwaies beleeued, that the territory lying between *Ganges* & the riuer *Indus*, hath euermore bin subiect to great and mighty Monarchs. For (to be silent in matter of more auncient memory) about the yeare of our Lord 1300. there raignd in the kingdome of *Delos* an *Arabian* prince of the sect of *Mahumet* named *Sanosaradin*. (as *Iohn Barros* reporteth) of so great power and strength, that he enterprised the conquest of *Asia*. Vpon which resolution forsaking these regions, in which *Indus* and *Ganges*, take their beginnings, with a mighty army, by little and little he subdued those princes & people which did oppose against him, vntill he pierced to the bounds of *Canora*, where it beginneth at the Riuer *Bate* about *Chaul*, and stretcheth betweene *Bate* and the gulfe of *Bengala* to *Cape comerine*. When he had woon so large and famous a territory, resolving to returne to *Delos*, hee left *Abdessa* his Lieutenant in *Canora*. This man encouraged by the victories of his maister, and presuming vpon his owne good fortune, bereaued the Gentiles of the greater part of *Canora*; and hauing gathered a most mighty and populous army compacted of Gentiles, *Mahumetans*, & *Christians*, after he had raignd 20. yeares, he died in the hight of his prosperity, leauing his son *Mamudza* behind him: whom the king graced with his fathers regency, vpon condition to pay him a yearely tribute: which payment the yong man neither regarded, nor shewed himselfe loyall to his soueraigne in many things. It hapened that *Sanosaradin* dying in the warre which he made against *Persia*, left behind him a son of such puffillanimity and so base a spirit, that *Mamudza* hereupon took courage to intitule himselfe king of *Canora*, calling the country *Decan*, and the people *Decaini*, that is, illegitimate. After this he erected eighteen captain-ships, and deuided his dominion among them, assigning to euery one his limits, onely with this penalty, to find alwaies in a readines a certain number of footmen & horsmen. To preuent future rebellion he chose these

Cap-



Captaines, not out of the orders of his Nobility, but from the number of his slaues. Nay more then this (to be assured of their loyalty) he commanded that euery one of them, should builde him a house in his royall citty *Bider*, in which their Children should remaine: and that once euery yeare at least, they should make their appearance in his court.

But because all authority, which is not as well vnderproped with his proper vertues, as grounded vpon the affections of the people, is of smal continuance; so hapned it to this prince: for his slaues and vassals hauing soueraigne authority put into their handes, made no more account of him then of a cipher, stripping him poore Prince without respect of reuerence of all his dominions, sauing his chiefe citty *Buler*, with the territory adjoining. For euery one, of a Lieutenant, became a vsurper of those states which were committed to his trust; the mightier alwaies oppressing the weaker: so that al in the end became a prey to a few. Two of them are famous at this day: the one, stretching his dominion to the borders of *Cambaia*: the other, to the skirts of *Narsinga*; the first called by the Portugals *Nissamalucco*, the other *Idalca*; either of them being so puissant, that in the year 1571. *Idalcan* belegerd *Goa* with an army of 35000. horse, threescore thousand Elephants, and two hundred and fifty peeces of ordinance. *Nissamalucco* besieged *Chaul* with lesse forces but better fortune, for though he did not force it, yet he broght it to a hard pinch, with the slaughter of 12000. Moors. In those countries in which *Sanasoradin* began his Empire, not about 70. yeares agoe, a great Prince (whom the East people call the great *Mogor*, in the same sence as wee call the great Turk) laid the foundation of a mighty Empire; for as the king of *Biarma* in our times greatly hazarded the states of *Pegu* and *Siam*, and the bordering nations; euen so the *Mogo* turned topsie turuy the kingdomes lying on this side the riuer *Ganges*. The receiued opinion is, that they tooke their originall from *Tartaria*, and that they came from that coast, where the auncient *Messageta* (a people accounted inuincible in armes) did one inhabite) and liuing as it were lawlesse, and vnder no manner of gouernement, by inuading of their neighbours, procured vnto



themselues the foueraignty of spacious kingdoms. By the riuer *Oxus* they border vppon the *Persians*, and are at continuall enmity with them, sometime for religion sometime for enlargement of the boundes of their Empire. The cheefe citty is *Shamarcand*, from whence came *Tamarlan*, & of whose blood these *Mogor* princes do boast that they are descended. The predecessor of him (who is now prince of the *Mogors*) was very famous in the East; for in the yeare 1536. being solicited by king *Mandao* of the North (from whom *Badurius* k. of *Cambaia* had taken his kingdome) to aide him against the *Cambaian*, he is reported to haue brought with him an infinite number of soldiers, which wee may coniecture out of that which *Maffeus* vvrieth of the army of the sayd king *Badurius*: to wit, that this K. had vnder his standard, one hundred and fifty thousand horse, wherof 35000. were barbed. The number of footmen was 500 thousand. Amongst these were fifteen thousand forren souldiers, and fourescore christians *French*, & *Portugals*; at which, by what meanes, or by what way, they should come thither, I doe not a little wonder. Their Galleon (which they called *Dobriga*) suffered shipwracke in the channell of *Cambaia*.

I know, that if these preparations and prouisions for warre, be compared with our forces of Christendome, they will hardly be taken for true: but wee haue already declared the causes, why the princes of the East & south may gather greater armies then we can, and cosequently that those things which are spoken of their incredible store, and wonderfull prouision of furniture may be answerable to their leuies and proportions. And as they are able to leuy millions of men (for arming and feeding them they take no great care;) so likewise do the prouinces afforde great plenty of prouision, and an inestimable multitude of their vsuall warlike engines: for they carrye nothing with them saue that which is necessary and needful for seruice: Wines, cates, and such like, which cannot but with great expence, labour and trouble, be carried along with armies, are by these men wholly omitted & vtterly reiected. All their thoughts tend to warlike prouision, as to get *Brasse*, yron, *Steele*, and *Tin*, to forge pieces, and cast great ordinance; yron and leade



to make bullets, yron and Steele to temper cymitars; Oxen and Elephants to draw their artillery; graine to nourish their bodies; mettals to arme them, and treasure to conserue them.

They are all tyrants, and to preferue their estate, and induce submissiue awednes, they hold hard hands ouer the comminalty, committing all gouernment into the hands of slaues & soldiers. And to make these men faithfull and loyall, they ordaine them Lords of all things, committing vnto their trust, townes, castles, and expeditions of great waight: but the expectation of the prince is often deceiued by the rebellion of these vassals, for sometimes they vsurpe whole prouinces, and impose vpon the people all kind of iniuries. But let good princes thinke it as necessary to builde their safety on the loue of their subiects, as vpon the force of their souldiers. Feare admitteth no security, much lesse perpetuity: and therefore these tyrantes expecting no surety at the hands of their subiects, trust wholly vpon their men of warre, flattering them with promise of liberty, and bestowing vpon them the goodes of their subiects as rewardes of their sernice. So with vs, the Turke strengthneth his state with *Ianizars*, and as he coueteth to be beloued and fauored of them (to that end bestowing vpon them the riches & honors of the Empire) so they acknowledge no other Lorde and maister, I may very well say, father and protector. And so many of the *Malaber* princes vsing and accounting the people but as beasts, lay all their hopes and fortunes on the *Nairs*: the kings of *Ormus*, *Cambaia*, *Decan*, and *Achan*, lay all vpon the shoulders of these slaues. In a word as a lawfull and iust prince hath a great regard and singuler care to haue the liking & loue of the people, by which being garded and inuironed (as with a strong rampire) he is able to withstand all attempts: so contrariwise, tyrants knowing themselues hatefull to the people, imploy their whole study how to win the fauor of their souldiers and slaues, ther-by to repressse innouations at home, and inuasions from abroad. Seeing therefore the safety & foundation of their greatness is built vpon the entertainment of their souldiers as their *Nairs*, their *Ianizars* free or bound, strangers or subiects, yea, whatsoeuer they be, it must needs follow that onely actions of



warbe the end & scope of their cogitatioꝛs; as likewise that they be very prodigall to keepe their estates very well furnished & appointed with souldiers and prouisions. And these reasons I take to be a sufficient inducement to beleue these reportes of the k. of *Cambaia*, & these other barbarous Indian princes. For (besides that I spake of before) it is reported, that with this army did march a thousand peeces of ordinance, among which were four Basilisks, eucry one drawn with an hundred yoke of Oxen: 500. wagons laden with gun-powder and bullets, 200 armed Elephants; 500. vessels ful of gold and siluer to pay souldiers wages; many Princes and pety-Lordes, with their courtiers and followers, merchants, vittailers, artificers, and their seruants numberles. Notwithstanding their incredible preparation, he was twice ouerthrown by *Marhumedio*: once in the territory of the citty of *Doce*, another time at *Mandao*, from whence disguising his apparrell to saue his life, he fled to *Diu*. Being out of danger and feare, he sent Ambassadors to *Solima*, with a present esteemed worth, 600000. crownes, desiring his ayd in these wars. But afterward, weighing in his minde that this affaires required speedier succors, hee contracted a league with those Portugals, which were nearest adioyning: to make them his friends and partners of the war, the composition was, that he should permit them to build a castle in the Iland of *Diu*. Now to speake of *Marhumedius*. His fortunes were not much vnlike to those of *Tamerlane*: for as this Prince brought terror and feare vpon the inhabitants of *Persia* and *Asia*; so did that, no lesse innouation and trouble vpon *India* and the *Orient*: this defeated in battell *Baiazer* Emperor of Turks, that ouerthrew *Badarius* king of *Cambaia*, & his army far greater then his own: both of them had the surname of great. When the *Mogors* vnderstood of the riches of *India*, and the fertility therof, they neuer ceased by a continual course of victory their armes & inuasions, till they had made themselves lords of all the prouinces, lying between *Caucasus* and the sea *Ganges*, and the riuer *Indus*; In this tract are contained 47. kingdoms. For *Adabar* the successor of *Marhumedius* won *Madabar*, with the better part of *Cambaia*. Of what goodly consequence this prouince is, may be ima-



imagined by the famous cities of *Madabar Campana* (so called for scituation vpon the top of a high hill rising in the midst of a spacious plain) & *Cambai* a (city consisting of 100. & 30000. houses) as likewise by the populous hoast of king *Badurius*, his warlike prouision for such an army, and plenty of grain to sustaine such multitudes. I assure you the world affords not a soil for all necessaries for the life of man (as rice, corn, pulse, sugar, oxen sheepe, pullen of all sorts, and silke) more richer or plentifull then this prouince, where in also there are reported to be sixty thousande borroughes; which number certainty is very great and admirable. *Guicciardine* writeth, that in *Netherland* within the territory of the 17. prouinces are contained 208. walled townes, and 150. borroughes, enioying the rights & priuiledges of citties, and 6300. villages hauing parish Churches. In *Naples* are 1800. of these, some are townes, some but castles. In *Bohemia* are 780. townes, and 32000. villages. In *France* (as *Iohn Potine* writeth) are 27000. borroughes hauing parish churches besides those in *Burgundy*, which in those times were not numbred amongst the towns of *France*. I write this, to induce a true and absolute iudgement of the power of any prouince by the number of parishes, for I know, that ought to be made according to their greatnes, but yet their number maketh much to the purpose, as in both which, *Cambai* may carry the credit and esteeme of a most spacious, populous, and puissant kingdome.

*Acabar* also conquered the rich kingdom of *Bengala*; so that a man may truely say, that in this part of the Orient there are three Emperors: one in *Cambai*, the other in *Narsinga*, the third in *Bengala*: whereof *Cambai* and *bengala* far exceede all the other prouinces in fertility of soil, and concourse of Merchants, both riotously abounding in sugar, cotten, wool, cattell, Elephants and horses: In *Bengala* also groweth long pepper and ginger. The first, is watered and cut as it were into two halfes by the riuer *Indus*, the other by *Ganges*, hauing two famous mart townes, *Satagan* and *Catagan*.

The great *Mogor* doth likewise possesse the kingdoms of *Citor*, *Mandao* and *Delly*, wherein hee keepeth his court. Hee hath



hath infinite store of horses, Elephants, and Camels, as also all sorts of artillery and warlike furniture, by meanes whereof hee is growne fearefull to the whole inhabitants of the East. It is written of him, that he is able to bring into the field 300. thousand horse, and that there are within his dominions fifty thousand Elephants.

Some man perhaps will aske, how it commeth to passe that this prince (being so mighty, and his neighbors so naked, vnarmed and poore) doth not get into his possession the dominion of the rest of *India* and the *Orient*? In this as in the former vnlikelihoods, the wisest man is soonest answered. There are many obstacles: one is, that as the spirit and body of man cannot endure in continuall trauell and motion (for that is onely proper to God and Nature :) so a continued and open passage is not euermore giuen to the ambitious apprehensions of kings and princes. Great Empires seldome feare forren inuasions, yet oftentimes faint they vnder their owne waight. It is not destinated vnto great thinges to stand alwaies at the highest, much lesse. to increase: they haue their flood, but vpon a remediles condition, that there follow an ebbe. They are lifted on high, but by the irreuocable decree of nature, that a fall succeed: yea and that themselues by themselues decline. The greater they are, the more subiect to mutability: the larger, the harder to hold and manage: they moue but slowly, and of what effecte celerity is in warre, who knoweth not? The greatest conquest carrieth the greatest enuy with it, and greatest care to conserue what is got, and yet not care, but long continuance perfecteth these actions: and while time passeth, the neighbouring nations prouide (if not infest) for their owne safety, yea most commonly by losse of time proceedeth the losse of victories opportunity. He that hath ouercome his enemy, standeth oftentimes in feare of his friend, yea of such as haue bin fellowes & partners with him in all his fortunes: so that to secure himselfe of these, & such like casualties, he is constrained euen in the course of victory to found the retrait, & surcease his proiects. Againe, continuall victory maketh leaders insolent, soldiers mutinous, refusing to passe forward, at the commann of their generall, as



it hapned to *Alexander* and *Lucullus*. Great enterprises euen brought to their wished end, enrich the purses of certaine priuate men, but leaue the princes coffers empty, who neuertheless must be at the charge to maintaine continuall companies and keepe them in continuall pay; without which course, the cashed soldier is euer ready to follow any faction whensoever it shall be offered. Moreouer, this numberles army, which *Mahomedius* led against the king of *Catbaia*, did not only wast the regions where through it passed and encamped, but likewise by deuouring all things that the face of the earth yeelded, bereaued it selfe of the meanes, which nature in measure had afforded to euery creature to maintaine life by: and so it often hapneth, that those armies which in apprehension seeme inuincible for their hugenes, are most commonly ouerthrowne by famine the forerunner of pestilence. For prooffe hereof wee haue seene the inundations of *Attila*, *Tamerlan*, and those barbarous Nations stand on foote but a little space, whereas the *Grecians*, *Macedonians*, *Carthagenians*, *Romans*, *Spaniards*, & *Englisb*, haue done great matters with meane armies. For thinges that are moderate, last and indure (as small riuers) which what they cannot doe in one yeare, in two or more they finally accomplish; whereas immoderate and violent, are like to Torrents, making more noise and fury then hurt or hinderaunce: violently comming, and violently againe carrying themselues away. Therefore against such mighty impressiōs, the surest safety is, to draw the war out in length, and onely to stand vpon the defensue: for let such armies rest assured, that they cannot so long hold out, but they will wauer, either for want of prouision, scarcety of coine, infection of the aire, or infirmities of their own bodies. The other thing is, that prosperity blindeth the winner, making him carelesse; aduersity ripeneth the looser, and maketh him wary and industrious: so fortune chaunging her cobby, the affaires of the winner decline, & the good successe of the looser groweth euery day better then other. Besides, conquests are not perfected but by processe of time, and in processe of time old age creepeth vpon the persons of princes, and how fit a crasie body, and a vigorous spirit nummed



with old age, is for the consumation of a conquered estate, the liues of *Julius Caesar* & *Charles* the first may stand for examples. Lastly to answer those, who vnlesse they be eye witnesses, wil neuer be answered, let them know that nothing so much hindreth the inuasiue ambition of this prince, as the nature of places. For *Caucasus* stretching it selfe into a thousand branches in those parts, incompasseth whole kingdomes with some parcels thereof: by some it runneth by the sides: to others, it is more defensiue then any artificiall rampire: sometime it wholly shutteth vp passages, sometime it maketh them inaccessible. These difficulties are more iniurious to the *Mogor*, then to any other prince, because the strength and sinews of his forces, consist in horse; which as they are of great consequence in *campania*, so amongst hills and rockes they are of small seruice. Of this quality are the frontiers of Persia, and the kingdome of *Sablestan*, on euery side hemd in with that part of *cacausus*, which the grecians call *Paropamise*. *Segestan* is likewise so inuironed, that the riuer *Il-mento* (were it not for searching out infinite windinges and turnings through naturall vallies) could hardly finde passage to pay his tribute to the famous *Ganges*. In *cambaiia* it selfe, where the *Mogors* are of such fearefull puissance, liue the *Resbuti*, not dreading the one whit by reason of the strength of the mountains. These *Resbuti* are the remainder of the gentils, that betook theselues to the mountains betweene *cambaiia* and *Diu*, when the Mahumetants first entred these cuntries; & since that day by strong hand they haue preserued their liberty, infesting often the plaine country with their incursions. Other prouinces they are vtterly barren, not onely wanting water, but all necessaries else: of this kind is *Dolcinda*, vpon the skirts of *cambaiia*, through which it is impossible to lead an army. To these discommodities you may adde the losse of time, which princes (being Lords of ample and spacious dominions) are constrained to make in their voyages. For the better part of summer is spent before they can arriue at their *Rendezous*, with their Horsses halfe deade thorough trauaile, and the army halfe in halfe in number and courage, diminished; yea, Winter ouertaketh them, commodious for their enemies, and disaduantageous for the: for they must lie in the field & open ayre among



mire and frosts, their enemies vnder a warme rooffe, and hole-  
some harbor. Whereupon wise princes, which haue beene to  
make long land-iournies through diuers prouinces of diuers  
Natures, for feare of such like discommodities, haue thought  
it best to prouide shipping, and to vse the opportunity of Ri-  
uers or sea, as did *Cesar Germanicus* in the war of Germany, af-  
ter he perceiued that in the protracting of time (which was re-  
quisite for the marching of his army) the greater part of his mē  
and horses were idle, consumed by infirmities, labour, and the  
length of iournies. But the *Mogor* is vtterly destitute of this ad-  
uantage: vpon one side he hath no hauen, on another the Por-  
tugals are his iealous neighbors, who with two castles of great  
strength, at *Diu* and *Damain*, haue shut vp the whole gulfe of  
the *Cambaian* sea.

Finally, the puissance of their neighbors hath been as great  
a controuler to their furious inuasions, as any other naturall  
cause, viz: the king of *Barma*, who is nothing inferior in power  
and riches: for he is lord of so many kingdoms, and of so fierce  
and warlike a people, and can bring such swarms into the field,  
that he is fearelesse of any of his *Tartarian* neighbors. And as  
the *Mogor* ruleth farre and wide betweene *Ganges* and *Indus*,  
so doth this king betweene *Ganges* & *Siam*. As the one deuifeth  
to offend; so by little & litle the other waxeth wise to defend.  
For by nature mā is more prone to procure his own safety, thē  
ready by wrong to oppresse others, being alwaies more care-  
full to conserue, then forward to destroy. It cannot be expref-  
sed howe full of subtilty, shiftes, deuises, and industry man is  
to defend him and his: for he vseth for his owne safe-guarde,  
not that onely which is properly defensiuē; but euen that also  
which humaine wisdomē hath inuented or nature created any  
way offensiuē. Neither euer was there any instrument inuented  
for offence, but that the same hath beene turned to defence: of  
which kinde are Castles built of later times, and the deuises of  
moderne fortification. And therefore the closest Castles are  
neuer accounted best, because they which are forced to guarde  
such places, are deprived of the facility of offending the ene-  
my by fallies, shotte, wild-fire, and such like things; all which



and many other stratagems very easily performed in an open hold. But of all inventions, there is none more admirable then fortification, for euen the tearmes thereof (as *Curtains, Counterscraps, Parapets, Trenches, Vamures, Mines and Countermines, Casemats*, and such like phrases) are very ingenious and misticall; by this art few souldiers haue resisted great armies; and a smal place made tenable hath wasted the forces and treasure of a mighty Emperour, as well witnessed the fortunes of 800. Portugals at *Demain* vppon the coast of *Cambaia*, who by this art, scorned and deluded the whole forces and attempts of this mighty *Mogor*.

*China.*

**I**N times past the kingdome of *China* hath bin far larger then now it is. For it appeareth by their Histories (containing the *Annales* of 2000. years and vppward) and by other of their *Manuscript* Chronicles written in their owne language, (whose fragments are yet to be scene) that their kings were Lords almost of al the sea-coast of *Asia*, from the straight of *Anian*, to the kingdome of *Pegu*, the prouinces of *Meletai, bacam, Calan, boraga*, and other territories, scituated vppon the North-side of *Pegu*, where their monuments with their Epitaphes and deuises are to be seen at this day. For in al the foresaid regions, the reliques of their ancient ceremonies, (wherby the knowledge of the *Mathematiques*, as the diuision of the yeare into moneths, the *Zodiake* into twelue signs, true testimonies of their *Empiry*) are taught by tradition. Neither is the time long, since thence all those kingdomes accounted the king of *China* for their soueraigne, sending their *Ambassadors* with presents to his court euery third yeare.

These *Ambassadors* ought to bee foure at least, for before they could ariue at their iournies end, some of them either by remotenesse of place, difficult accesse of audience, or delay in dispatch, could not but surely die; those whose chaunce it was to scape, the *chinois* in some set banquet woulde poyson and erect vnto them stately toombes, with the inscription of their names, the place from whence they came, and with the title of *Ambassadors*: thereby (say they) to commit to eternity the remem-



remembrance of the bounds of their Empire. They enlarged their dominions no lesse vpon the Ocean, then vpon the continent. For they first of all inuaded the Iles of the *Orient*; next to them, the *Gianu*: then the *Mallecans* and *Moore*s, and lastly, the *Portugals* and *castilians*, who holde them at this day. But none of these nations were equall of power and magnificence to the *chinois*: for besides the conquest of the bordering Iles (which in regard of their numbers, their spaciousnesse and fertility, were of great reckoning) they became Lords of the greatest part of all the inhabitable places in that vast *Archipelago*, euen to *Zeilan*, where they left their speech and characters, as also they did the like vpon the opposite continent. Wee read also in the papers of certaine Iesuites, that in one quarter of the Iland of *Saint Laurence*, they founde white people, which said that they descended of the *Chinois*. They first discovered the *Moluccas*, gaue names vnto the spices, and planted Colonies in many of them, which to this present keepe their olde name, as *batta china* a *Mawr*, *batta china*, *Mauri*: *batta* signifieth a towne, *batta china*, a towne of the *chinois*. It is likewise thought that the inhabitants of *Iana* descended of them, & to speak the truth, there is no great difference between their manner of liuing, cloathing, building, industry, trafficke, and manuell occupations. But after the shipwracke of fourescore vessels, and the losse of their people in the sea of *Zeilan*, comparing their profit with their losse, they resolved to try no more such hazards, but to contain themselves within their own bounds. And to cause this edict to bee inuiolably obserued, they enacted, that none thereafter vpon paine of the losse of his head, should offer to saile into those parts: the kings themselves did euer abstaine from future inuasions. For sithence they enjoy a very earthly paradise, where nature and art are at strife to content the inhabitants, wher no good thing is wanting, but much superfluous and spare, what mad men wold consume their bodies and treasures in getting those things, which are more chargeable to get, then profitable to keepe? *Potibius* writeth, that vpon the same reasons thee old *Carthagenians* forsooke part of those things, which before they had conquered. The *Romaines*



after they had suffered a greuous losse of their best vessels in the second Punicke warre, in meere despaire bid Nauigation adiew; but afterwards perceiuing that they who wer commāders of the sea, were likely to proue Lords of the lande, they built a new navy, and at length saw the successe answere their latest opinions. Therefore can we not but ascribe this resolution of the *Chinois* rather to good conscience and aduisednesse, then to wisedome or good policy. For seeing there can bee no greater folly then to hazard our own goods, on hope to gaine others, to wast the borders of our owne dominions, to inuade our neighbors, to shed our owne blood vppon desire to spill a strangers; it is more honorable and worthy the office of a king to content himselfe with his owne right, rather then by wrong to possesse anothers. Content breeds stability, conquest brings care to see the conquered; therefore why shoulde any prince weare out himselfe to inlarge his dominion, if enlargement do not onely do no good, but euen spoileth that which was good before, making that vncertaine which before was certaine, and weakening that which before was stronge. Let a wise prince vtterly refraine such iourneies; if they bring not assured security, & more then common profit. For security is one scale wherein a state hangeth, which if the beame stand true, must onely aime at that which is likely to breed greater security, & that is, the seising vpon streights, sconces, passages, and fit places to remoue the enemy far away; In the other scale shuld hang profit, & that is, by conquering of those prouinces which are rich, or able to yeelde all kind of prouision for liuing creatures and furniture for war and shipping.

But to returne to the *Chinois*. When this surrender was resolved in ful counsell, they set the people whom they had vanquished, free: yet some, of their good willes remained feodaries, shadowing their estates vnder the wings of their puissance, as the kings of *Corea*, *Lequi*, *Canchinchina* and *Siam*. And notwithstanding their retrait within their owne bounds, yet possesse they a dominion little lesse then all Europe: for from the North towards the South, it reacheth from 17. to 52. degrees, from east to the west are 22. degrees. *Pacquin*, wherein the king keepeth



keepeth his court is scituated in 48. degrees. The Empire is di-  
 uided into fifteene prouinces, six *Maritime*, *Cantan*, *Foquem*, *Chi-*  
*queuan*, *Pantora*, *Nanquij*, the rest in land, *Quichiu*, *Iuna*, *Quancij*,  
*Suinã Foquẽ*, *Cansij*, *Xianxij*, *Nonã*, *Sancij*. The prouinces of *Quinci*,  
*Cantan*, and *Foquem* are deuided from the vppe-landish, with  
 mountaines like the *Alpes*, but not aboue two dayes iourney a-  
 sunder. *Thomas Perez* the king of Portugals Amba. made 4. mo-  
 neths iourny from *cantan* to *Nanquij*, alwaies bearing northerly.

It is not so spacious, but it is as fertile: for it yeeldeth not on-  
 ly what is fitting for human life, but whatsoever the delicate &  
 effeminate appetite of man may lust after. Many plants yeelde  
 fruit twice or thrice a yeare, and that not onely by the tempe-  
 rature of the ayre, but by the number of riuers & plenty of wa-  
 ters, which do both cause traffick through euery corner of the  
 region, & so water it on al sides, that it resembleth a most plea-  
 sant & delectable garden plot. Of this plenty there are 2. cau-  
 ses: one, the prodigal expences of the king in digging of tren-  
 ches throughout the whole land: sometime cutting thorough  
 rocky mountaines, sometime damming vp deep valies to make  
 them leuell with high mountaines, and to draine the waters of  
 lakes and marishes: the other, for that the whole region is sci-  
 tuated vnder the temperate *Zone*, and in no place, either by na-  
 ture or mans industry, wanteth moisture; so that all creatures  
 taking norishment of heat & moisture, must needs heere won-  
 derously prosper: In no place plantes may take larger scope to  
 spred their branches, nor cattle larger walkes to wander in, thẽ  
 in this country. The last reason is, for that the ydle are neyther  
 seuerely punished, nor altogether tollerated, euery one is for-  
 ced to do somewhat, no foot of land is left vnhusbanded, nor dra-  
 of stufte cast away vnwrought. Among other things note wor-  
 thy, this one is of great cõsideration, that in *Cantan* they main-  
 taine foure thousand blind people to grinde corne and rice; e-  
 uery one is set about some-what according to his yeares and  
 strength; one laboureth with his hand, one with his foote, one  
 with his eye, another must be doing with his toong; those on-  
 ly who are impotent in their limbes, and haue no friends liuing  
 to succour them, are prouided for in Hospitalles. That none  
 may



may excuse themselves, in saying he can do nothing, every one is bound to learne his fathers occupation, which is the reason that the children (borne as it were tradesmen) learne their fathers occupations before they perceiue it, by continuall practise be comming in time most artificiall mechaniques. He that cannot liue at land, seeketh his maintenance at sea, (for that is no lesse inhabited then the land) yea infinite households liue on the riuers in boats without comming to land for a long season. Some whereof liue by ferrying ouer people, some by transporting passengers and their marchandize: others keep shops, other vessels of lodging for their Marchants & trauelers. Whatsoever is needful for clothing, for food or nourishment, delight, or ease of a ciuil life, is to be found in the midst of great riuers. Many likewise nourish all sorts of poultry, especially duckes in their vessels. To hatch the Egges and to nourish the yong ones, they vse not the dams as we do, but an artificiall heat, in a manner as they do in Egypt, especially at *Cair*. All night he keepeth them in his boat, and at morning sendeth them to feede in the fieldes sowed with Rice, where all day long hauing fed on the weeds, to the great good of the husbandman, they returne toward euening to their cages, at the sound of a litle bell or cimball. Many liue by carrying fish, both salt and fresh, into the hie countries: for in the spring when the riuers rise through thawes and land-floods, so incomparable quantities of sea-fish doe abound in the hauens and creekes, that the fishermen depart rather wearied then wanting. This fish the skippers buy for a small matter of the fisher-men, and keeping them aliue in certain vessels made for the purpose, they transport them into provinces farre remote from the sea. There they are sold and preserved in pooles and stews neer cities and great towns, to serue the markets and tables of the richer *chinois* all the yeare long. Because it is forbidden any inhabitant to passe out of the land without leaue, and therewith neither, but for a time limited, it must needs be that by the daily increase of people, the country is euen pestered with inhabitation. It hath beene obserued among themselves, that for every fiue that haue died, seuen haue beene borne. The climate is so temperate, and the ayre so hol-  
some



some, that in mans memory any vniuersall pestilence hath not beene knowne to infest the country. Notwithstanding least any man should thinke this people to inioy all sweetes without some mixture of sower, you must note, that their earth-quakes are more dreadful to them then any pestilence to vs : for whol citties haue beene swallowed, and prouinces made desart by this punishment. They choke vp the course of ancient chanelles, and make new, where were neuer any before, they lay mountaines leuell with the ground, making hauocke of the people. In the yeare 1555. a deluge breaking out of the bowels of the earth, deuoured 180. miles of firme land, with the townes and villages, standing thereuppon : those which escaped the floud, lightning and fire from heauen destroyed.

There are said to be in China 150. cities, 235. great townes, 1154. castles, and 420. borroughes without walles, wherein souldiers are quartered ; of villages and hamlets (some of them containing a thousand households) the number is infinite ; for the country is so couered with habitation, that al *china* seemeth but as one towne. They haue two *Metropolitan* cities, *Nāquin* and *Panquin*. In *Nanquin* toward the North the king keepeth his court: vnder the iurisdiction of the one are seuen prouinces vnder the other eight. Both of them are so spacious, that it is a daies iourney for a horsman to ride from one end to the other. Of the number of inhabitants no certainty can bee produced, but according to *Manuscript* relations, and report of trauelers, it is said, that the kingdom containeth threescore and ten millions of liuing foules. This is an admirable reporr, and not to be beleeued, if it be compared with the prouinces of Christendome, but surely something aboue conceit is to be credited to those spacious, populous, and barbarous nations. Let vs set the largenesse of their prouinces, the circuite of their citites, their plenty & abundance of all things, and in all places, either prospering by nature, or mans industry, with their number and inhabitation, and we shall finde a country like enough to afford such a reckoning, Cities, and dwellings able to contain them, and nourishment sufficient to maintaine them. Italy exceedeth not nine millions ; *Germany* (excluding the *Swizzers* and *Ne-*



*therlands*) not ten, and with the foresaide prouinces not aboue fifteene, which number peradventure France may reach vnto. *Spaine* is farre inferior to *Italy*: *Sicily* hath but one million and three hundred thousand: *England* three millions, and *Belgia* as many, if by the continuance of the war in those countries that number be not much decayed. The *Italians* conceiting maruailous highly of themselues, thinking no prouince vpon the face of the earth for wealth & people comparable to *Italy*, but they forget, that as it is long, so it narrow, and nothing wide or spacious, neither that two third parts haue not one nauigable Riuer (a want of great consequence) neither that the *Apenine*, a mountaine rocky and barren, doth spread it selfe ouer a fourth part. Let them not deceiue themselues, nor condemne others plenty, by their own wants, nor measure others excessse by their handfuls. For fertility, doth France in plenty of graine or catle giue place to *Italy*? Or *England*, for cattle, for wooll, fish, or mettall? Or *Belgia*, for number of goodlinesse of citties, excellency of artificers, wealth or marchandise? Or *Greece*, for delectable scituation, commodious hauens of the sea, or pleasaunt prouinces? Or *Hungary* for cattle, wine, corne, fish, mines, and all things else. But I will not stand vpon these discourses, onely let me tell you, that *Lumbardy* containeth the third part of *Italy*, a prouince delightfome for battel-plaines, and pleasant riuers, without barren mountaines or sandy fields, and to bee as full of people as the whole halfe of *Italy* besides. Yea, what may be said of *Italy* for profit of pleasure, that may not be spoken particularly of *France*, *England*, *Netherland* & both the *Pannonies*? Wherefore since the country is not onely large & spacious, but vnited, populous, plentiful and rich, at least let it be beleued and accounted for one of the greatest Empires that euer was.

The gouernment is tyranical: for throughout the kingdom there is no other Lord but the king. They know not what an Earle, a Marquesse, or a Duke meaneth. No fealty, no tribute or tole is payd to any man but the king. Hee giueth all magistracies and honours. He alloweth them stipends wherewith to maintaine their estates, and they dispatch no matter of weight with-



without his priuity. His vassals obey him, not as a king, but rather as a God. In euery Prouince standeth his portraiture in gold, which is neuer to be seen but in the new moones, then is it shewed and visited of the magistrates, and reuerenced as the kings owne person. In like manner the gouernors and Iudges are honored, no man may speak to them but vpon their knees. Herein the people shew their basenes, making thēselues slaues (not subiects) of the Prince. Strangers are not admitted to enter into the kingdome, least their customes and conuersation should breed alteration in manners, or innouation in the state. They are onely permitted to traffick vpon the sea coasts, to buy and sell victuall, and to vent their wares. They that do trafficke vpon the land, assemble many together, and elect a gouernour amongst them, whom they terme *Consul*. In this good manner strangers enter the kingdom, but alwaies waited on by the customers and kings officers. The inhabitants cannot trauell but with a licence, and with that neither, but for a prefixed season: and to be sure of their return, they grant no leaue, but for trafficks sake, and that in ships of 150. tun & not aboue; for they are iealous, that if they should go to sea in bigger vessels, they would make longer iournies. To conclude, it is a religious law of the kingdome, that euery mans endeuors tend wholly to the good & quiet of the commonwealth. By which proceedinges, Iustice the mother of quietnes, pollicy the mistresse of good lawes, and industry the daughter of peace, do flourish in this kingdome. There is no country moderne or ancient, gouerned by a better forme of policy then this Empire: by gouernment haue they ruled their Empire 2000. yeares: And so hath the state of *Venice* flourished 1100. years, the kingdom of Fraunce 1200. It is 1200. yeares since they cast off the yolk of the *Tartars*, after their ninety yeares gouernment.

For their arts, learning and policy, they conceiue so well of thēselues, that they are accustomed to say, they haue two eyes; the people of Europe, one; the residue of the Nations, none. They giue this report of the *Europeans* because of their acquaintance with the Portugals, with whom they traffike in *Macao* and other places, & the renown of the *Castilians*, who are their neighbors in the *Phillippine*.



By the multitudes of people (before spoken of) you may imagine the state of his forces, for herein all other provisions take their perfection. But to speake somewhat in particular. The power of this Prince (remembering his contentment, & nature detesting all inuasions) is more ready and fitte to defend, then offend, to preserue rather then increase. His Citties for the most part are builded vpon the bankes of Nauigable riuers, enuironed with deep and broad ditches, the walles built of stone and bricke, strong aboue beliefe, and fortified with Caualiers, and artificiall bulwarks. Vpon the borders toward *Tartarie* (to make sure worke against such an enemy) they haue built a wall beginning at *Chioi*, a citty scituate betweene twoe most high mountaines, and stretching it selfe towards the East 600. miles between mountaine and mountaine, vntill it touch the cliffes of the Ocean. Vpon the other frontiers you may behold many but small holds, so built to stay the course of the enemy, vntill the countrey forces be able to make head, and the royall army haue time to come leisurely forward; for in 400. great townes he keepeth in continual pay forces sufficient vpon the least warning, to march to that quarter whether occasion calleth. Euerie Citty hath a garrison and Guard at the gates, which at night is not only fast locked, but sealed, and may not be opened before the seale at morning be thoroughly viewed. To speak truth, their souldiers, horsemen and footemen, by lande, or sea, are more famous for their numbers, their gallant furniture, and plenty of prouision, then for strength and courage. For the inhabitants partly by their effeminate and wanton kinde of life, partly by their forme of gouernment, whereby they are made vile, base, and vmbragious, haue little valour or manhoode left them. They vse no forren souldiers, except those whome they take in war: these they send into the inland countries, where being marked (to distinguish them from other) they serue more like slaues then souldiers; yet haue they pay, with rewardes for their good seruice, and punishment for their cowardize: true motiues to make men valorous. The rest, which are not in rold, are not suffred to keepe weapons in their houses.

Their Sea-forces are nothing inferiour to their land-forces:  
for



for besides their ordinary fleetes, lying vpon the coasts for the safety of the sea townes, by reason of the abundance of Nauigable riuers, and so huge a sea tract full of hauens, creekes and Islands, it is thought that with ease they are able to assemble from 500. to a 1000. great ships, which they terme *Ginnchi*.

To thinke that treasure cannot be wanting to leuy so great a number of ships, souldiers and Mariners, many men affirme, that the kings reuenues amount to 120. milliōs of gold, which value although it may seeme impossible to him that shall make an estimate of the states of Europe with the kingdom of *China*; yet may it find place of beliefe, if he do but call to minde, first the nature and circuit of the Empire, being little lesse then all Europe: Next, the populousnesse of the Inhabitants, accompanied with inestimable riches: Then, the diuersity of Mines of gold, siluer, yron, and other sorts of mettall, the vnspeakeable quantity of merchandize, passing from hand to hand, by so many nauigable Riuers: so many armes and in-lets of the sea, their vp-land citties, and maritime towns, their toles, customs, and subsidies. For he taketh the tenth of all things which the earth yeeldeth; as Barley, Rice, Oliues, Wine, Cotton, Wool, Flax, silke, al kinds of mettall, fruits, cattle, suger, honey, Rubarbe, Camphire, Ginger, woad, Muske, and al sorts of perfumes. The custome only of salte in the citty *Canto* (which is not of the greatest nor the best traffique) yeeldeth 180. thousand crownes yearely: the tenth of Rice of one smal town and the adiacent territory, yeeldeth more then 100000. Crownes. By these you may coniecture of the rest. He leaueth his subiects nothing, saue food and clothing. He hath vnder him no earls, lords or Nobles of any degree, no nor priuate persons indowed with great wealth. Wherefore since this Empire is so huge, and al the profits thereof are in his hands, how can the former assertion of so great and yearly reuenue, to men of reason seem any thing admirable at all? There are two thinges moreouer, which adde great credite to this reckoning; one is, that al his impositions are not paide in coine, but some in hay, some in Rice, Corne, prouender, silke, cotton wooll, and such like necessaries; the other is, that the King of 120. millions, which



which he receiveth, disburseth againe three parts thereof. And so since it goeth round from the king to the people, it ought to seem no wonder, if the people be able to spare it againe for the princes vse at the yeares end. For as waters doe ebbe as deepe as they flowe, so impositions easily leauied suffice for the expences of the state, and the people receiue againe by those expences as much as they laid out in the beginning of the yeares. The King of *China* feareth no neighbor, but the great *Cham* of *Tartaria*; all the rest acknowledge vassallage. Against this enemy the anciēt kings built that admirable wal, so much renowned amongst the wonders of the *Orient*. Towards the sea hee bordereth vpon the *Iaponians* and *Castilians*. The distance betweene *Iapan* and *China* is diuers. From *Goto* one of the Ilandes of *Iapan* to the citty of *Liampo* is threescore leagues: from *Canton* 297. The Ilanders of *Iapan* do often spoyle the sea-coasts of *China* by their incursions, descending on land and harrying the country more like pyrats then men of warre. For in regard that *Iapan* is deuided into many Ilands, and into diuers seigniories (ill agreeing amongst themselues) though they excell the *Chinois* in armes and courage, yet are they not of sufficient power to perform any action of moment against them. Vpon another frontire lye the Spaniards, of whome the *Chinois* not without good cause are very ieaalous, because of the scituation of the *Philippine* (commodiously seated for inuasion of *China*) and the fame of the riches well knowne to the Spanish. But the king of Spaine wisbeth rather to plant Christianity peaceably amongst them, whereof there was once good hope that God had opened a passage thereunto. For though the *chinois* wil suffer no stranger to enter within their dominions, yet certain Iesuites (zealous in the increasing of Christian religion) in a territory, so spacious that is, entred with great secrecy and danger, and obtaining the fauour of certain gouernors, obtained a priuiledge of naturalization, especially Fryer *Michael Ragerius*, who in the yeare 1590. returned into Europe to aduise what course were best to take in this busines. After whose departure intelligence was brought from two Friers which remained behinde, that after diuers persecutions they were then constrained



ned to forsake the citty wherein they sojourned and had constrained many, & to make hast to sea-ward. The Portugals are likewise eye-sores to them, but by the report of the Justice and moderation of *Ferdinand Andrada*, which he shewed in the government of the Iland of *Tamo*, and by the trafficke which they exercise in those seas, they can better digest their neighbourhood, then that of Spanish. This was the first Portugall that arrived in the citty of *cantan*, & set a land *Thomas Perez*, legier for *Emanuel* king of *Portugal*. But other captaines being there afterwards disembarked, behaved themselves so leudly, that they occasioned the said Ambassador to be taken for a spy, and cast in prison, where he died most miserably, the residue were entreated as enemies. At last it was permitted the Portugals for trafficke sake to settle a factory in *Macao*, where again before they had strongly fortified their colony, they were constrained to submit to the limitations of the *chinois*, to who in short time for their strength, wisdom, friendship, and allians with the *castilians*, they became suspitious: & therefore they do daily more and more bridle their liberty of trafficke, carrying so heauie a hand toward them that they would faine giuen them occasion to leaue *Macao* of their owne wils, and retire backe into *India* from whence they came.

*The kingdome of Siam.*

Vpon the borders of *china* (to speake nothing of *cauchinchina* because we know nothing worth relation of that territory) ioyneth the contry of *Siam*, accounted amongst the great kingdoms of Asia. It tooke his name of the city *Siam*, scituated vppon the entrance of the riuer *Menon*: It is also called *Gorneo*. It reacheth by the East and west from the city *Campaa*, to the city of *Tauai*, in which tract by the sea coast are contained five hundred leagues, whereof the Arabians once vsurped two hundred, with the Citties of *Patan*, *Paam*, *Ior*, *Perca*, and *Malaco*, now in the possession of the Portugales. From the south toward the North, it reacheth from *Sinca Pura*, scituate in degree, to the people called *Gueoni* in 29 degrees.

The lake *Chiamai* is distant from the sea sixe hundered milcs: the vpland circuit stretcheth from the borders of *Canchinchina* beyond.



beyond the riuer *Auan*, where lyeth the kingdome of *Chencra*. Besides the lake of *Chiami*, the riuers *Menon*, *Menam*, *Caipumo* and *Ana* (which cause greater fertility of graine thorough the whole region, then a man would belecue) are all his. The better part of his kingdome are inuironed with the mountaines *Ana*, *Brema*, and *Iangoma*; the residue is plaine like Egypt, abounding with Elephants, horses, pepper, gold, and tin. In the west part are huge woods, tygers, lyons, lynxes, and serpents. It containeth these prouinces, *Cambata*, *Siam*, *Muantai*, *Bremo*, *Caipumo*, and *Chencra*. The inhabirants of *Lai* which border vpon the North of the prouinces of *Muantai* & *Caipumo* (and are diuided into three principalities,) are vnder his obeyfance. The first is that of *Iangoma*, the second of *Cucrai*, the thirde *Lanca*, nere *Chachinchina*. They inhabit a plaine and wealthy country, into which the *Gueoni* (*Marke Paul* calleth their country *Gangigou*) discending from the mountaines to hunt for men, make oftentimes cruell butcheries amongst them. The people of *Lai* for feare of those *Anthropophagi* acknowledge the soueraignty of *Siam*, but they often rebell, and obey as they list.

The wealth of the country may be coniectured by the fertility: for being scituated in a plaine, and watered with most famous riuers (like another Egypt) it cannot but abounde with plenty of all good things. It bringeth forth Rice, graine of all sorts, horses, elephants, infinite store of catle, gold, and tin: silver is brought thither by the people of *Lai*. By reason of this plenty, the people are drowned in pleasure and wantonnesse. They follow husbandry, but take no great delight in manuell occupations, which causeth the kingdome to be poore in marchandize. Amongst many other cities three are famous, *Cambata*, seated vpon the riuer *Menon*: which rising in *China*, is so hugely augmented by the falling in of many riuers, that his owne channell not sufficing for receite thereof, it renteth the earth to disgorge it selfe, into a thousand Ilands, making a second *Meotis* more then 60. miles long. *Meican* signifieth the captaine, *Menon* the mother of waters. The second cittie of *Siam*, whose statelines giueth the name to the whole countrey. It is a most goodly ctity, and of admirable traffick, which may  
the



the better be imagined by the writing of a certaine Iesuite, who reporteth, that besides the natural inhabitants, there are more then thirty thousand Arabian households. The third city is called *Vdia*, greater then *Siam*, consisting of foure hundred thousand families. It is sayd that two hundred thousand boats belong to this citty, and the riuer *Caipumo*, whereon it is seated. This king to shew his maiesty and magnificence keepeth a garde of sixe thousande souldiers and two hundred Elephants: of these beasts hee hath thirty thousand, whereof hee traineth three thousande for the warre. This is a very great matter, if you weigh their woorth and their charges in keeping.

His gouernment is rather tyranicall then kinglike: for he is absolute Lord ouer al the demeanes of the kingdom, & either setteth them out to husbandmen, or giueth them to his nobles for maintenance, during life and pleasure, but neuer passeth the right of inheritanee. He bestoweth on them likewise towns & villages with their territories, but on condition to maintain a certaine number of horsemen, footmen, & Elephants. By this pollicy without any peny pay or burden to the country, hee is able to leuy twenty thousand horsemen, and 250. thousande footmen. Vppon occasion he can wage a greater number, by reason of the largenes of his kingdomes, and the populousnes of his townes. For *Vdia* onely (the chiefe seat of his kingdome) mustered fifty thousand men. And although he be Lord of nine kingdoms, yet vseth he no other nation in the war but the *Siamits*, and the inhabitants of the two kingdoms of *Vdia* & *Mu-antai*. All honors and preferments are bestowed vppon men of seruice in this kingdome.

In times of peace they haue their warlike exercises, & in certaine pastimes which the king once a yeare exhibiteth at *Vdia*, are shewed all military feats of armes vpon the riuer *Menon*, where more then 3000. vessels (which they terme *Paraos*) deuided into two squadrons, skirmish one against the other. Vpon the land run the horses and Elephants, and the footmen try it out at sword and buckler with point and edge rebated: the remainder of their daies they spend in riot and wantonnes.



Their borders towards the east reach to *Canchinchina*, betwene whom are such huge woods, Lyons, Tygers, Leopards, serpents and Elephants, that they cannot infect one another by armes. Toward the lake *China* they border vpon the *Chinois*. Toward the sea they affront the *Arabians* and *Portugals*. The one took from them *Patam*, *Paam*, *Jor*, and *Peam*, the other *Malaca*, and the territory adjoining; so betwene them they bereaubd him of two hundred miles of land: and contenting themselues with the sea-coasts, and the customes arising vpon the carrying out and bringing in of merchandize, they abstain from further inuasion of the inland prouinces, & hold it good pollicy to keepe firme peace with the king and his countries. Toward the west lieth the kingdom of *Pegu* like a halfe moon, betwene the mountaines of *Brama* and *Iangoma*. Towards the North lie the *Gudom*, inhabiting the barren and sharpe mountaines, betwene whom and *Siam* dwell the people of *Lay*. This people is subiect to the crowne of *Siam* for feare of these *Cannibals*, of whom (if it had not bin for his protection) they had long ago bin vtterly deuoured. Not forty years since the king made a iourney against them with 20000. horse (their horse are small, but excellent good in trauell) 25000. footmen, and ten thousand Elephants; part employed for seruice, part for cariage. No kingdome hath greater store of these beasts, or doth more vse them. An innumerable number of Oxen, Buffals, and beasts of cariage followed this army, whom they slew when they wanted other prouision.

Hitherto haue we deuised of *Siam* and *Pegu* (as they stood) before the coming of the *Portugals* into *India*, but how in proces of time the state was altered, you shall now heare. In times past diuers kingdomes of *Barma* scituated along the Riuer towards the lake *Chiamai* obeyed the King of *Pegu* vnder the gouernement of certaine Lieutenants. Sixty yeares since one of these captaines ruler of the kingdome of *Tengu*, by the ayde of his faction and reputation of his vertues, entred into rebellion, and slaying the Nobles of the land, vsurped the kingdome. Afterward he forced the citties, and conquered the kingdome of *Prom*, *Melintai*, *Calam*, *Mirandu*, and *Ana*, all inhabited by the



by the *Bramians*, for the space of one hundred and fifty leagues toward the North. He assayed likewise the conquest of *Siam*; but coming before *Vdia* the chiefe citty of the kingdome, he was forced to raise his siege and depart. Hee vndertooke this journey with 300000. footemen, consuming more then three months in making way for his army through stony mountains, huge woods, and inaccessible places; and in lieu for the losse of 220000. of his souldiers, he tooke two thousand *Siamites* prisoners. At his returne home he inuaded the kingdome of *Pegu*, and woon it. Afterward in the yeare 1507. he renewed his journey against *Siam*, and ouercame the King thereof, who slewe himselfe with poyson, but he tooke his sonnes and with them the better part of the kingdome. He belegred *Vdia* with a million of men and vpward. Our late writers call this man and his successorus (because their fames arose by the conquest of the kingdoms of *Brama*) kings of *Brama* or *Bramia*, but the Portugals of a more sound iudgement grounded vpon neerer neighborhoode, call them kings of *Pegu*.

And for that it may not seeme that what we write a concerning their infinite numbers, is eyther fabulous or reported altogether vpon heare say, because that now, heere before, and heereafter we shall haue occasion to discourse of this point, we thinke not amisse to spend some time in shewing howe and by what likelihoods, both in this and the other barbarous dominions such huge and numberlesse companies are leuied & nourished. First therefore it is a ground infalible, that populous armies, at home or abroad, cannot long endure without great reuenues, and a continuall sea of ready mony: for as the members of our body cannot moue without sinewes, nor motion auaile vs, if ioyntes were wanting; so without money an army can neuer be gathered, nor being gathered kept together, nor resolutely lead forth to any peece of seruice, if coine bee wanting, which preuenteth infinite mischances, and draweth after it Armour, Prouision, victuals, and whatsoever else is necessary for life or armes. And sithence the wealth of Princes, euen as of priuate persons (from whose purses they supply their occasions) hath limittes and measure: Let them not thinke



to begin any long war, much lesse to continue it, vnlesse they throughly prouide aforehand, or are Lords of mines rich and inexhaustible: for great treasures are soon spent, & that which hath thriftily bin gathered in peace, must prodigally be disbursed in war: euen one yeare of war wasteth the reprisals of many yeares peace. Which moued a certaine *Portugal* captain to tel King *Sebastian*, prouiding for his iourney into *Barbary*, that wars should be accompanied with three streames; the first of men, the second of victuall, the third of siluer. For all wars are exceeding chargeable, but those most excessiue and beyond opinion which are managed far from home. The great Turk in his *Persian* iournies felt the smart thereof, who though he were so potent a prince, was notwithstanding constrained to raise the value of his coyne, and abase the allay, so far forth, that the *Ianizars* finding themselves agreeued therat, raised commotiōs, set fire on the city of *Constantinople*, and rifled a great part thereof. Neither could the king of *Spaine* sustaine the burden of so many wars, and in so remote prouinces, if he trusted to no other supplies then those of *Spaine*, but fortune hath giue him a countrey prodigall in Mines of gold and siluer, assuredly paying the expence of one yeare, with the income of another. This cloatheth and feedeth the souldior, bringeth them to a head, and maketh them march cheerfully vpon al seruices. *Iohn Iaques Trunulce* being demanded how many things were necessary in war, answered three; *Money, money, Money*. But these grounds onely hold, when the burden of the war lyeth vpon the purse of the Prince and his people: for somtime it hapneth, that the souldior liueth vpon the enemies countrey, as did the *Hunnes*, *Vandals*, *Gothes*, *Arabians*, and in our daies *Tamerlane*. They entred the Prouinces without controule, being vnprouided of forces, and made prey and spoile of whatsoever came in their reach: They ransacked the Citties, and fed vpon the villages. The like good lucke had the *Portugals* in the *East Indies*, & the *Castillians* in the *West*, but the one far better than the other; for neuer any Nation conquerd with lesse cost, so much as the *Spaniards* haue done in new *Spaine* and *Peru*. But let not any people thinke to doe so in these daies, no not in *Asia* or *Africke*,  
much



much lesse in Europe, where the vse of great Ordinance is in perfection, and the art of fortification so ingenious, that one castle shall be able to sustaine, yea wel prouided, to weary the forces of the greatest potentate. The Turkes at *Zigeth* (a small Castle in *Hungary*) approued this, which in the yeare 1566. *Soliman* beleagerd with 300000. men of war, and at last forced, but with so great a slaughter of his people, that scant the third part of this huge army returned to their houses. In like maner, the Portugals in the beginning of their *Indian* acquisitions, with a few souldiers and in little time, woon admirable victories; but when the *Barbarians* began to grow acquainted with Artillery, to allure Carpenters and Masons to build them Castles, & to arme vessels to sea, their courages became calme, and there set an ende to their *plus ultra*. The like did the *Spanish* in the new world, to their *Non sufficit orbis*. For after their first good fortunes they founde in *Nova Hispania*, the *Chichimechi*, and in *Peru* the *Pilcosony*, the *Chiriguani* and the *Luchij*, people so well prouided to stop the furious course of their former victories, that sithence, in seuen and twenty yeares space, they haue not bene able to adde one footes breadth to their newe Empirie. In the vale of *Aranco*, *Tecapell*, and the kingdome *Chile*, when the Inhabitants sawe them to be wounded and flaine with the stroakes of their arrowes and swordes, they neuer afterwardes vouchsafed them their former reuerence, nor carried the wonted conceit of their immortality: and now being beaten by experience, they feare not the cariere of any horse, nor the terror of the Harquebuse.

If the warre be at or within our owne doores, then is it easie to leuy strong and populous forces, as we read of the *Crotons*, *Sabarites*, and *Gauntois*, who made head against the power of *France* with foure-score thousand fighting men. For when the warre was made in these populous countries and neer at hand; euery man made one in the meddle, gallantly armed, and well prouided with furniture and victual to hold out certain daies: but when the warre continued longer than expectation, for want of money and food, euery man retired; one to the plow, another to his shop, the rest to those trades wherby they sustai-



ned themselves and their families. The *Scots* for want of wealth neuer made famous iourney out of the Iland, but at home they haue led mighty Armies for a short time, either for reuenge of wrongs, or to defend their frontiers: euen as did the *Romans* for certaine ages, warring with their neighbors at their priuate charges. They tooke the field euery man prouided with vittell for two or three daies, and in one battaile and few houres finished that warre. But in the iourney against the *Vey*, the warre continuing beyond opinion, the state was inforced to procure pay for the Army. That armies may farre easier be gathered in the East & *Africke*, then in *Europe*, the reasons are many. Those regions for the most part are more plentifull of all necessaries for humane life: The people of the South are better contented with little then we: their dyet is bare & simple, only to maintaine life and not excesse: but the *Europeans* must eate & drink, not to sustaine nature, but to comfort the stomach and to expel coldes. Wine which with vs is dearer then bread, is not to be found amongst them: their waters are better then our drinks. Cookery is not in such request with them, as with vs, nor their tables accustomed to such Cates: their banquets are only furnished with Rice and Mutton. Neither doe the people of the East, spend a quarter of that clothing which we doe: they goe to the war halfe naked, hiding nothing but their priuities: they stand not in stead of that number of workmen which we doe: among whom, the greatest part of our life is spent, in weauing and deuising stuffles and fashions to cloath the carcase & adorn the body; with cloth, silke, colours, and embroderies. Al their expences are only vpon cloathing of Cotton-wooll, and that but from the Nauell to the knee. These are the reasons which I meant to lay, why they may gather forty thousand men with more ease, then we ten; and to these may be added this as the last; that vpon Ordinance and their furnitures; vpon prouisions and their cariages; vpon horses, pioners, and a thousande like necessaries, infinit summes are spent; of which the people of the East are vtterly ignoraunt, especially those which haue not to deale with the *Portugals* or *Arabians*. They go to warre without armour, without curaces, helmets, launces or targets, which



which with vs cannot be conueyed from place to place without great expence. *Virgill*, calleth this luggage, *mystem fascem*, because it seemeth a needlesse trouble: and therein we degenerate much from the ancient *Romans*, who for ten daies iourney and more, carried euery man his proper weapons both offensive and defensiue, yea and somtimes his victuals. What should we speake of the Armies of the *Affirians*, and *Ethiopians*, of *Belus*, *Ninus*, *Simiramis*, *Carobises*, *Cyrus*, *Darius*, *Sesostris* and *Sesacus*, were they not as huge and populous by the report of all histories, as these whereof wee intreat? Or in times lesse auncient haue not we and our auncestors seene the *Arabians*, *Tartarians*, and *Turkes*, inuading prouinces with Armies of three hundred thousand people and vppward. By moderne examples and memory of later accidents to giue credit to the auncient, I will set downe what hapned in *Angola* (a noble and rich prouince of the West *Ethyope* adioyning to *Congo*) reported by the Letters of certaine Iesuites and *Portugall* Captaines. In the yeare 1584 *Paulus Diasius* by the fauour of God and valour of his people, vpon the second day of February, put to flight the king of *Angola*, and defeated his army, consisting of one Million and two hundred thousande Moores: which may wel proue that these populous armies are of little seruice and smal continuance, rather like violent stormes, then dripping shewers; and though with ease they are gathered, yet without greater prouision the any prouince is able to affoord them, they are not easily helde together. When their prouision is spent, they begin to breake, and bid adieu to the action; and that most commonly not in the midst of their course, but euen in their first remooues: for *Metchants*, *vittailers*, *tailors*, *shoomakers*, and such like, follow not their wars: and if they shoulde, then this inconuenience would follow; that for one million of souldiers, it were very necessary to prouide a million of wagons, packhorse, carter, *Carpenters*, *Victualers*, *merchants*, &c. and then, neither riuers would serue them for drinke, nor the fieldes with bread, nor the earth for lodgings: so must they needs sink vnder their owne waight; which the Easterne Princes (leading these vncustomed numbers vppon long iourneyes) in some fashion fore-



forecasting, and did alwayes prouide incredible masses of monny, victuall, and such like warlike prouisions, long before they entred into action; as was well seene in *Xerxes*, who to maine- taine that great army, as well at sea as at land, which hee ledde for the conquest of *Greece*, spent seauen yeares in preparation for the iourney.

To returne to the king of *Barma*: of late yeares he tooke the hauens of *Martela* and *Pernasor*; and turning his armes some- time towards the North, sometime toward the west, hee vex- ed the Princes of *Caor* and *Tipura*, tooke the kingdoms of *Ara- can* and *Macin*, leading vpon this iourney 300000. men, & for- ty thousand Elephants.

*Aracan* is a kingdom inuironed round with mountains and woods as with a wall or trench: the chiefe citty which giueth the name to the country, is seituated on a riuer fifteene leagues from the sea, and thirty five from *Catagan*.

*Macin* is a kingdom abounding in *Aloes*: this wood, which the Arabians call *Calambuco*, and others *Lignum vita*, for the sweet fauour is valued by the people of the East at the waight in siluer. In *India* and *Cambaia* they vse it at the buriall of great Lords, in baths, and in other wantonnes. It groweth most fre- quent in the rough mountaines of *Campa*, *Cambaia* and *Macin*. That which is brought to vs is in no esteeme with them; The right is found (say they) in *Congo* and *Angola* and the bordring countrey, and vsed by them in al their greuous and dangerous maladies; which if it be true, I maruell that the Portugals will let slip so precious a commodity.

*Narsinga.*

IN the row of these potent princes inhabiting between *Indus* Land *Ganges* dwelleth the king of *Narsinga*. Whatsoeuer lyeth between the mountaine gate and the gulfe of *Bengala*, between the promontories *Guadauerne* and *Comorn*, by the space of two hundred leagues, abounding as prodigally (as any other pro- uince in the *Indies*) with all good thinges, is vnder his domini- on. The waters sometime falling from the mountain, sometime from the riuers, and receiued into trenches, meres and Lakes, doe woonderfully coole, moysten, and enrich this land, causing the



the graine & cattel to prosper aboue imagination. It is no lesse plentifull of birds, beasts, wilde and tame, buffals, Elephants, and mines of precious stones and mettals. It breedeth no races of horse for the war, but they buy them of the *Arabian & Persian* merchants in great numbers: the like do all the princes of *Decan*. Within the bounds of *Narsinga* dwell fiue nations different in language; hee hath many stronge places on the Indian Ocean. *Canora* is at his command, wherein are the hauen towns of *Mangolar, Melind, Berticala, & Onor*: but the Portugales receiue the custome of *Barticala*, and also in times past of *Onor*. In *Narsinga* are two imperial cities: *Narsinga* and *Bisnagar*, by reason whereof he is termed sometime king of *Narsinga*, sometime king of *Bisnagar*.

It is vndoubtedly belceued, that this king receiueth yearely twelue millions of ducats, of which he layeth vp but two or 3. the residue he expendeth vpon the troupes of his soldiers, that is to say, forty thousand *Nairs*, and twenty thousand horsemen kept in continuall pay. Vpon necessity he is able to leuy a farre greater number: for besides these allowances hee setteth out certaine lands to 200. captaines, on condition to keepe in readinesse a proportion of horsemen, footemen, and Elephantes. The wages of these captaines (to some of whom he giueth a million of ducats yearely) may bee an argument of his great reuenues; for to these proiects, this prince and al the potentates of the East, keepe in their possession all the profits of the landes, woods, mines, yea and the waters of pooles and riuers through their whole dominions. No man may wash himselfe in *Ganges*, (which runneth by *Bengala*) nor in *Ganga* (which watereth the land of *Orissa*) before he hath paide tole to the king. The King himselfe is nowe inforced to buy this water, causing it to bee brought vnto him by long iournies, vppon a superstitious custome, eyther to bath or purge himselfe therein. He is absolute Lord of the bodics and goods of his subiects, which he shareth to himselfe and his captaines, leauing the people nothing but their hands and labour: of lands the king hath three parts, and his captaines the residue. Whereupon sithence all these barbarous princes maintaine not peace and iustice, as arches where-



vpon to lay the ground worke of theis estates, but armes, conquest, and the Nursery of a continuall souldiery, it must needs follow that they are able to leuy greater troupes of horffe and foot then otherwise we were bound to beleue. But to induce some measure of credite, let vs compare the abilities of some Christian princes, with theirs. If the King of *France* were absolute Lord of all the lands and profits of his whole dominion (as these men are) it is thought that his yearly reuenues woulde amount to 15. millions, & yet therein are neither mines of gold nor siluer. The clergie receiueth six millions, the kings demesnes amount to one and an halfe, the residue is theirs who haue the inheritance, and yet peazants liue well heere, in comparison of the *Villagois* of *India*, *Polonia*, and *Lithuania*. Besides this, the king hath eight millions of ordinary reuenue, arising of customs and escheats. How mighty a prince would he be, if hee were Landlord of the demesnes and rents of the whole kingdom, and should employ them vpon the maintainance of soldiers, as doeth the king of *Narsinga*? Surely whereas nowe the Kings reuenues do hardly suffice for the maintenance of foure thousand men at armes, and six thousand Crosse-bows; if this allowance were added to the former, he might as easily maintaine 150. thousand.

To returne to *Narsinga*: the king to see that his captains performe their duties, once a yeare proclaimeth a muster, whereat they dare not but be present: at the muster day those who haue presented their companies, defectiue either in number or furniture, are sure to be cashiered: but those who bring their companies complete and well armed, he honoureth and aduanceth. What forces may bee gathered out of so ample a dominion (armed after their manner, as aforesaid) you shall gather by that which *John Barros* writeth of the army which king *Chrismarao* led against *Idalcan* in the iourney of *Raciel*. These are his words *Verbatim*. Vnder sundry captaines the army was diuided into many battalians: In the vantgard marched *Camraque* with one thousand horfe, 17. Elephants, and thirty thousand footmen. *Tirabicar*, with two thousand horfe, twenty Elephants, and fifty thousand footmen. *Timapanique*, with three thousand horsmen, and



and fifty six thousand footmen. After them folowed *Hadanaique* with five thousand horsemen, fifty Elephants, and one hundred thousand footmen. *Condorama*, with six thousand horse, sixty Elephants, one hundred and twenty thousand footmen. *Comora*, with two hundred and fifty horse, forty Elephants, & 80. thousand footmen. *Gendua* with 1000. horse, ten Elephants & 30000. footmen. In the reeward were two Eunuchs with one thousand horse, fifteen Elephants, & forty thousand footmen. *Betel* one of the kings pages led 200. horse, twenty Elephants, and 8000. foote. After all these followed the king with his gard of six thousand horsemen, three hundred Elephants, and forty thousand footmen. Vpon the flankes of this battell went the gouernor of the citty of *Bengapur* with diuers captains, vnder whose colours were 4200. horse, 25. Elephants, and sixty thousand mercenary footmen. Vpō the head of the battel ranged 200000. horsemen in small troupes, like our vantcurrens, in such sort and order scowring the country, before, behinde, and on all sides, that no Nouelty coulde so suddenly happen, but notice thereof was giuen at the imperial tent in a moment. Twelue thousand carriers of water, and twenty thousand light huswiues followed this army. The number of Lackies, Marchants, Artificers, Scullions (they call them *Maniati*) Oxen, Buffals, and carriage beasts, was infinite. When the army was to passe any riuer knee-deepe, before the formost were passed, there was scant sufficient for the latter wherof to drink. Before this iourny the king sacrificed in nine daies 20736, head of liuing creatures, as well of Birds as Beasts, the flesh whereof in honor of his ydols, was giuen to the poore. The souldiers were clothed in Garments of cotton-wooll so close and hard quilted, that they would beare out the thrust of a Lance or sword. Euery Elephant was trimmed in a couering of Cotton wooll, with a frame on his backe bearing foure men. To their tuskes were fastned long and broad swords, to cut in sunder whatsoeuer stood in their way. The footmen were armed with bows, Iauelins, swords and bucklers. These last, the better to couer their whole bodies, and to manage their heavy bucklers, caried no offensiue weapons. In the fight when the k.



perceiued *Idalcan* by the fury of his great ordinance to make hauocke of his men, and dismay the residue, leaping into the head of the battell, is reported to vse this prince-beseeming incouragement: Beleeue me, my companions, *Idalcan* shal rather boast that hee hath slaine, then ouercome a King of *Narsinga*. With which words and ensample, his souldiers all inflamed, & ashamed of their cowardize, with a furious charge broke the enemies aray, and put *Idalcan* to flight. Amongst other spoiles, they tooke foure thousand Arabian horses, one hundered Elephants, foure hundered great peeces, besides small. The nūber of Oxen, Buffals, tents and prisoners, was inestimable. With *Idalcan* were forty *Portngals*, with the king of *Narsinga* twenty. In his raigne two of his captaines rebelled; *Virapanai* vsurped *Negapatan*, & *Veneapatir* the territory adioyning to *Matipura*.

*Calecute.*

**T**He most Noble part of India is that which lyeth between the mountaine *Gate* & the *Indian Ocean*. It stretcheth from *Cape Comerin* to the riuer *Cangierecor*, three hundred miles long. In this prouince raigneth the king of *Calecute*, who though he may not be compared with the prince aboue spoken of, for nūber and powver, yet for pleasaunt and plentifull scituation hee may be said far to surpassle them. For the region is so cut (as it were) into many parcels, sometime by creekes of the sea, sometime by riuers, and sometime by lakes, that nature (as it should seeme) would haue it deuided into seuerall prouinces, as *Tranancan*, *Colan*, *Cochin*, *Crangonor*, *Calecute*, *Tauo* and *Canonor*. Seuen years ago *Percimal* king of all *Malabar* ruled these prouinces, who after he became a Mahumetan, and resolved to trauell to *Meca*, there to spend the remnant of his daies, deuided the land into many principalities, but with this prouiso, that al soueraigne authority should rest in the king of *calecute*, with the title of *Samori*, which signifieth Emperour, or as some write, God on earth. Although the reputation of this King bee much ecclipsed by the *Portngals*, partly by diuersion of traffick from his countries, and partly by assisting his rebels and vassals (the kings of *Tauor* & *Cochin*) and though his title of *Samori* be litle regarded, yet remaineth hee his woonted maiesty  
in



in very good sort amongst the *Barbarians*. *Calecute* is 25 leagues long: *Malabar* in the broadest place exceedeth not ten.

The citty of *Calecute* (from whence the prouince taketh his name) is three miles long, scituated vpon the sea side. It containeth but few houses, and those of little worth, not aboue ten, fifteene, or twenty nobles rent by the yeare, which is the common rent of all the housing of the East Indies, if the *Arabians* or *Portugals* be not dealers therein. The inhabitants liue vpon Rice, Palmito, cattell and fish. Their riches consist in ginger & pepper, which draweth yearely a great masse of treasure into the hauens of this kingdome. The *Arabians* were Lords of this traffick for many ages, till the *Portugals* setting light by the incredible dangers of a long nauigation, arriued there not aboue a hundred yeares since, and bartered their wares for Pepper and other commodities. And as the *Portugales* enriched the towns of *Cochin*, so did the *Arabians* *calecute*, & that kingdome. For this comodity is of such consequence, that it not only enricheth the prince with presents and customes, but in such sort augmenteth the state of the merchants, that some of them are comparable to many dukes in Europe and kings in *Affricke*.

In their wars in *Malabar* they vse not the seruice of horse, not onely for that the climate breedeth none, (for those that they haue are brought out of *persia* and *Arabia*) but for that the nature of the country is not fit for horsemanship. For as in *Sweuia* the footmen vse no pikes, & the horsmen no Lances for the thickenesse of the woodes, which maketh them vnseruiceable, so in *Malabar* because of the straights, riuers of the sea, & marishes, they seldome vse horses, so that all their forces consist in shipping and footmen. It is strange to see how ready the souldiour of this countrey is at his weapons; they are all gentlemen, and tearmed *Naires*. At seauen years of age they are put to schoole to learne the vse of their weapons, where to make them nimble and actiue, their sinnewes and ioynts are stretched by skilfull fellowes, and annointed with the Oyle *Sesamus*; by this annointing they becom so light and nimble, that they will wind and turne their bodies, as if they had no bones, casting them forward, backward, high, and low, euen to the astonishment of



the beholders. Their continual delight is in their weapon, persuading themselves that no nation goeth beyond them in skill & dexterity. Every one invreth himselfe to that weapon, whereto he findeth his body most agreeable. Their ancient weapons were the *Javelin*, the bow, and the sword; but after the coming of the Portugals, they learned so exactly the mixture of metals, the casting of great ordinance, and the practise thereof, that (some say) their artillery and powder surpasseth ours. They go to war all naked save their privities, neither use they head peeces, which is the reason that in fights and skirmishes they shew exceeding agility, charging & retiring more like Falcons then souldiers. When a man would take them to be far off, hee shall see them howering round about him in a trice, so that it is as dangerous to follow them flying, as to deal with them fighting. They are swift as Leopards, and their flight as much to be feared, as their charge. If they com to handstrokes (which they will not do but vpon necessity or aduantage) they use altogether to strike with the point. They bind copper or siluer shingles to the hilts of their swords, the sound whereof in steede of drums and trumpets, encourageth them to the encounter. They will ly so close vnder their bucklers, that you shall not see any part of their bodies, ly open to the danger. They are one kind of *Nairs* (called *Amochi*) which curse themselves, their kindred & posterity with most birter execrations; if they leaue iniuries done to their society vneuenged. If their king happen to be flaine, so much the more furious run they through fire, water, and assured destruction to reuenge his death. And therefore the kings of *India* suppose their estates weak or strong, as they perceiue the numbers of those *Amochi* to be few or many. By the law of the country they may not marry, but they are all allowed women in common. They maintaine those women according to their birth and degrees. They must be all gentlewomen, for the *Nairs* may not take any contrywoman, yea so great is their disdain and pride, that without ill vsage they will not endure any of the common people to come neare them. In their iournies they send their seruants before to the Innes & villages, to declare their maisters approach; then must all traellers depart  
and



and giue room. If it be thought in Turky, that by licentious liberty in time of peace the Janizars become more hardy and coragious in war: what may we deeme of these *Nairs*, who will not endure a man of meane calling to looke them in the face? They inhabite no townes, but dwell in houses made of earth, inuironed with hedges and woodes, & their waies as intricate as into a laborinth. Of what force this kingdom is, may be gathered by the army of 6000. souldiers, and two hundred vessels of war, which he leuied 1503. against *Edward Pachecho* the king of *Portugals* captaine, taking part that time with the king of *Cochin*: this war lasted almost five months. In the year 1529. with an army of 100000. he belegered the fortresse which the *Portugals* built in *Calcutte*, vnder the keeping of *Iohn Lima*. In this siege he spent a whole winter, wherein although the *Portugals* behaued themselues valiantly; yet weighing the Kings forces and their owne possibilities, they thought it best to destroy it with their owne hands. In the yeare 1661. he besieged *Ciale* with 90000. men, and tooke it by composition. Hee hath more then once giuen an instance of his power at sea. Hee is Lord of many hauens, whereunto great numbers of shipping do resort, and in that regard, cannot choose but be well furnished with a great nauy. But in goodnes of shipping and martiall discipline we must needs confesse the seaforces of al the *Indian* princes to be far inferior to those of the *Portugals*, whose dominion (both at sea and land) nothing hath so much augmented, as their defensue warfare. To speake truth it seldome falleth out, but the naked man feareth the sword, and the armed more encouraged thereby, bearing himselfe bolder vpon his skill then his strength, and preuailing more by temporizing, then in ioyning foot to foot by rash fighting, whereas the *Barbarians* putting more confidence in their numbers then goodnesse, haue alwaies wanted that vertue, which shoulde make armies dreadful and fortunate, and that is good order, and warlike discipline.

*The kingdome of Iapan.*

**I** *Apan* may well be called a politike body compacted of many land. fundry Ilandes of diuers different formes and circuites, which



which as they are deuided from the rest of the continent, so are they inhabited by a people much differing in manners and customs from the residue of the *Orient*. They stand round & close together like the *Maldine* in the *Indiann* sea, and the *Hebrides* and *Orchades* in the north Ocean. They are in number sixty six, diuided into three partialities. The first containeth nine, the second four, the third fifty three. Amongst these, five are renowned, but especially one for the famous citty of *Macao*. And it is most commonly seene that they who haue the soueraignty of those five, are Lords of all the rest. It is distant from new Spain 150. leagues: from *China* 60. The soyle is to bee accounted rather barren then fertil. The inhabitants are of a very ready wit, and maruailons patient in aduersity. Their new borne children they immediately wash in the riuers, and as soone as they are weaned they do take them from their mothers, and bring them vp in labors of hunting and such like exercises. They go bare-headed men and women, as well in foule weather as in faire. They are very ambitious and desirous of honor. Pouerty is no disgrace to the Gentry of their blood. They will not suffer the least wrong to passe vnreuedged: they salute one another with many curtesies: they are very staied and of a setled resolution. They are very ieaalous to shew themselves fearfull or base minded in word or deed: they wil make no man priuy of their losses or misfortunes: they haue the like beastes both tame and wild as we haue, but they wil scarcely eat any thing saue herbs, fish, Barly, or Rice, and if they do, it is the flesh of wilde beastes taken by hunting. Of these graines they make their wines, and water mixt with a certaine precious powder, which they vse, they account a dainty beuerage: they call it *Chia*. Their buildings for the most part are of timber, partly because the vpland places are destitute of quarries, but abounding with *Cædars* of admirable height and thicknes fit for building, and partly because the country is subiect to earthquakes. In times past all *Japan* obeyed one prince, shewing him great obedience & subiection, and this gouernement endured with no lesse state and maiesty, at the least sixteene hundred yeares, vntill about fifty yeares since, by the rebellion of two of his cheefest lieutenants, the



the whole kingdome was distracted, each of them holding by armes whatsoever he atchieued by vsurpation. By their example others becomming as ambitious, seised vpon the rest of the kingdom; some on one part, some on another; leauing nothing but the bare name of *Dairi*, which signifieth the Lorde of all *Japan*, with the title of *Iucata*, (viz.) King, to their rightfull soueraigne. Yea those princes which were Lordes of the territories about *Meaco*, would hardly allow him wherof to find him victuall and apparrell, so that now he resembleth the shadow, rather then the king of the ancient and magnificent Monarchy of *Japan*. Since those times whosoever layeth holdefast on the dominion of the *Coquinai* (those are the five kingdomes bordering *Meaco*) instead of *Dairi*, calleth himselfe Emperor & king of *Japan*, and Lord of *Tenza*. *Nabunanga* was one of them in our dayes, and after him *Fassiba* in power and maiesty excelling all his predecessors. *Nabunanga* was Lord of six and thirty prouinces, *Fassiba* at the least of fifty.

The forme of gouernment is nothing like the policy of Europe. The strength of the prince consisteth not in ordinary reuenues and loue of the people, but in rigor & the Princes pleasure. Assoone as the Prince hath conquered one or more kingdomes, he shareth them wholly amongst his friends and followers, who binde themselves by oath faithfully to serue him with a limited company of men as well in peace as warre. They againe to make their followers trusty and ready for al seruices, reseruing some smal matter for the sustentation of themselves, and families, deuide to euery man a portion of the former diuision; so that all the wealth of *Japan* priuate add publicke is in the hand of a few men, and those few depending on the pleasure of one, that is, the Lord of *Tenza*. He as him listeth, giueth taketh, disgraceth, honoureth, and impouerisheth. When hee cashiereth any gouernor of his prouince, al the leaders and soldiers of the saide prouince are changed, and none left there but artificers and husbandmen. This gouernment draweth with it continuall dislike and innouations. For *Dairi* (though he hath neither power nor gouernment) yet being in fauor and estimation of the people ceaseth not to insinuate into their heades,

T t

that



that this lord of *Tenza* and the other Tyrants, are vsurpers of other mens right, destroyers of the Monarchie, and enemies to the state and liberties of *Japan*. Which perswasions take so deep root in the heartes of the people, and so extenuate the reputation of these Vsurpers, that vnder colour of suppression of other, they often take Armes vpon hope to raise their own greatnesse: so that by this daily change of gouernors, the people not knowing who are their right and naturall Lordes, know not whome to loue and obey: And againe, their Lordes being as vncertain of their continuance, care not for the people, nor for the welfare of their owne vassals, no more then if they were meer strangers: but alway aspiring by the same facility whereby they gayed one, to conquer a better, after the maner of Gamsters, continually hazzard one, vpon hope of winning another: in this sort sometime one alone, sometime many together, vexing the Islands with perpetual warrefare. *Fassiba* to assure his estate, and disable the greatest ones from enterprising against him, dooeth often transport them from one prouince to another, causing them to forgo their ancient inheritances, and to lead their liues amongst vnknowne neighbors: neither in those places will hee suffer them to enioy liuings vnited, but far deuided in peeces & percels. For al this, they are neuer at peace among themselues, by reason that the frontiers of their petty iurisdictions, neighbor so neere one vpon another. In these alterations *Fassiba* constrained aswell the losers as the winners to doe him homage and obedience, and once a yeare to pay him a rich tribute, drawing to his owne Coffers the greatest part of the wealth of *Japan* by these tyrannies. He keepeth his owne people busied in building of admirable pallaces, sumptuous Temples, Townes and fortresses, the like whereof are no where to be seene. In these workes he hath more than an hundred thousand workemen labouring in their seucrall occpnations at their owne charges. Amongest the rest he is now in building a temple, for whose yron workes all the stufte in *Japan* will hardly suffice, and therefore hee hath giuen comandement to all his people and merchants to bring all their yron and armor into one place.

Besides the oath of fealty whereby the residue of the Kings  
and



and princes, are bound to ayd and assist him in peace & warre, he receiue yearly two millions arising of the profits of Rice, reserued vpon his owne possessions. He was determined after the finishing of the fabriks, to attempt a iourney into *China*, & for that enterprize caused timber sufficiēt for the building of two thousand vessels for transportation to be felled. By these magnificent fabriks, this haughty resolution, this large dominion and conquest of forren kingdomes, hee hopeth to attaine the reputation of immortality among his subiects, as diuers of his predecessors haue done before him. For *Anida*, *Xaca*, *Canis*, and *Fotoque*, were no other then Lords of *Japan*, which eyther for their glory in warre, or inuention of some good Artes in peace, were accounted as Gods amongst the *Japonians*, as in the old world *Hercules* and *Bacchus* were amongst the *Grecians*, and *Saturne* and *Ianus* amongst the *Italians*. Of these demi-Goddes they report as many straunge and fabulous inuentions, as the *Grecians* and *Italians* did of theirs. But *Fassiba* vnderstanding by the preaching of the Iesuites, that there can bee no God but one, who created the heauen and earth of nothing, and al other deities to bee foolish and detestable, determined to bannish them all, and to weede vppe that good Vine which began to take deep root in those prouinces. Surely this may stande for a memorable example of the pride and blindnes of mans hart.

The Romaine Emperours opposed their forces against the Christian Religion, only to maintaine and vphold the worship of their Idols condemned for vaine and diuellish by the Lawe of Christianity: but this man raifeth persecution against true religion, to arrogate to himselfe the name of God, an imagination (as I saide before) full of extreame ambition and madnesse. But in the midst of these proud and vnreasonable cogitations, God rayfed vppe against him a new enemy from the Easterne parts of *Japan*, who as we vnderstande by aduises of the last yeare, is likely to giue him his hand and heade full of businesse.

Other Kingdomes and Ilandes, as *Iana Maior* and *Minor*, the *Moluccas*, *Borneo*, *Bandan*, and the *Philippine*, famous onely for their Scituation, Wealth, and Spices, I



hold fitter to be pointed at in Cards, then in discourse, beeing nothing almost in the one, but it is common to the other.

*America, or the West Indies.*

**T**His spacious part of the World, viterly vnknowne to the Auuicients, and extended vpon the vast and raging Atlantique Ocean, lay vndiscovered vntill the yeare of our lord God 1492. In which yeare it was found out by *Christopher Columbus* a man of an excellent iudgement and haughty spirit, vnder the protection and good fortunes of *Ferdinand* king of *Spaine*. Him seconded *Americus Vesputius*, and other famous gentlemen, who to their euerlasting memories, with infinite labour and danger surueyed that huge tract, with the Ilands adioining, euen vnto the furthest parts of the West and South, which is that portion they called the *New world*, as well for the incredible spaciousnes therof, being as large as the two old diuisions (*Afrike & Europe*) as for the infinite number of Ilands, diuersity of manners, fashions of Inhabitants, variety of languages, Nations and customs, with the disproportions of liuing Creatures, trees and Plantes, not to be found or seene in these parts, which there they found.

It is bounded vpon the East with the *Atlantique*, or North sea: vpon the South, with the *Magellan* Streights: vpon the West with *Mare pacificum*, or *Mare de Zur*: on the North with *Terra incognita*: And as some writers affirme, the whole *Circum* Navigation, amounteth to thirty thousand miles.

This continent according to his diuers scituation is diuersly provided: In some places it is admirable fruitfull, in other places very barren and needy. Some part thereof lyeth vpon huge plaines, some places are very hilly and mountainous. It is watered with many famous Riuers, whose sandes in many places yeeld gold, with many famous Lakes and Springs. It bringeth forth graine and pulse sufficient, especially *Maiz*, the chiefest bread and prouision through the whole *Indies*. Wine they haue none, and where they want this *Maiz*, they make theyr bread of a kinde of root, good and wholesome, if the iuyce be thoroughly squeezed out. It yeeldeth Sugar, Cotten-wooll, and Flaxe, as with vs, with a thousand sorts of trees, birds, beasts & fishes, some whereof we know, and other some not.



Horses they haue none, neither conceiue their vse, and at the first sight of horsmen the inhabitants stood amazed. In it are found the spices, gems, and precious stones, with those huge masses of gold, siluer, and other minerals, which wee see daily transported into Europe. The inhabitants are of a swarty complexion, fairer or fouler, atording to their different scituations. Not very well faouered, but of sauage and brutish behauiours, excellent footmen and swimmers, cleanly in their bodies, naked, libidinous, and men-eaters. Some worship the diuel, some idols, some the sun, and some the stars. Their armes are the bow and arrow, which in stead of yron, they head with the teeth of fishes, and the bones of beasts. Gold, siluer, and stone they little regard, their cheefest delights is in fethers and Plumes. The cheefest regions lying Northerly vpon this continent are *Quivira*, *Nona Hispania*, *Niaragna*, *Iucatan*, *Florida*, *Apalchen*, *Norumbega*, *Noua Francia*, *Terra Laboratoris*, and *Estotiland*.

As I related before, so say I here, that by reason of pouerty, sterility, or for want of perfect discouery, much hath not beene writ of these places. For although the Spaniards be Lordes of these spacious countries, yet regard they nothing but their priuat profit. And therefore if any of them contain nothing worthy relation saue their fertility, or pouerty, to what end should I spend paper in discoursing of those comodities or discommodities, wherwith euery one knoweth the life of man to be preserved or infested. Amongst the number of which is *Quivira*, a temperate, batefull, & fruitfull country, stored with diuers sorts of beasts, but especially with goats & oxen, differing from ours the flesh whereof the inhabitants eate, and cloth their bodies with their skins. Of the residue, as *Florida*, *Norembega*, &c. No more famous, but participating of like qualities, either good or euill, I will speake no further.

*New Spaine* is a very large prouince, better manured, plesanter, and more populous then any part of this new world. It was possessed by the Spaniard in the yeare 1518. vnder the leading of *Ferdinando Cortez*, to the great slaughter of the Inhabitants, and his owne people. In reward of whose service, *Charles* the sifst bestowed vpon him the countrey of *Tecoantepec*.



Although it lye vnder the *Torrid zone*, yet it is temperat, mountainous and full of woods. It aboundeth with all good things, necessary for life, and profitable either for thirst or pleasure, as fish, flesh, gold and stones. Of all parts of the *Indies* none is like vnto it for habitation. For therein the *Spaniards* haue erected many Colonies, as *Compostella*, *Colina*, *Purificatio*, *Guadailara*, *Mechoochan*, *Cacatula*, *Mexico*, &c.

*Noua Galitia*, *Mechuacan*, *Mexico*, and *Gnastican*, are but prouinces appendant vnto this territory.

Whereof the best and fairest is *Mexico* throgh the whole *Indies*. It should seeme the shire took e it's name from the citty. In ancient time it was built in the midst of the lake, like *Venice*, but *Cortez* remoued it to the banke thereof. It is at this day a Citty excellent well built, containing six miles in compasse, one part wherof the *Spaniards* inhabit, the residue is left to the natives. In this citty the viceroy & Archb. keep their seats, hauing the priuiledges of supreme Iustice, printing and coyning. The lake wheron the citty is built, is salt, and ebbeth and floweth as the Ocean. At ebbe it sendeth it's waters into another lake adioyning, but fresh; it yeeldeth no fish, but wormes, which in summer putrifie and corrupt the ayre. And yet of the waters thereof they boile great store of salt. The circuit of both these lakes is about 50. leagues, and about the banks, and in the Ilands, doe lie about 50. towns, euery one consisting of 10000. housholds. Vpon these waters do ferry 50000. boats, which they term *Canoes*, to serue the vse of the city. This *peninsula* of the new world which is most extended towarde the south, resembleth *Affrica*, or some huge *Pyramis*, whose *bases* lyeth towards the Northernly streight caused by that neck of lande, which the *Spaniards* terme *Terra firma*. The head thereof growing lesse & lesse towards the *Antartique* pole, endeth at the *Magellan* streights. The East part is inuironed with the vast Northern sea, the west with *Mare del zur*.

It aboundeth with gold and siluer, & wanteth no good thing that God hath created for the vse of man, either for pleasure or necessity: only in this it is discommendable, that it bringeth forth inhabitants of sauage and inhuman behavior, delighting



in eating of mans flesh, and other vncleane and vndressed viands. In it are contained innumerable regions and prouinces, some whereof are sufficiently knowne, the residue remaine without name, either in regard of their basenes, or for the warlike natures of the inhabitants, who will suffer no strangers to liue amongst them. The chiefe thereof are *Castella aurea*, *Peruana*, *Chile*, and *brasilia*, all inhabited eyther by the Spaniards or Portugals. The Easterne part from the riuer *Maragnon*, to *Rio de la plata*, belongeth to the crowne of Portugall, the residue to the king of *Spaine*.

*Castella Aurea,*

**O**R Golden *Castille*, is that part of the firme land (so called by the *Spaniards*) which stretcheth from the city *Theonima* and *Panama*, euen to the bay of *Urana* and *S. Michael*, and occupieth all that streight wherwith these two spacious parts of the new world, are linked as it were with a defensible chaine. It is badly inhabited, and lesse manured, for the contagiousnes of the ayre and standing waters. Yet are there therein two famous cities, *Theonima* or *Nombre de dios*, scituated on the north sea, & *Panama*, vpon the *Peruvian* or *Pacifique* sea. And whatsoever Merchandize is brought by the *Peruvian* sea towards *Spaine*, is vnloaden in the citty of *Panama*, and thence transported by land to *Nombre de dios*, vwhere it is finally againe shipped for *Spaine*. The like course is obserued from *Spain* to those places. *Peruvia*, is one of the famous prouinces of this new world. It was first discovered in the yeare 1525. by *Francis Pizarro*, and by *Charls* the first, bestowed vpon him for his good seruice. At this day it is diuided into three partes, viz: the plaines, the *Sieras* or mountaines, and the *Andes* or *Ultramontanas*.

The plaines lye vpon the sea coast, and are outstretched in length by the space of one thousand and five hundred miles: In bredth they are not aboue sixty, and where they are narrowest thirty. These plains are grauelly, ful of desarts, and for the most part barren, especially where freshets and lakes are wanting, being neuer releued mith raine nor showers. Those grounds that lie nigh the bankes of riuers are very fruitfull, by reason of the discent of water all the winter, distilling frō the mountaines  
and



and rockes which are not past seven or ten miles asunder: the residue further off, the husbandmen do inforce with great industry by letting in Slufes and digging of channels, to their plentiful harvest of Cotton-wool, and corne. The inhabitants of this tract are a base people, cowardly and poore, sleeping & living vnder trees and reeds, and feeding vpon fish, and Rawe flesh. The mountaine country is extended from North to south about one thousand leagues, being distant not aboue twenty leagues from the sea, and in some places lesse. They are very cold, and subiect to continuall snow, wanting wood, & incumbered with Lyons, wolues, black beares, Goats, and a certaine beast like a Camell, of whose wool, they work the garments of Cotton-wool and other vtensils. These mountaines are full of inhabitants, fertile and batefull, especially where the ayre is indurable, and the inhabitantes more witty, couragious and ciuiller, then the residue.

The *Andes* are likewise mountaines, but lying in one continuall ridge without vallies, extending from North to south, betweene which and the former, lyeth *Collao*, a prouince full of mountaines, subiect to cold, yet very populous. Thus much of the nature of the soyle, and people: Of their forces, little can be spoken, by reason of their subiection to the Spaniard, and ignorance in matters of armes and policy. And as for their private commodities, as golde, siluer, and stones, who knoweth not but that they are the cheefest trafficke of all these prouinces.

*Chile.*

Vpon the south of *Peru* toward the *Palifique* sea, lieth *Chile*, whose name hath bene deriued from incredible cold raging therein. Yet feeleth it raine, lightnings, and the alteration of seasons, as wee do in Europe. It partly lyeth vpon the seacoast, and is partly mountainous, but somewhat warme toward the sea-side. It beareth all sortes of fruit brought out of *Spaine*, and transporteth many Cattle, and store of Ostriges. The Riuers run their course in the day time, but in the night by reason of their congelation, if they mooue, it is very slowly and weake.

The inhabitantes are tall, well set, and warlike: and their  
armes



armes are the bow and arrow: their garments, the skins of wild beasts, and Sea-wolves.

*Brasile.*

**B***Rasil* lyeth betweene the two mighty Rivers of *Maragnon* vpon the North, and *Rio de la plata* vpon the South. It was discovered by *Americus Vesputius* in the daies of King *Emanuel*. The countrey in a manner is all pleasant, faire weathered, and exceeding healthfull, by reason that the gentle winds from sea doe beat and euaporate all the morning dewes and clouds, making the ayre fresh and cleare. It is well watered, and deuided into plaines, and easie mountaines, fertile, alwaies flourishing, full of Sugar-canes, and all other blessings of Nature. For hither the Portugals haue brought all sorts of *Europe* plants with good successe, and haue erected many Ingenios, to try theyr Sugars.

Of the Islands, as *Hispaniola*, *Tamica*, *Cuba*, and the *Cardses*, I can say nothing more, then hath already beene discoursed in other Tractats: And for the most parte such as is the relation of the one, such is the nature and quality of the other, in no memorable thing greatly materiall.

*Terra Australis.*

**T**His Land was lately found out, and by our latest Cosmographers, for the great and spacious circuit therof, as comprehending many large Regions, viz: *Tsitacorum regio*, *Terra del fengo*, *Beac*, *Lucach*, and *Maletur*, described for the sixt parte of the world. But what people inhabite them, what fashions they vse, or what profitable commodity fit for the life of man, they affoord, it hath not yet beene discovered.

*Borealis Orbis pars.*

**T**His diuision is scituated neere vnto the North Pole, the least of the residue, almost all vnknowne, consisting of Islands, and those scituated about the very pole. For Authours affirme, that vnder the very pole, lyeth a blacke and high rock about 33. Leagues in compasse, and there, these Islands. Among the which the Ocean disgorging it selfe by 19. Channels, maketh foure whirlpooles or currants, by which the waters are finally carried towards the North, and there swallowed into the

Vv

bowels



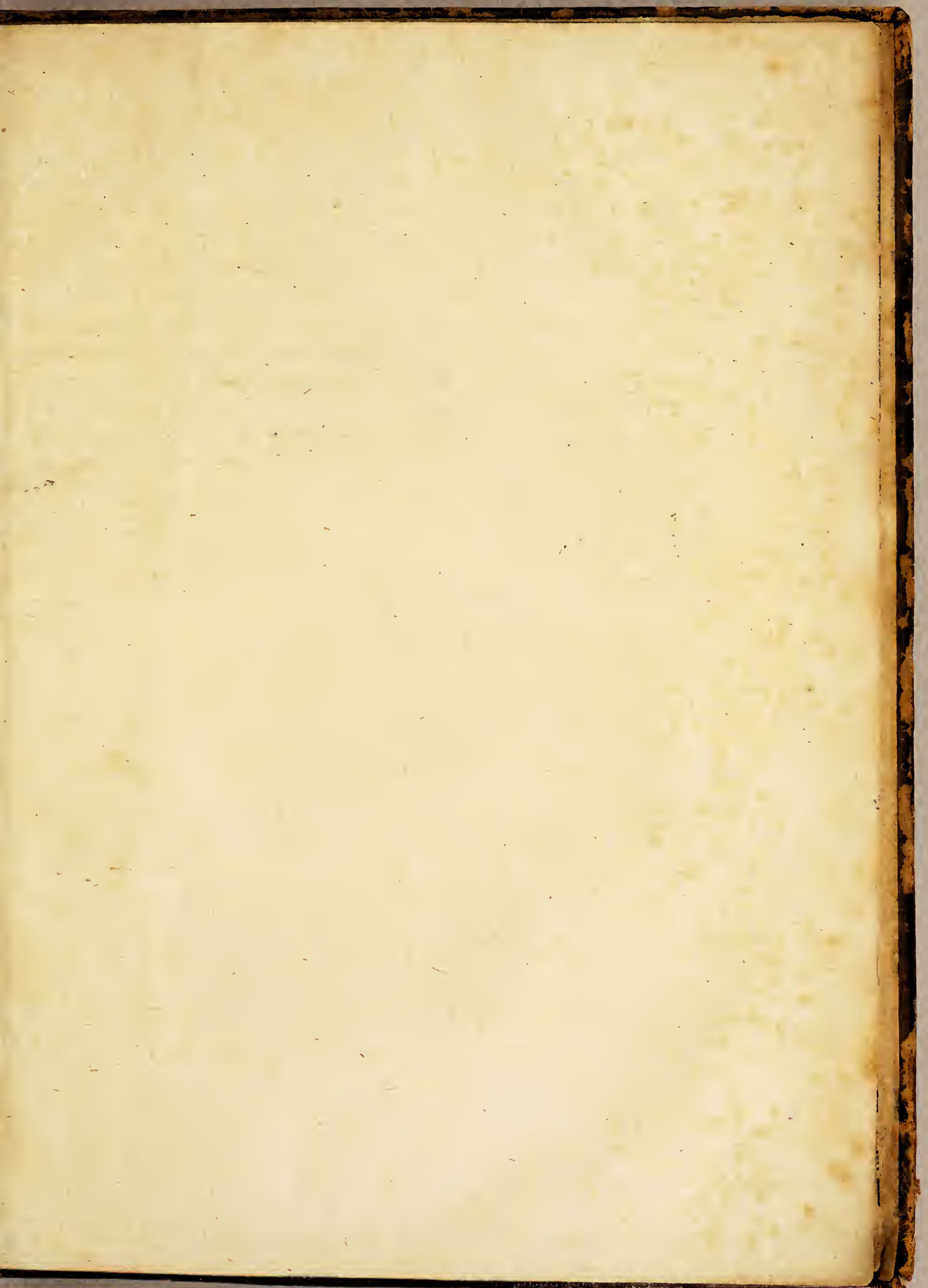
bowels of the earth. That *Euripus* or whirpoole, which the *Scythique* Ocean maketh, hath five inlets, & by reason of his strait passage and violent course, is neuer frozen. The other *Enripus* is on the backside of *Groneland*, hath three Inlets, and remains frozen three moneths yearly: Its length is 37. Leagues. Betweene these two raging *Euripi* lyeth an Iland about *Lappia* and *Biarmia*, the habitation of the *Pigmies*. A certaine Scholler of *Oxforde* reporteth, that these foure *Enripi* are ingulphed with such furious violence into some inward receptacle, that no ship is able, with neuer so strong or opposite a gale, to stem the current. And that at no time, there bloweth so much wind, as wil moue a wind-mill. This is likewise the report of *Giraldus Cambrensis*, in his maruailes of *Ireland*. But *Blundevile* is of a contrary opinion, neither beleeuing that eyther *Pliny*, or any other *Roman*, came euer thither, to describe this promontory: or that the Fryer of *Oxford*, without the assistance of some cold

Deuill out of the middle Region of the ayre,  
 could approch so neere, as to measure those cold parts with  
 his *Astrolabe*.

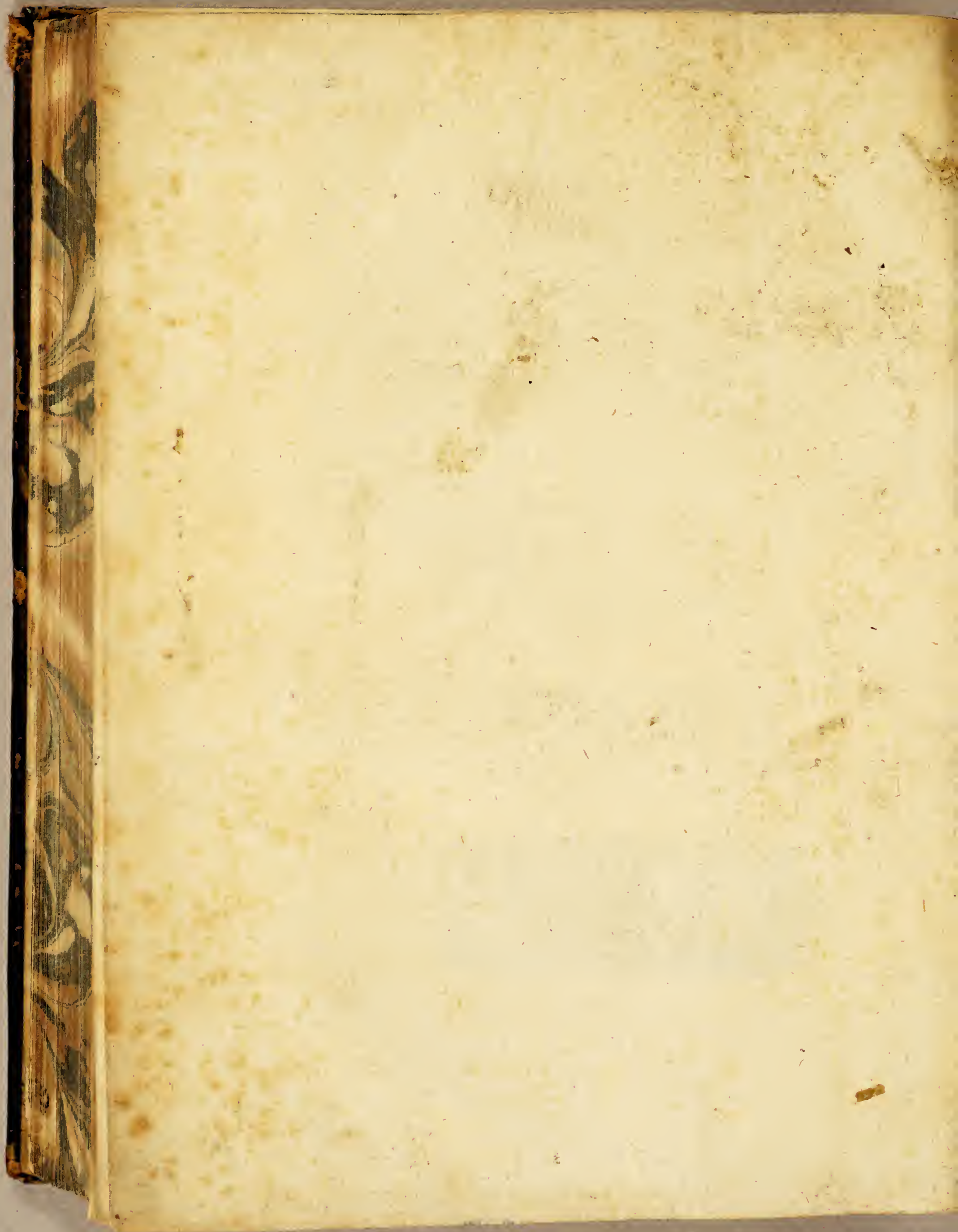
FINIS.



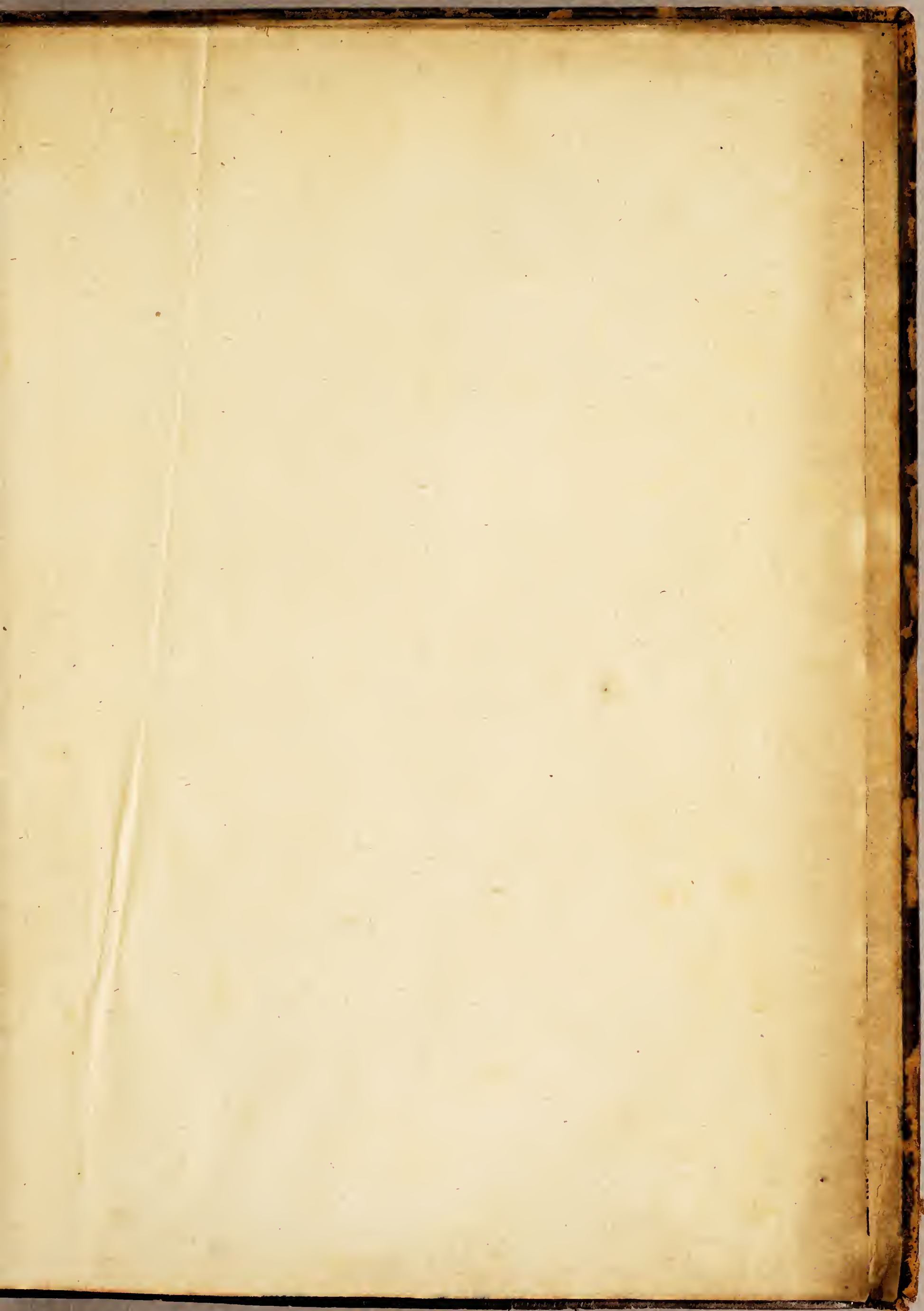




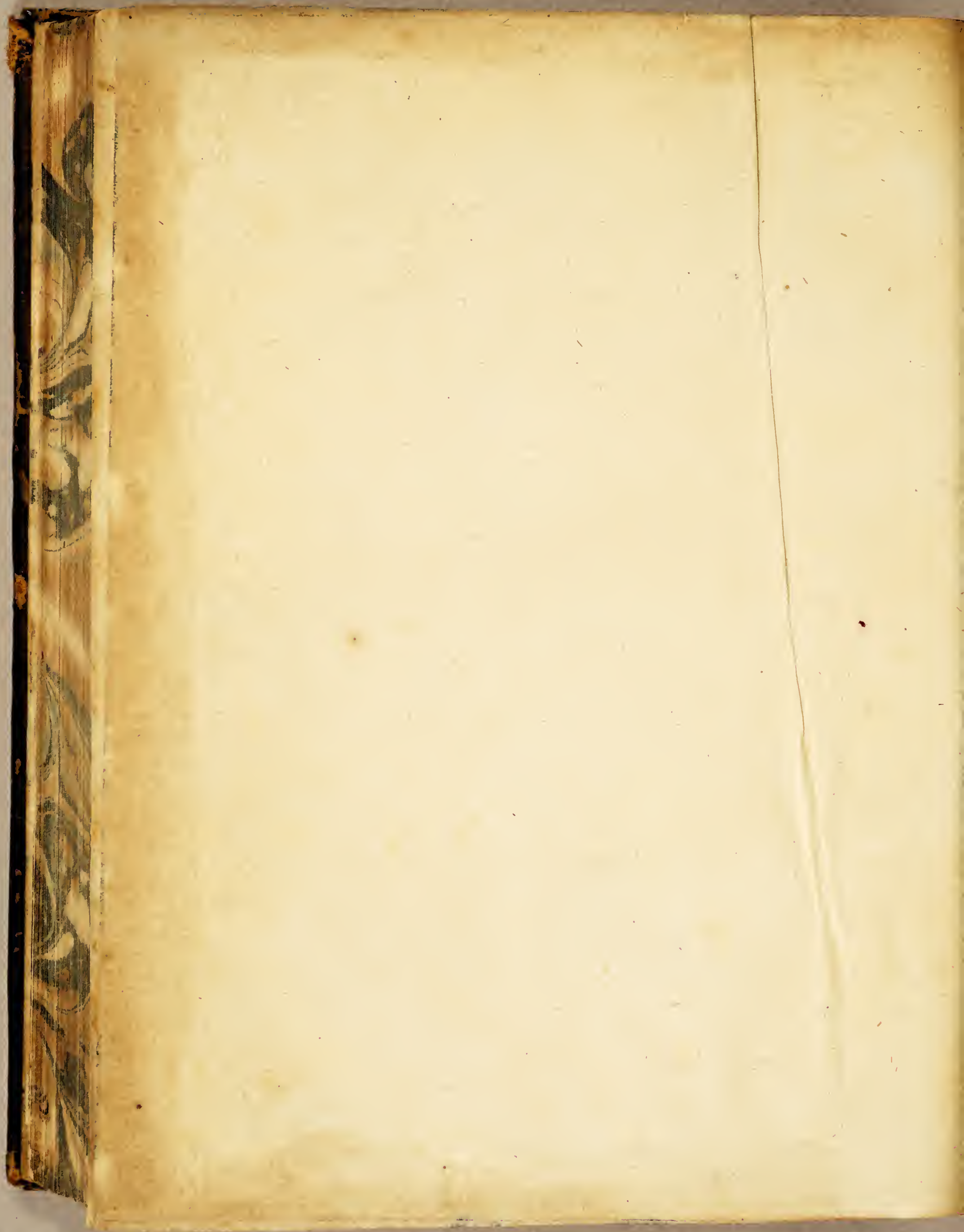














H608

B748r

TRI

579



